Title
The White Cloud Movement: Local Activism and Buddhist Printing in China under Mongol Rule (1276-1368 CE)

Permalink
https://escholarship.org/uc/item/2w7452q0

Author
Hua, Kaiqi

Publication Date
2016

Peer reviewed|Thesis/dissertation
The White Cloud Movement:  
Local Activism and Buddhist Printing in China under Mongol Rule (1276-1368 CE)  

A Dissertation submitted in partial satisfaction of the requirements for the degree of  

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY  

in  

World Cultures  

by  

Kaiqi Hua  

Committee in charge:  
Professor Ruth Mostern, chair, UC Merced  
Professor Sholeh Quinn, UC Merced  
Professor Lewis Lancaster, UC Berkeley  
Professor Richard Davis, Lingnan University
The Dissertation of Kaiqi Hua is approved, and it is acceptable in quality and form for publication on microfilm and electronically:

______________________________________________
Lewis Lancaster

______________________________________________
Sholeh Quinn

______________________________________________
Richard Davis

______________________________________________
Ruth Mostern, Chair

University of California, Merced
2016
For my parents

Qiu Lijuan 裘麗娟 & Hua Gang 華崗
# Table of Contents

List of Tables ........................................................................................................... vii  
List of Figures ........................................................................................................... viii  
Curriculum Vitae ..................................................................................................... x  
Acknowledgements ................................................................................................. xiv  
Abstract .................................................................................................................. xx  
Introduction ............................................................................................................. 1  
  - The White Cloud sect .......................................................................................... 3  
  - Religious syncretism in Song-Yuan China .......................................................... 11  
  - Geography, ecology, and economy ..................................................................... 16  
  - Sources ................................................................................................................ 21  
  - Chapter outline .................................................................................................. 30  
PART I: Formalizing the Unfamiliar ........................................................................... 36  
Chapter 1. Eating Vegetables and Serving Devils: The Prehistory of the White Cloud 
  Movement ............................................................................................................. 36  
  - “Eating vegetables and serving devils” 吃菜事魔 ......................................... 45  
  - Beliefs and categories ........................................................................................ 48  
  - Activities and official persecution .................................................................... 51  
  - “People of the way” - daomin 道民 .................................................................. 55  
  - The “White Cloud monk” .................................................................................. 67  
  - Rebirth when the Mongols came ...................................................................... 80  
  - Conclusion: from Baiyun cai to Baiyun zong .................................................... 82  
Chapter 2. Gathering People and Making Profits: The History of the White Cloud 
  Movement ............................................................................................................. 86  
  - The Yuan religious bureaucracy and organizational structure .......................... 88  
  - Shizu’s 世祖 reign (1276-1294) ..................................................................... 96  
  - Chengzong’s 成宗 reign (1294-1307) .............................................................. 105  
  - Wuzong’s 武宗 reign (1307-1311) ................................................................. 117  
  - Renzong’s 仁宗 reign (1311-1320) ................................................................. 119  
  - Yingzong’s 英宗 reign (1320-1323) ................................................................. 133  
  - The Late Yuan (1323-1368) .............................................................................. 140
## Conclusion

PART II: Networking through the Buddhist Canon

Chapter 3. Monks and Statesmen

The Puning canon (1277-1290) .................................................. 155
The Hexi canon (1293-1321) .................................................... 170
Wholesale Buyers of the Puning Canon ..................................... 184
Li Huiyue: An Enthusiastic Tangut Patron of Chinese Canons in Jiangnan ........ 190
Conclusion .............................................................................. 197

Chapter 4. Local Canon Patrons ............................................. 218

Donor and temple.................................................................... 224
Donation................................................................................... 231
Wish ....................................................................................... 234
Location .................................................................................. 240
Conclusion .............................................................................. 252

PART III: The Mix of the “Three Teachings” .......................... 257

Chapter 5. Being a Gentleman of the Three Teachings: The Writings of the “White
Cloud Monk” ........................................................................ 257

“Collection of Virtuous Acts” Zhengxing ji 正行集 ..................... 262
“Record for Apprentice” Chuxue ji 初學記 ................................ 282
Tangut texts mentioned the “White Cloud monk” ..................... 294
Conclusion .............................................................................. 303

Chapter 6. Grottos of the Southern Hill .................................. 313

Grotto descriptions .................................................................. 316
Conclusion .............................................................................. 328
Conclusion .............................................................................. 345

Bibliography ........................................................................... 360
List of Tables

Table 1: Timeline of Kong Qingjue’s life (1043-1121) ................................................................. 76
Table 2: Structure of bureaucratic systems (civil and religious affairs) in the Yuan Dynasty .............................................................................................................................................. 98
Table 3: Brief timeline of the offices related to the White Cloud sect ...................................... 100
Table 4: Printing of the Tangut Hexi canon in Hangzhou ......................................................... 179
Table 5: Distribution of the Puning canon local donors ............................................................... 240
List of Figures

Figure 1: Puning Monastery and Wanshou Monastery ...................................................... 150
Figure 2: Phags-pa transliteration of Sanskrit mantras in the Puning canon .................. 201
Figure 3: Collating scene at the Wanshou Monastery .................................................... 202
Figure 4: Collating scene at the Wanshou Monastery (part) ....................................... 203
Figure 5: Translating scene in Xi Xia 西夏譯經圖 ......................................................... 204
Figure 6: Translating scene in Xi Xia 西夏譯經圖 (part) ........................................... 205
Figure 7: Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing 過去莊嚴劫千佛名經 (hereafter Guoqu), vow statement 發願文 (Part 1) .......................................................... 206
Figure 8: Guoqu, vow statement 發願文 (Part 2) ...................................................... 207
Figure 9: Guoqu, vow statement 發願文 (Part 2), last Page .................................... 208
Figure 10: Stamp of Guanzhuba on a Tangut sutra fragment ..................................... 209
Figure 11: Bukong juansuo xinzhou wangjing 不空羂索心咒王經 卷上中 (hereafter Bukong) cover, frontispiece, and first Page .................................................. 210
Figure 12: Stamp of monk Fuzhen, Bukong first page (part) ..................................... 211
Figure 13: Bukong, frontispiece (part) ........................................................................ 212
Figure 14: Image of Yang Lianzhenjia, Bukong frontispiece (part) ............................ 213
Figure 15: Bukong, last Page, colophon .................................................................... 214
Figure 16: Stamp of Li Huiyue, Bukong last page (part) ............................................ 215
Figure 17: Stamp of Li Huiyue, Bukong colophon (part) .......................................... 216
Figure 18: Stamp of Li Huiyue, Bukong colophon (part) .......................................... 217
Figure 19: Distribution of the Puning canon local donors .......................................... 254
Figure 20: The Hang-Jia-Hu Subregion ................................................................... 255
Figure 21: Wu town Wuzhen 烏鎮 ........................................................................ 256
Figure 22: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 1A fragment ....................... 306
Figure 23: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 1A fragment, 1B, 2A, 2B .......... 307
Figure 24: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 3A, 3B, 4A, 4B .................. 308
Figure 25: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 5A, 5B, 6A, 6B .................. 309
Figure 26: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 7A, 7B, 8A, 8B ....... 310
Figure 27: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 9A, 9B, 10A, 10B
fragment ........................................................................................................... 311
Figure 28: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 5A, 5B ................. 312
Figure 29: Grotto No. 1............................................................................... 330
Figure 30: Grotto No. 2............................................................................... 331
Figure 31: Grotto No. 3............................................................................... 332
Figure 32: Grotto No.4................................................................................ 333
Figure 33: Grotto No. 5............................................................................... 334
Figure 34: Grotto No. 6............................................................................... 335
Figure 35: Grotto No. 7............................................................................... 336
Figure 36: Grotto No. 8............................................................................... 337
Figure 37: Grotto No. 9............................................................................... 338
Figure 38: Grotto No. 10.............................................................................. 339
Figure 39: Grotto No. 11............................................................................. 340
Figure 40: Grotto No. 12............................................................................. 341
Figure 41: Grotto No. 13............................................................................. 342
Figure 42: New find...................................................................................... 343
Figure 43: Quarry cliff surface .................................................................... 344
Curriculum Vitae

Kaiqi Hua

World Cultures
School of Social Sciences, Humanities and Arts
University of California, Merced

Education
August 2016, Ph.D., UC Merced
June 2008, B.A., Zhejiang University

Visitorship and Institute
2014-16, UC Graduate Intercampus Exchange Program, Buddhist Studies, UC Berkeley
Summer 2015, Summer School in Sinology, University of Ljubljana, Slovenia
Summer 2015, Summer School in Tangut Language, Ningxia University, China
2013-14, Visiting Research Fellow, Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Israel
Summer 2014, Summer School in Mongol Studies, Hebrew University of Jerusalem
Summer 2014, National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) Summer Institute, 
The Mongols and the Eurasian Nexus of Global History, East-West Center, Honolulu
Summer 2013, Summer School in Chinese Studies, Ca’ Foscari University Venice, Italy
Summer 2013, Summer Hebrew Program, Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Israel
Summer 2013, Summer Persian Program, San Francisco State University
Spring 2012, Visiting Scholar, History Department, Lingnan University, Hong Kong
Fall 2011, Visiting Scholar, Center for Art and Archaeology, Zhejiang University, China
Fall 2010, UC Graduate Intercampus Exchange Program, History Dept., UC Berkeley
Summer 2006, Summer Sessions & Special Programs, UCLA

Academic Award
Yearlong Fellowships:
2014-15, Dissertation Fellowship, UC Humanities Network, University of California system
2013-14, Visiting Ph.D. Student Fellowship, Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Israel
2011-12, Dissertation Fellowship, UC Pacific Rim Program, University of California system
Other Awards:
2015, Dr. Donald and Effie Godbold Fellowship, inaugural recipient, UC Merced
2014, Scholarship (declined), Summer School Eurasian Religions in Contact, Ruhr-Universität Bochum, Germany
2013, Scholarship, The Israel-China Friendship Society “At Igud Yotzei Sin,” Israel
2013, Scholarship, Summer Persian Program, San Francisco State University
2013, Graduate Student Research Grant, World Cultures Graduate Group, UC Merced
2013, Outstanding Graduate Student Award, Graduate Division, UC Merced
2012, Spring Research Grant, World Cultures Graduate Group, UC Merced
2012, Conference Travel Grant, World Cultures Graduate Group, UC Merced
2012, Summer Research Grant, World Cultures Graduate Group, UC Merced
2011, Summer Research Grant, World Cultures Graduate Group, UC Merced
2011, Conference Travel Grant, Confucius Institute, University of Michigan

Research Experience
2015-16, 2010-13, Graduate Student Researcher for Professor Ruth Mostern, UC Merced
Project: Modeling the Environmental History of the Yellow River: Three Millennia of Disaster, Settlement and Policy
[Data collection, entry, digitalization and organization]
2013-14, Visiting Research Fellow, Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Israel
ERC Mongol Project: Mobility, Empire and Cross Cultural Contacts in Mongol Eurasia
[Data selection, entry and processing; Translation of Chinese primary sources]
2010, Graduate Student Researcher for Guidebook Project, CRTE (Center for Research on Teaching Excellence), UC Merced, Fund for the Improvement of Post-Secondary Education (FIPSE) granted from the U.S. Department of Education
[Guidebook of Learning Methods editing for first generation college students]
2008-09, Graduate Student Researcher for Professor Ruth Mostern, UC Merced
[Footnote and bibliographical verification and editing]

Publication

Conference Presentation


Invited Talk
May 14, 2015, Arts and Cultural Contacts in the Mongol Empire, Oakland Asian Cultural Center
February 19, 2015, Silk Road Reconnected: Cross-border Contacts between China and the West (1200-1500), History 6B: “China from the Mongols to Mao,” UC Berkeley
April 28, 2014, The Urban History of Hangzhou: Before and After the Mongol Conquest. ERC Mongol Project seminar, Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Israel
December 17, 2013, The Images of Zhao Xian (1271-1323): Changing Views of a Former Song Emperor under the Mongols. Leiden University Institute for Area Studies (LIAS), the Netherlands

Teaching Experience
Lecturer, UC Merced. Fully responsible for designing and teaching course:
Spring 2016, HIST 108 - History of Asian Religions
Fall 2012, CHN 2 - Elementary Chinese II
Spring 2011, CHN 2 - Elementary Chinese II
Teaching Assistant, UC Merced. Grading, student advising, and leading discussion sections:
Spring 2013, HIST 11 - Introduction to World History Since 1500
Fall 2010, HIST 10 - World History to 1450
Spring 2010, HIST 11 - Introduction to World History Since 1500
Spring 2010, HIST 81 - History of China from the Ming Dynasty to the Present
Fall 2009, HIST 80 - History of China from Ancient Times through the Mongol Conquest
Spring 2009, POLI 3 - Introduction to Comparative Politics
Fall 2008, CHN 1 - Elementary Chinese I

Language
Modern Chinese (native speaking), Classical Chinese (excellent reading)
Tangut script (knowledge of 500 out of 6,000 characters, basic interpretation skill)
Japanese, Hebrew (intermediate)
Tibetan, Mongolian, Persian (elementary)

University Service
2014-15, graduate student representative (UCSA), University Committee on International Education (UCIE), Academic Senate, University of California system
Fall 2015, fellow, Intercultural Leadership Initiative (ILI), International House, UC Berkeley
Fall 2010, officer of Academic Affairs, Graduate Student Association (GSA), UC Merced
Fall 2010, graduate student representative, Committee on Academic Planning and Resource Allocation (CAPRA), Academic Senate, UC Merced

Professional Affiliation
2015-present, participant, Electronic Cultural Atlas Initiative (ECAI), UC Berkeley
2014-present, member, American Historical Association (AHA)
2014-present, member, American Academy of Religion (AAR)
2013-present, member, Association for Asian Studies (AAS)
Acknowledgements

My understanding of the religious activities and their legacy in Yuan-dynasty Hangzhou could only have grown as deep as it has by leaving my hometown of Hangzhou for California to study under Prof. Ruth Mostern for eight years from 2008 to 2016. It is a great honor to become her first graduated Ph.D. student. She has inspired my academic growth and shaped my thinking throughout my graduate schooling. She also supported me as I’ve taught classes, served on committees, and explored the digital humanities, paving the way for my career in academia.

UCM is a new higher education institution in the twenty-first century, and the close teacher-student relations there have provided more opportunities to pursue interdisciplinary studies. I have learned more than my own field in history and religious studies. I have chosen my second field in the History of Persia—the Mongol Ilkhanate—by working with Prof. Sholeh Quinn. At UCM, I was able to design and take one-on-one Independent Study courses with several faculty members, including Demographic Studies with Archaeology Prof. Kathleen Hull, and Historical GIS with Geography Prof. Guo Qinghua. Special thanks to our graduate program coordinator Mitch Ylarregui, for his tireless and prompt help on my coursework, paperwork, academic planning, and almost everything with progressing through the program. More importantly, thanks to Graduate Dean Marjorie Zatz for her support for my unique case, which made me the first PhD graduate in Asian History at UCM. For funding, I am grateful for our graduate program’s summer research grant and the Dr. Donald and Effie Godbold Fellowship for supporting my research expenses, mainly for summer research travel.
The landscape of Merced is like Mongolian steppe, making UCM one of the most special places in my heart. With the encouragement and support of Ruth and other faculty members at UCM, I have gone beyond the UCM motherland, travelling broadly for research and building international scholarly connections. I appreciate Prof. Nick Tackett at UC Berkeley, who served on my qualifying examination committee in 2011 and offered a tremendous amount of detailed advice on how to read sources in Tang-Song studies. The UC system-wide Pacific Rim Research Program’s yearlong fellowship supported my first academic year (2011-12) research in Asia after passing the qualifying exam. I undertook field work, by collecting research material in Hangzhou, Hong Kong, and Tokyo. Prof. Jeffrey Moser sponsored my visit at Zhejiang University and offered fresh ideas for investigating Song-period art work. Prof. Richard Davis, who also served on my dissertation committee, sponsored my one-semester stay at Lingnan University. From his charismatic lectures and intellectual discussions, I learned many new perspectives on Chinese history. During my visit to Waseda University in Tokyo, Dr. Kondo Kazunari, Dr. Iiyama Tomoyasu, and Dr. Kobayashi Takamichi warmly welcomed me and accompanied my visits to the Waseda University libraries and the Toyo Bunko “Oriental Library.” Dr. Yokkaichi Yasuhiro, a lifelong friend, enthusiastically offered research material, joined me at different venues in Tokyo, and photocopied for me a huge amount of material from Komazawa University’s library on Hangzhou Song-Yuan Buddhist temples.

During the academic year 2013-14, I joined the international research team on “Mobility, Empire and Cross Cultural Contacts in Mongol Eurasia” at Hebrew University of Jerusalem, under Prof. Michal Biran. From weekly seminars and source reading
classes with Michal and Prof. Yuri Pines, I obtained cutting-edge knowledge in the field of Mongol Studies. I have learned a lot from my colleagues of the project, including Florence Hodous, Geoffrey Humble, Francesca Fiaschetti, Yang Qiao, Choi Soyoung, and Daniel Zakrzewski. Dr. Cho Wonhee, a member of the 2014-15 cohort, kindly shared his dissertation on religious institutions in the Mongol Empire and has continuously offered useful feedback on my research. I was also able to join the Research Group “Chinese and Tibetan Tantric Buddhism” led by Profs. Yael Bentor, Dan Martin, and Meir Shahar at the Israel Institute for Advanced Studies in Jerusalem, where I presented my early work on the White Cloud sect. In addition, I attended the 2014 NEH Summer Institute “The Mongols and the Eurasian Nexus of Global History” at East-West Center in Hawaii, as the only graduate student participant. I am grateful to leading scholars in the field of Mongol studies and Buddhism for meeting with me and offering their advice on my research, including David Morgan, Peter Hershock, Johan Elverskog, Chris Atwood, David Roxburgh, and Morris Rossabi. Morris has continued showing interest in my research even after the institute and has kindly supported my academic success in numerous ways.

I received the UC Humanities Network dissertation fellowship to support my dissertation writing at UC Berkeley during the 2014-15 academic year. During my extended two-year stay at UC Berkeley from 2014 to 2016, I had the kind sponsorship of Prof. Patricia Berger. I received assistance in different ways from the Buddhist Studies group faculty, including Profs. Robert Sharf, Mark Blum, and Alexander von Rospatt. The timely completion of my dissertation would not be possible without the quick and patient help of librarians in the East Asian Library, including He Jianye, Bruce Williams,
and Deborah Rudolph. Deborah helped me to view all extant copies of sūtras from the Puning canon in the library’s rare book collection. Last but not least, the most blessed experience during my time in Berkeley was meeting regularly with Prof. Lewis Lancaster by participating in his Electronic Cultural Atlas Initiative (ECAI) and Maritime Buddhism project. He has been a wise mentor and a most revered role model.

In the field of Tangut Studies, I appreciate the email communication and continuous encouragement of Prof. Ruth Dunnell of Kenyon College, the only Tangut historian in North America. I also received assistance and suggestions on Tangut language and history while in Berkeley from Tibetologist Dr. Nathan Hill, Mongolist Dr. Brian Baumann, and linguist Dr. Deborah Anderson. In China, I attended a Tangut language summer school and an international Tangutology conference in 2015. I have received kind support from—and enjoyed countless dinner talks with—Profs. Du Jianlu, Yang Huan, and Duan Yuquan of Ningxia University, as well as their graduate students, especially Deng Wentao, who shared his findings on new materials from the Tangut diaspora.

As the pioneer Tangutologist in China, Prof. Shi Jinbo of the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences, provided his kind advice and warm support on my pursuit of Tangut Studies in the West. We travelled together in Ningxia and Gansu for field trips, Prof. Shi offered me the chance to view the Tangut script Buddhist canon in National Library of China rare book section, and he assisted me with obtaining the photocopies of several sūtras for the dissertation. Dr. Sun Bojun, a junior Tangutologist who first discovered the Tangut translation of Kong Qingjue’s teaching and linked the White Cloud sect with the Tanguts, met me in Beijing and offered her help in collecting Tangut sources. I am also
grateful to the Yuan studies expert Dr. Liu Xiao of China’s Academy of Social Sciences in Beijing, who warmly welcomed me to his Department of Song, Liao, Jin and Yuan Studies and provided valuable research materials and ideas.

I thank the Center for Chinese Studies at UC Berkeley and Prof. Jiang Wu at the University of Arizona, who offered me opportunities to present my dissertation chapters at two conferences in 2015 and 2016 respectively. I convened a panel titled, “Collaborating with the World Conquerors: Non-Mongol Officials, Local Elites and Governing Strategies in the Early Yuan Dynasty” at the 2013 annual conference of the Association for Asian Studies. I received kind advice on the early stages of research on Hangzhou’s religious landscape in the Yuan dynasty from the discussant Prof. Christian de Pee and fellow panelists Dr. Chu Mingkin, Dr. Yokkaichi Yasuhiro, and Dr. Funada Yoshiyuki. Thanks to Prof. Ann Heirman of Ghent University and Prof. Hilde de Weerdt of Leiden University, who both invited me to present my research in winter 2013. I also appreciate the offers from three universities in Europe to attend summer schools on sinology and religious studies, including Ca’ Foscari University of Venice, University of Ljubljana, and Ruhr-Universität Bochum.

Lastly, I wish to express my gratitude to family and friends: the Lange and Lynn families in Merced, the Goger family in Mariposa, Alina Ayvazian and Kevin Nosworthy in San Francisco, and friends in Berkeley, especially David and Achva Stein, David Stronach and Ruth Vaadia, Grace and John Smith, Sharon Sanderovitch, and Albert Yuen.

I thank the graduate students of the Art History Department, including Uranchimeg “Orna” Tsultem, Patricia Yu, Jon Soriano, Micki McCoy, and William Ma, and all of the friends I made at the legendary International House (IHouse) during my stay there in
2015-16. They have supported my life and study in many ways throughout my graduate school education in California. My deepest gratitude goes to my parents—Qiu Lijuan and Hua Gang—for their understanding and the spiritual support they provided while only son was far away across the Pacific for eight years. Although they are in China, they motivated and “witnessed” my growth as a traveling scholar writing, collating, revising, and finally printing out the dissertation, just like the migrant Tangut monks working on Buddhist canons in Hangzhou far away from their homeland in Hexi.
Abstract

The “White Cloud sect” was a name for a heterogeneous group of people doing diverse things under the sect’s name: devout laypeople and monks, extortionist elites, and profit-making Tangut monks. At different moments, it was a loose group of local lay practitioners, an official religious institution regulating Buddhist affairs, a business enterprise for networking with rich landowners and high-ranking officials, a social organization that obtained economic privileges for registered groups and individuals, a local entrepreneur that raised small-scale donations, a contractor for printing and selling Buddhist canons, and an advocate of religious syncretism. This dissertation studies the White Cloud movement in Song- and Yuan-era Jiangnan. Analysis of printing work and its relationships with the Mongol colonial regime, Chinese local lay activists, and Tangut diaspora monks reveals the dynamics of local religious activism and how the sect extracted social and financial benefits through religious activities, projects and events in the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion. The Song state banned the sect as a heretical group, but the White Cloud’s fortunes changed under the Mongol Yuan state, which recognized it as a new Buddhist school. The movement was mostly led by local laymen rather than monks. Its wealth and reputation peaked with the production of a Buddhist canon during the reign of Khubilai Khan (1276-1294), who provided direct patronage. I examine the Mongol government’s political and financial support for this unorthodox religious group - the institutionalization of religious communities (including establishing and abolishing a series of religious bureaus, appointing Tangut clergy officials)—and the response of local activists in turn. The White Cloud movement drew official supervision and attracted foreign monks while maintaining its mostly lay followers and non-doctrinal practice in
rural areas. Newly emerging market towns in the Hangzhou-Jiaxing-Huzhou hinterland were the homes of most White Cloud sect devotees and their Buddhist canon’s local patrons. The region’s canal system fostered close networks for resource exchange. Local labor and material resources were used for the White Cloud sect’s Puning canon and the related Tangut script Hexi canon. I emphasize the connections between the two canons and the contributions of Tangut diasporic monks.
Introduction

Lay religious movements in China have a long history, and they have always been a concern of the central government—disliked by the government but favored by ordinary people—from the imperial period into the present day. Examples in contemporary China include local Christian movements and the Falungong sect: Christian house churches in present-day China have grown much faster and more influential than government-sponsored churches; the Falungong spread faster than normal religions in China in the 1990s.

In the case under study in this dissertation, house monasteries and shrines of the White Cloud movement were homes to local activists and supporters, especially for the movement’s printing of the Buddhist canon. Governments in imperial and modern China took care to label heretical sects, heterodox groups, and secret societies. These illegal institutions suffered official persecution but in many ways continued to grow. Whether they were called religions, like the Sanjie jiao 三阶教 of the Tang dynasty or the Luojiao 羅教 of the Ming dynasty, or a sect (zong 宗), or a door or way of a society (huidaomen 會道門), the unorthodox practice of religion or unorthodox spiritual lives fall outside the general principles of monastic religions.

---

As a result, they often incur negative responses from China’s political authorities, who apply religious orthodoxy to define their practices and regulate their activities. Often these unlawful practices were called “heretical religions” xiejiao. The central government, across different dynasties, paid special attention to activities that gathered large groups of people for spiritual attainment without government approval, both publicly and privately. Many such practices were first reported from local governments, mainly by scholar-officials concerned about both religious values and political power struggles among their local subjects. Thus, all practices except the “Three Teachings” (the three major religions of Confucianism, Buddhism, and Daoism) are suspicious and deserve to be investigated and punished. Governmental response through law enforcement and through the words of literati critics often pushed lay religious practice underground and into private venues.

In the thirteenth century crisis, the nomadic Mongol people conquered Southern Song China. As the new rulers of Greater China, the Mongols were enthusiastic about different religions and demonstrated sophistication by employing all kinds of skilled men, including religious practitioners and especially Buddhists. The Mongol regime in China, the Yuan dynasty, was known for its policies of ethnic diversity and religious tolerance. The Mongol rulers especially favored Buddhism over Daoism, and Tibetan Buddhism over Chinese Buddhism. The Mongols were aware of the growing Chan school in south

---

2 These include contemporary controversies over unlawful religious practice in China, such as Falungong and Quannengshen. The Chinese government usually charges these groups with a crime entitled, “gathering crowds to disrupt public order” 聚眾擾亂社會秩序罪.
China and used various methods to maintain a balance among different Chinese Buddhist schools, including debates at court, establishing new offices of Buddhist affairs, and erecting new Buddhist branches. The Yuan rulers also creatively designated and legalized groups of religious sects, including those of the Buddhist schools—the White Cloud sect 白雲宗, the Great Kaiyuan sect 大開元宗, and the Great Dhūta Teaching 大頭陀教, and those of the Daoist schools—Maoshan 茅山派, Zhengyi 正一派, and Quanzhen 全真派. Among these sects, the White Cloud was the most influential, in the involvement of the Yuan emperor, high officials, and different ethnic groups, as well as in its printing of the Buddhist canon and reordering of local society in the Jiangnan 江南 region.

The White Cloud sect

The White Cloud sect was a regional popular movement lasting approximately three hundred years, from the twelfth to fourteenth centuries, in Southeast China. The movement started as a single, small teacher-disciple group mixing with other local lay religious devotees and then suffered government persecution during the Song dynasty. It ended up bearing multiple identities (a cluster of different kinds of identities that were designated with the same name by the state and by practitioners), and it experienced rapid growth and decline during the Yuan dynasty. Its impact on the local region and on the central court in the Yuan dynasty is much more significant than it was during the Song.

---


The complete history of the sect’s lifespan shows its unique but externally guided path of development (though a local movement, external factors predetermined its rise and fall to some extent), a path that reflects the social and political circumstances of the Song-Yuan period. Though this dissertation primarily focuses on the Yuan period, due to the scale of the sect growth, its canon printing project, and available primary sources, I will also answer why and how the White Cloud movement appeared, prospered, and ultimately died out. I will analyze the determining factors that influenced the movement’s development, such as local social structure, natural environment, and government policy. Also, I argue that the White Cloud survived continuously until the early Ming dynasty and did not meet a sudden death by government ban in the mid-Yuan dynasty.

The White Cloud movement encountered resistance from both the state and orthodox Buddhists in the Song dynasty. As a contemporary Buddhist monk Liangzhu Zongjian 良渚宗鑒 (?-1206) in his Buddhist chronicle *Fozu tongji* 佛祖統紀 criticized,

> These three [Manichaeism, White Lotus, and White Cloud] ignorant confuse commoners because they all assume the name of Buddhism . . . and everywhere there are those who practice the White Lotus and White Cloud [religions] . . . . Thus, these groups become numerous by themselves without proselytizing . . . and come together in the name of carrying out penance rituals and calling on the Buddha. However, they actually have illicit sexual relations. Educated men should prohibit [these groups].

此三者皆假名佛教以誑愚俗。...... 而白蓮白雲處處有習之者。......以修懺念佛為名。而實通姦穢。有識士夫宜加禁止。

Monastic Buddhists and Confucian literati labeled local lay religious movements like the White Lotus and the White Cloud profane or sinister religions. They reduced the groups’

---

practices to simply restrained lifestyles, such as those prohibiting alcohol and meat, as well as morally unacceptable activities like night gatherings and meetings mixing men and women. Such movements were categorized as fake Buddhism, or as neither Buddhist nor Daoist, which only attracted illiterate common people. Thus orthodox Buddhist and literati writings warn educated men to stay away from these dangerous practices. This shows the class of educated men in middle period China adhered to traditional religious schools, an identity that served in turn to mark a class distinction from local commoners.

The White Cloud sect’s brief trajectory began with a traveling monk named the “White Cloud monk” Kong Qingjue 孔清覺 (1043-1121) from Luoyang 洛陽 settling in Hangzhou 杭州 and establishing a Buddhist retreat (the Baiyun an 白雲庵) from which to preach during the late Northern Song dynasty. His teachings attracted followers and his relic burial sites became the first foundational places of the White Cloud movement. In the Southern Song dynasty, the White Cloud movement was led by lay people, but the White Cloud movement did not form an exclusive organization with clear membership. The movement’s followers were not distinguished from other illegal religious sects and spiritual practitioners called “people of the way” daomim 道民 and “monks with hair” youfa seng 有髮僧. As a result, these groups all received constant government persecution.

In the Yuan dynasty, Gushan Dao’an 古山道安 (?-1281), a monk from Huzhou 湖州, earned government approval and sponsorship to establish the White Cloud sect at Puning Monastery 普寧寺 in Yuhang 餘杭 of Hangzhou. The Mongol government also established the White Cloud Sect General Overseer Office 白雲宗宗攝所 and
White Cloud Sect Buddhist Registrar Bureau 白雲宗僧錄司, which were under the jurisdiction of the newly established regional Buddhist affairs bureau: the Supervision Office for Buddhist Teachings 釋教總統所 in the Jiangnan region. These institutional establishments were unique for the White Cloud movement, and for any lay religious movement in Chinese history. It made the direct connection between the state and the movement and offered policy and financial support for the latter’s development. The Mongols’ creative institutionalization of a religious community suggests that the foreign rulers did not necessarily view them as religious but rather as civil organizations that affected the political and social order and therefore needed to be regulated with governmental methods. The new religious institutions, including those for Buddhist affairs and the White Cloud sect, transformed the relevant religious parties into social enterprises that connected people’s daily lives and the state.

Dao’an and his successors also carried out one of the largest Buddhist canon printing projects—the Puning canon 普寧藏, an enterprise that shared workers with the Tangut script Hexi canon 河西藏, which was also made in Hangzhou. The canon printing projects had support from both local society and from the central government. The government sponsors and clergy officials who protected the White Cloud sect and sponsored the printing were multiethnic groups. Among them, the Tangut monks were the most influential sponsors. The central leadership of the White Cloud sect after Dao’an, however, was in the hands of lay Chinese people. Dao’an’s successors had the generation
character *nu* 如 in their names, but because their monastic names conceal their family names they might all be lay people.⁶

Buddhist canon printing became the main focus of the sect during the Yuan, but it was still active in local construction projects such as temple and school building. Interestingly, in the Yuan sources, there is almost no mention of the so-called “people of the way.” These troublesome people, some of them active in the White Cloud sect, were not in the vocabulary of government labels and the criticisms written by orthodox religious figures. However, official sources such as the standard Yuan history *Yuanshi* 元史 record many unlawful deeds of the White Cloud sect and place the blame on its lay leadership. The sect, therefore, suffered several rounds of persecution during the mid-Yuan dynasty. Though the leaders were punished, the deeply rooted local activists related to the sect continued local projects, such as Buddhist sūtra printing and grotto carving. The White Cloud sect’s last appearance in historical records was in an early Ming imperial edict of 1370, which banned the practice of heretic religions including the White Cloud sect.⁷

The White Cloud movement has not yet attracted much attention from modern scholars, but it merits new research because it provides new ground for the history of the Mongol Empire in China and for the “Song-Yuan-Ming transition” hypothesis in Chinese history as applied to the Jiangnan region. Such local lay movements that mixed the pursuit of religious and economic benefits became the driving force behind the development of local society in Jiangnan and a major player in local-state relations. This

---

⁶ One example is a leader named Qian Rujing 錢如鏡. Most leaders seem to be from a certain Shen 沈 family, as Overmyer has suggested, Overmyer 1982 P639.
⁷ Overmyer 1982 P639.
dissertation provides a new way of thinking about Chinese history and the history of the Mongol Empire. Unlike most prevailing views that see new and widespread religious movements during the Song-Yuan transition as the consequences of a developed local economy and the rise of new gentry class, the case of the White Cloud shows that such local religious forces were the determinative factor for the development of Jiangnan local society after the Mongol conquest. My research demonstrates that the advancement of social cooperation through lay religious activists overcame the boundaries of monasticism, space, culture, and ethnicity in the Mongol period. That means that the White Cloud movement involved both monastic monks and lay practitioners, both officially sponsored and private religious sites, both urban and rural cultures, and both Chinese and foreign ethnicities.

The “Song-Yuan-Ming transition” model, built on the sociopolitical analyses of Hartwell, Hymes, and Bol, defines the historical trajectory of twelfth- to fourteenth-century China as the action of localized, self-perpetuating elite families negotiating and competing with a decentralized government. In terms of the local society’s development, local elites extended their social networks through marriage and civil endeavors and formed different communities and organizations through collective activism, as shown in the fields of public security, education, infrastructure, charitable services, and religion. A new generation of scholars went further, to question the role of local government during

---

this transitional period, especially during the Yuan dynasty. Sukhee Lee’s work on Song-Yuan Mingzhou 明州 local society shows the strategies of local government investment in the negotiation of interests between state entities and local elites. The activism of the local government, as part of a general localism, ended in the Yuan due to new state policies. The Mongol rulers used the “civil mercenary principle” (similar to their “military mercenary principle”) by which they hired local people and managed local resources for projects, in contrast with the Song state’s direct sponsorship of and financial investment in projects conducted through local government. Mingzhou local society kept growing, while the state merely consolidated the existing social system and pacified local elites. Local literati, however, still remained close to local officials, whereas the latter were hardly able to control regional power. Such regional power, as shown in my research, also includes religious institutions. Wang Jinping’s work, following Jesse Sloane’s research on state-religion (and state-local) relations in Liao-Song-Jin North China, shows the extension of cross-regional social networks of clergy and churches (including both Buddhists and Daoists) in the Yuan dynasty, which maintained the Jin dynasty’s local order. The Yuan’s institutionalization of religious communities resulted from the regime’s policy of religious diversity and tolerance. But Wonhee Cho argues that the Mongols treated different religions differently rather than equally. They

---

sophisticatedly created different “departments” (i.e. institutions) to regulate different religions and new separate tax and judicial systems for religious groups.\textsuperscript{13}

The local activism of the White Cloud movement offers answers to larger scale concerns of state power and colonialism in imperial China. My research contributes to the field of Chinese history, the history of Chinese religions, and Mongol Studies. The Mongol Yuan dynasty, as the first foreign regime to rule all of China proper, creatively bureaucratized religious institutions while retaining the social dynamics of local society through religious activists. The process of state intervention in religious movements and the invention of religious institution also involved new non-Mongol immigrants, especially diasporic Tangut monks. The Tangut monks in Jiangnan and across the Yuan Empire, who largely gone unnoticed before, were major players in monitoring and benefiting from Buddhist affairs. They played a key role in developing the White Cloud sect for both its legitimation and expansion. My research will contribute in particular to studies of \textit{semu} 色目 (foreign, neither Mongol nor Chinese) elites in the Yuan dynasty, and to the field of Tangut studies (or, Tangutology 西夏學), including Tangut diasporas and the Tangut script Buddhist canon. Previous major Western work on \textit{semu} elites in the Yuan includes Herbert Franke’s study of the Tibetans and Michael Brose’s study of Uighurs.\textsuperscript{14} Also, Tangutologists currently pay little attention to Tangut diasporas and their significant role throughout the Yuan dynasty. The Hexi canon, printed in Hangzhou, was the only Tangut script literature produced outside of Xi Xia 西夏 territory after the


fall of the Xi Xia state (1038-1227), except for a handful of epitaphs. Lastly, my study of the production history and social impact of the Chinese Puning and the Tangut Hexi canons offers a new perspective on pre-modern Chinese print culture and the history of science. Considering the canon printing project, which was the most remarkable accomplishment of the White Cloud movement, as a commercial enterprise shows the great motivation and capability of local society for long-term resource management and commercial production. This production’s high quality and popular reception all over the nation during the Yuan period, are attributed to its massive use of xylographic and movable type printing technologies, printing of text in multiple languages, and the close cooperation of local lay patrons and workers, Buddhist monks, and government sponsors.

**Religious syncretism in Song-Yuan China**

From the tenth to twelfth centuries, China under the Song, Liao, Jin, and Xi Xia experienced a dramatic transformation of religious systems. The changes included the development of different principal Buddhist and Daoist schools, the emergence and popularization of Neo-Confucianism, the rise of religious syncretism of “three teachings” *sanjiao*—Buddhism, Daoism and Confucianism—as well as the flourishing of popular movements and regional cults. New perspectives on traditional religions drove the emergence of new religious-inspired ideas and practices, launching popular religious movements in Song China. These included several sects, such as Chinese Maitryans 彌勒教, Chinese Manicheans 摩尼教, the White Lotus sect 白蓮宗, and the White Cloud sect
Some Song sectarian movements initiated rebellions and sparked social unrest. Central governments before the Yuan dynasty had neither allowed local religious movements nor recognized them as legitimate religions. As for diffused popular beliefs and vernacular spirituality, the Jiangnan region was home to popular deities and cults. As Valerie Hansen shows, market towns and dense canal networks enabled the spread of deities by merchants and through commercial networks. The freely traveling deities and the worshippers of various cults, along with transformed tutelary gods such as city gods, constituted the foundation of Chinese pantheon that continued into late imperial China.

Monastic Buddhists in the Song dynasty harshly criticized local religious movements in orthodox Buddhist chronicles as “evil factions of devil worshippers” and for performing bad deeds in the name of Buddhism. Orthodox monks’ attitudes stemmed largely from competition among congregations and pilgrims with these non-official religious movements over local resources. As a result, most Buddhist monks agreed with the government’s attitudes and stood in the same camp with Confucian literati who also held negative impressions of local sects. In Song

---

16 For example, Wang Ze’s Maitryan uprising in Beizhou in 1047-1048, the Fang La rebellion in Muzhou in 1119-1120, and Wang Zongshi’s (Wang Nianjing) uprising in Xinzhou in 1130.
official sources, the White Lotus and White Cloud movements were often called the “White Lotus vegetarians” 白蓮菜 or the “White Cloud vegetarians” 白雲菜, in order to humiliate their members for their unlawful activities. Many of these local traditions were rather passed down through oral traditions and family networks, rather than in written doctrinal scriptures. (Although the White Cloud movement is highly textual in its massive canon printing operation, only two short writings by the sect’s founder survive in its entire canon.) Different from the Song government’s perspective, local people usually did not feel an obligation to identify or tie themselves to a particular sect. They had plenty of choices among parties and religious venues for salvation and to attain merit for family members.\(^{20}\)

Comparing the White Lotus and the White Cloud movements, Overmyer concludes that these two groups began in the same part of Jiangnan, during the same dynasty, and in much the same way.\(^ {21}\) In the end, the White Lotus kept growing centuries after the Yuan dynasty, but the White Cloud was extinct by the early Ming. Overmyer identifies six differences between these two sects: 1) The White Lotus was more widely dispersed than the White Cloud. The White Lotus was popular in Guangxi and Henan, while the White Cloud remained in Zhejiang. 2) The White Lotus leaders and members married, while the White Cloud required members to stay celibate (though this was no longer mandatory during the Yuan period). 3) The White Lotus was rich in rituals such as healing and the recitation of Amitābha’s name, but the White Cloud did not have any rituals. 4) The White Cloud enjoyed imperial favor early in the Yuan dynasty and became


\(^{21}\) Overmyer 1982 P616.
more dependent on the government. 5) The Maitreya tradition and the idea of a future Buddha to come was central to White Lotus teachings. The White Cloud did not emphasize a theme like this. 6) The White Lotus founder Mao Ziyuan’s (茅子元 1086-1166) teachings were influenced by the Tiantai School 天台宗, while the White Cloud founder Kong Qingjue’s teachings were influenced by the Huayan School 華嚴宗. In this dissertation, I shall analyze the uniqueness of the White Cloud movement compared with the White Lotus sect. The White Cloud movement had a shorter life than the White Lotus and focused less on scriptures and rituals. The White Lotus movement persisted longer and had greater impact across the empire. But there are much deeper differences between these two movements.

To summarize some basic similarities between the White Lotus and the White Cloud sects: 1) There was no central deity or god that either one of these sects worshiped. 2) Both sects’ main followers were lay commoners, rather than political elites or literati. 3) These two movements could be called “people’s religion” (in Japanese, shomin shūkyō; Chinese, shumin zongjiao 庶民宗教) that fell between popular local beliefs (minjian xinyang 民間信仰) and monastic religions. 4) Both two movements formed organized societies (she 社) or assemblies (hui 會) that were considered to be religious orders (kyūdan 教団; jiaotuan 教團) by the government. 5) They were both popular in the Jiangnan region. 6) Both movements’ activities transcended the realm of religious affairs and extended into civil life.

Finally, religious syncretism in the Song and Yuan periods was a significant component of how the “Song-Yuan-Ming Transition” is understood.\textsuperscript{23} Whereas current scholarship reevaluates the importance of the Yuan dynasty in the tremendous development of economy and society from the Song to the mid-Ming periods, not much attention has been given to religion and religious movements as factors rather than a consequence of that development. While individual localities and the state negotiated the ordering of the society, religious networks played a pivotal role similar to that of socio-political networks. The syncretism of three religions shown in Song art and literature, derived largely from non-official sources. But the Mongol Yuan state adopted and valued this tradition and made lay movements and religious sects promote the syncretistic tradition. The Song state, bounded within its imperial Confucian ideology, restrained or banned non-orthodox religions, but the Yuan state legitimated them, out of social concerns and in pursuit of merit. The Mongols actually politicized the White Cloud sect by creating offices and offering ways for lay people to seek religious choices. Overall, I take the White Cloud to be an example of Song-Yuan syncretism, as a product of the negotiation between the state and local lay groups over spiritual merits, financial interests, and ways to organized society. For the White Cloud, the Yuan period was the peak of this syncretistic trend, when the state and the White Cloud achieved their greatest mutual benefit as the government protected unorthodox religious activities. Also, non-religious activities conducted by the White Cloud group, such as farmland annexation and monastic registration, remained in a grey area because the White Cloud’s official status.

Local governments found it hard to persecute them, and the central government found them hard to control. Such non-religious activities challenged the White Cloud sect’s legitimate role as an official religious organization. Religious syncretism in the Yuan dynasty, as in the case of the White Cloud movement, was an inseparable part of the “Song-Yuan-Ming Transition.” The syncretistic religious group’s active involvement in local religious and civil affairs deeply shaped the social and political transformations taking place at the same time.

**Geography, ecology, and economy**

The White Cloud sect was rooted within the rich Jiangnan region, in the agricultural hinterland of Hangzhou, Huzhou 湖州, and Jiaxing 嘉興. The so-called Hang-Jia-Hu Plain 杭嘉湖平原 was home to the sect’s religious sites and its population of devotees. They were based in the emerging market towns connected by rivers and canals. As a subregion of the Lower Yangtze macroregion (also of the Jiangnan region, or of the Lake Tai Plain 太湖平原), the Hang-Jia-Hu Plain retained its commercial development and local economy after the Mongol conquest.24 This subregion lay within what was historically called the Right Zhe area 浙右 or the Western Zhe area 浙西.

Under the Southern Song dynasty, largely because Hangzhou was the empire’s capital, the Jiangnan region was the most developed and populous area. The Jiangnan region was also the intellectual center of China. Educated literati, scholar officials, and religious

---

clergy produced remarkable works of literature and art. Hangzhou and the Jiangnan region were also among the most popular Chinese Buddhist centers, a tradition going back to the Wuyue Kingdom (907-978 CE), which had embraced Buddhism from its capital at Hangzhou. From the Wuyue to the Song periods, Hangzhou and Huzhou also became the leading areas for commercial printing, especially for the printing of Buddhist books.

The natural environment of the Jiangnan region consists of the lowland delta surrounding Lake Tai 太湖. It is rich in water resources, connected by the Yangzi and the Qiantang 錢塘江 Rivers. Local people developed extensive irrigation systems to prevent and control floods during the Song period. The economy of Jiangnan was based on both local and regional networks of inland waterways and coastal maritime trade routes. Water transportation in the region was the most developed in East Asia at the time thanks to the Grand Canal 運河.

From the Wuyue to Song periods (tenth to thirteenth centuries), many local and regional canals were built and many wetlands were converted into farmland for the first time. The newly formed water system also accelerated the development of crops. Leading categories of agricultural products included rice, tea, and cotton, and leading

25 As a regional power in the tenth century, the Wuyue Kingdom is known for state patronage of Buddhism; the production and copying of Buddhist sūtras (not printing); and dredging, flood prevention, canal irrigation, and land reclamation—agricultural development and ecological transformation. For Buddhism and diplomacy under the Wuyue kingdom, see Edmund H. Worthy, “Diplomacy for Survival: Domestic and Foreign Relations of Wu Yüeh, 907-978,” in China among Equals: The Middle Kingdom and its Neighbors, 10th-14th Centuries, ed. Morris Rossabi (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1983), 17-44. For the legacy of Wuyue Buddhism into the Northern Song, see Huang Chi-Chiang, “Elite and Clergy in Northern Sung Hang-chou: A Convergence of Interest,” in Buddhism in the Sung, ed. Peter Gregory and Daniel Getz (Honolulu: University of Hawai’i Press, 2002), 295-339.

26 The Jiangnan delta region could be compared with Vietnam’s Mekong delta region.
manufactured products included porcelains and silks. Rich water resources in the region and the timber resources from western Huzhou and along the Tianmu Mountain terrain enabled the production and transportation of paper and ink, the key commodities for printing Buddhist books. The Hang-Jia-Hu Plain was the main region producing these key commodities. Successful businesses and increasing private ownership of farmland fostered local rich families and elite gentries. The so-called “water towns” 水鄉, which still exist today, are special water bound market towns on the Hang-Jia-Hu Plain. Many of these were established by big local families. Metropolitan Hangzhou and neighboring urbanized centers formed a huge market for commercial activities and a culture of consumption. The Southern Song culture of Hangzhou and Jiangnan were known for their luxury and waste through irrational consumption.

The Jiangnan region was one of the most densely populated areas in China during the Song-Yuan period, partly due to new immigrants arriving from North China following the fall of the Northern Song dynasty in 1127 CE and the collapse of the Jin dynasty in 1234 CE. Jiangnan’s economic development and local social dynamism grew continuously across the Northern-Southern Song and Song-Yuan transitions.

Thanks to greater available sources and a high concentration of intellectual writings, Jiangnan has been historians’ focal point in Song and Yuan studies. This “Jiangnanology,” as I have argued, should take into account more of the unique character of the region rather than applying the “Jiangnan paradigm” as a representative example of

---

China at that time. We should adopt a “Jiangnan exceptionalism” that treats Jiangnan as an experimental field in which the central government implemented new policies and created new institutions. From this perspective, “colonial Jiangnan” under Mongol Yuan rule maintained local groups such as the White Cloud sect, who were notable for their organization skills and communication strategies with the foreign rulers who valued and hired them. Local groups in Jiangnan were able to secure direct court patronage for both spiritual life and for popular activities such as Buddhist book printing and the building of infrastructure.

Accompanying the commercialization and urbanization during the Song-Yuan transition, market towns emerged and became more common, leaving room for local autonomy, both spatially and politically. Spatially speaking, these market towns, whether along waterways or in agricultural terrain, had no clear boundaries. They kept expanding and incorporating new residents and settlements to become cities without walls. Politically speaking, administrative power during the Yuan dynasty was held collectively at the central court and in the newly established provinces (i.e., Branch Secretariats). This new system left prefectural and county governments limited room for retaining local revenues and managing local resources. A power vacuum resulted, making space for local groups such as the White Cloud sect to step in and take charge of local affairs. Though Yuan local administration was weak, basic administrative seats were established in the cities and counties. However, the market towns in the Jiangnan region

---

28 Recent scholarly initiatives to challenge the Jiangnan model include a 2015 panel at the annual meeting of the Association for Asian Studies, “Alternative Perspectives on the Yuan-Ming Transition” The papers presented there raised questions against the hypothesis that “Jiangnan was representative of China as a whole and that Neo-Confucian institutions dominated the society after the Ming dynasty.”
were not part of that system due to a lack of imperial officials. The stability of imperial control in market towns depended on a town’s proximity a local county seat and the number of government officials physically present there. The administration and security of market towns and villages in the Yuan dynasty were maintained by a system call *cunshe* 村社, “village assembly.” Usually a local elder held in high regard was named as the head of local society, either as *xiangzhang* 鄉長, “canton head,” or *shezhang* 社長, “assembly head.”

He was responsible for daily civil affairs and general management of rituals, education, security, and agriculture, in his own town or village. Thus, the order of local society in the Yuan Jiangnan region was mainly in the hands of these local elites.

The urbanization of market towns, driven by elite localism, stimulated and also benefited from temple building activities. As Richard von Glahn argues in his studies of Jiangnan market towns’ religious lives, “The building of temples often marked a village market’s arrival as a town of some prominence.”

Von Glahn’s study does not, however, analyze cross-town or inter-town networks. He also does not distinguish between temple relocation and deity relocation, or different types of temples. The White Cloud sect’s affiliate temples had no special deity or unified building style. They could either be big monastic complexes or private house shrines. Von Glahn’s three case studies, including Jinze 金澤 (local elite family driven), Nanxiang 南翔 (industry driven), and Puyuan 濮院 (government driven), still do not give any evidence of temple driven development in which temple building was the key factor for the emergence and growth or the decline

---

29 These local units could also be called “urban wards,” *fang* 方; see Ruth Mostern, “Dividing the Realm in Order to Govern”: The Spatial Organization of the Song State (960-1276 CE) (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Asia Center, 2011), 258.

30 Von Glahn 2003: 196.
and elimination of a market town. His research only shows that the connection between
town building and temple building are strong. My research investigates how the White
Cloud sect supported temple buildings in different market towns and allocated local
resources for public projects such as Buddhist printing. The White Could movement did
not arise from urban temples in the largest cities, like Hangzhou and Huzhou, but was
rather the product of regional urbanization, as smaller individual market towns developed.
My hypothesis is that the White Cloud sect’s growth relied heavily on market towns and
canal networks, rather than on cities and political centers. This character of the White
Cloud movement prevented its spread into cities in the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion, as well as
outside of it.

Sources

There has never been a comprehensive study of the history of the White Cloud
movement, including its canon printing projects and connections with the Yuan
bureaucracy. The only Western work on the White Cloud movement is Daniel
Overmyer’s 1982 article “The White Cloud Sect in Sung and Yüan China.” In that
essay, he briefly introduces the history of the movement from the Song to Yuan periods,
defines it as a sect, and translates part of Kong Qingjue’s writings. There are other
English-language books that discuss heretic sects in Chinese history and mention the
White Cloud movement, often together with the White Lotus movement. They include,
but are not limited to, Kwang-Ching Liu’s Orthodoxy in Late Imperial China (1990),
Kwang-Ching Liu and Richard Shek’s Heterodoxy in Late Imperial China (2004), and

---

31 Overmyer (1982).

Western scholars of popular beliefs and local religious activities in the Jiangnan region during the Song-Yuan periods tend to focus more on deity worship and practical rituals, a tendency seen in the work of Valerie Hansen and Richard von Glahn. Such research separates classes of people into different categories of worships and activity. Barend ter Haar, in his article “Buddhist-Inspired Options: Aspects of Lay Religious Life in the Lower Yangzi from 1100 until 1340,” is the only scholar to point out the flexible choices of local religious activists and the fusion of various religious practices and merit-seeking activities. In this article, he also studied the donors’ list for the Puning and Qisha canons.

Japanese scholars, however, have made great strides in studying the White Cloud movement. Shigematsu Shunshō 重松俊章 and Haraguchi Norimasa 原口德正 were the earliest Japanese scholars who introduced the White Cloud sect. Ogawara Senshū 小笠原宣秀, in his studies of the Pure Land school in China, talks about local unlawful religious activities and their connections with the White Cloud and White Lotus sects. Ogawa Kan’ichi 小川貫矢 has contributed the most to the study of the White Cloud sect.

---


Two of his articles discuss the organization and local activism of the White Cloud sect. He also studied the organization of the Buddhist canon printing bureau in another article. Furthermore, he was the first scholar to notice the Tangut sponsor Li Huiye 李惠月 (or the Chan Master Bright 光明禪師) based on extant colophons and stamps on Puning canon sūtras. Chikusa Masaaki 竹沙雅章 studied the phenomenon of “people of the way” in the Song dynasty and connected them with the White Cloud movement in his studies of its history under the Yuan dynasty. The most recent Japanese studies of the White Cloud movement have focused on the lists of monastic members and lay patrons of the Puning canon printing project, including two articles by Kitamura Takashi 北村高 and Nozawa Yoshimi 野沢佳美. Nozawa has also studied the printing enterprise of the Huzhou’s Miaoyan Monastery 妙嚴寺, the former monastery of the White Cloud sect’s chief abbot Dao’an and the producer of the Puning canon’s predecessor. In addition, Susumu Kajiura 梶浦晉 has also studied the Puning canon, including its brief history, general contents, and the order of its canon’s sūtras.

Chinese-language scholarship has paid less attention to the White Cloud sect. Sun Kekuan 孫克寬 was the first scholar to introduce the history of the White Cloud sect in

---

36 Ogawa Kan’ichi (1951, 1958)  
38 Ogawa (1942).  
the Yuan dynasty in a very short essay. Ding Guofan 丁國范 introduced the history of
the sect in the Yuan dynasty in great detail and cited many primary sources (mainly
literati writings) that had not been mentioned before. There are also Yuan historians
such as Chen Gaohua 陳高華 who studied prominent figures that related to the White
Cloud sect, such as Yang Lianzhenjia 楊璉真伽. Notable scholars
of the Chinese Puning canon include Li Jining 李繼寧 and He Mei 何梅, and of the
Tangut Hexi canon Shi Jinbo 史金波, Sun Bojun 孫伯君, Duan Yuquan 段玉泉, and Cui
Hongfen 崔紅芬.

Earlier scholarship on the White Cloud sect generally treats it as a homogeneous
religious group. Scholars have addressed issues of coherent historical development,
dependence on government policies, and the work of printing the Buddhist canon. My
work focuses on the heterogeneous character of the movement. The “White Cloud sect,”
as a symbol or brand, has attracted different groups of people (to find ways to use the
name) and produced different cultural and religious products, namely Buddhist canons
and grotto arts. The reasons for the coexistence and mutual benefit of various White
Cloud adherents during the Yuan dynasty will be the central focus of my research.
Different groups found ways to make use of the “White Cloud sect” in fields of political
and social influence, and in spiritual and artistic attainment. More precisely, previous
scholars ignored the elements relevant to the success of the White Cloud movement,

43 Sun Kekuan (1967).
44 Ding Guofan (1992).
46 Works of these Chinese Tangutologists will be cited in Chapters 3 and 5.
including Tangut diasporas, local lay small-scale donors, grotto carving, and geographical context. I shall take all of them into account in my work.

Previous scholarship has also been limited by the variety of primary sources. Most scholars have restricted themselves to Buddhist chronicles and official records. Due to the movement’s illegal status and the lack of Buddhist canon printing business, Song sources are scarce. Most Song primary sources are official ones, which judge the movement from either a Confucian or Buddhist perspective. Also, the movement was loosely organized and less influential, and therefore fewer of its activities appear in historical records. For the Yuan dynasty, there are ample primary sources. These sources not only include official documents but also private accounts. There are also useful sources in Buddhist and non-Buddhist literature, as well as the visual arts, like the grottos of the Southern Hill 南山.

Most extant materials are either official documents or literati writings derived from first-hand knowledge and hearsay. The only sources written by the White Cloud participants themselves are Kong Qingjue’s two small books and Dao’an’s commentary on one of them, the Puning canon’s donor vow statements, and grotto inscriptions. There are no self-made texts surviving, such as teachings, meeting schedules, practical rituals, and the movement’s own historical accounts. As a result, our understanding of White Cloud members’ self-identity depends highly on external sources. With respect to literati writings, Mark Halperin in Out of the Cloister points out that new positive perspectives of literati toward monastic Buddhists emerged during the Song dynasty.47 This

47 Halperin, Out of the Cloister: Literati Perspectives on Buddhism in Sung China, 960-1279 (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Asia Center, 2006). On Song literati elites and popular religions, see also
phenomenon took place simultaneously with the emergence of Neo-Confucianism, as well as the weakening of ties between the state and Buddhist monasteries. The Song offers more examples of such ties in the close friendships between Confucian scholars and Buddhist masters and the literati embrace of Buddhist lifestyles and Buddhist arts. However, these literati were often found in a position together with monastic monks and of judging or being hostile towards lay religious practitioners. These can be seen in their writings, especially in the case of the White Cloud. Therefore, most primary sources seem to have negative accounts of the movement. Very few sources actually praised or recognized the contributions of the movement in local society. Some accounts depict the devastation that the White Cloud movement wrought on local society. But some accounts exaggerate due to the influence of Chinese Neo-Confucian polemics against lay religiocultural activities. The vilification of local officials through court memorial reports also directed the general impression of Chinese literati on the White Cloud movement.

The primary sources I employ fall into ten categories:

1) Official chronicles, especially the *Songshi* 宋史 and *Yuanshi* 元史, often criticize the White Cloud movement and include records of public policies and court memorials.

2) Buddhist historical chronicles by orthodox Chan Buddhist monks, who also criticized the White Cloud movement and questioned the legitimacy of its religious practices. Three main Buddhist chronicles talk about the White Cloud movement, including Zongjian’s 宗鑑 *The Orthodox Tradition of Buddhism* (*Shimen zhengtong* 釋門).

---

正統) of 1237, Zhipan’s 志磐 1269 Comprehensive Record of the Buddha and Buddhist Patriarchs (Fozu tongji 佛祖統記), and Jue’an’s 覺岸 Historical Studies of Buddhism in Outline (Shishi jigulü 释氏稽古略) from 1354. On the other hand, the accounts preserved in Buddhist chronicles also offer the most biographical information about the White Cloud monk Kong Qingjue and the history of Song and Yuan government persecution of the movement.

3) Laws that regulated or proscribed the White Cloud movement, or orders for the establishment of relevant bureaus of religious affairs. There are legal cases showing the disputes that involved White Cloud members, such as those contained in the Yuan dianzhang 元典章.

4) Buddhist canons printed by or related to the White Cloud sect in the Yuan dynasty, including the Puning Canon, the Qisha Canon, and the Tangut script Hexi Canon. They show the profound influence of the White Cloud sect and its canon editing and printing teams on Chinese and Tangut canonical traditions. Also, the donors’ list from the Buddhist sūtras in these printed canons provide a huge amount of data about the donors’ numbers, social status, family background, and size of donation, among other factors. These data about the movement’s lay devotee foundation will be used to analyze the local network of these donors and the religious landscape of local society in the Jiangnan region.

5) Records written by or for scholar-officials, including court memorial statements for imperial audiences 奏表, tomb epitaphs, and records of officials’ career

---

48 Relevant sources are found principally in Shimen zhengtong, chapter 4; Fozu tongji, chapters 46, 48, and 54; and Shishi jigulü, chapter 4.
accomplishments 政績記. These come mostly from the hands of Chinese literati and include information about the officials’ memos for implementing government orders to support or persecute the movement. Many of these records convey the complains of local officials during the Yuan dynasty, not just because the White Cloud movement’s activities violated the moral standard that scholar-officials held, but even more because officials worried about the loss of local government tax revenue and social disorder.

6) Local gazetteers. Because of the limited number of local gazetteers produced under the Yuan, few mention the White Cloud movement. Also, because the White Cloud movement was popular in market towns, writers of local gazetteers in bigger counties or cities in the region did not notice or recognize them.

7) Personal or leisure writings by literati, including anecdotes, legends, journals, and other personal accounts.

8) Epigraphic evidence. In addition to the above-mentioned epitaphs, there are stone inscriptions for the building of temples, bridges, grottos, and other sites related to the White Cloud movement.

9) Sect founder Kong Qingjue’s two books: *Collection of Virtuous Acts* (*Zhengxing ji 正行集*) and *Record for Apprentice* (*Chuxue ji 初學記*). They were included in the Puning canon in 1312. These are the only works that show the teachings of Kong and are thus the only sources to define the White Cloud movement’s religious identity.

10) Tangut language materials, including a Tangut translation of Kong Qingjue’s *Collection of Virtuous Acts* and some other texts mentioning a “White Cloud Buddhist”
or “White Cloud Master” that might refer to Kong Qingjue as some Tangutologists have speculated.\textsuperscript{49}

It is notable that there is new increased attention to the White Cloud sect in its birthplace of Yuhang, Hangzhou. On October 12, 2015, a conference called the “First Hangzhou Yuhang Grand Puning Monastery and Vernacular Buddhism Academic Symposium” was held near the Southern Hill in Pingyao 瓶窯, Yuhang.\textsuperscript{50} According to the online news, panel discussions included studies of the White Cloud sect, the Puning canon, and the grottos in the Southern Hill. The conference attendees agreed to publish a book series called \textit{History and Culture of Buddhism in the Southern Hill} 南山佛教歷史文化叢書 in the near future, including scholarly work on the White Cloud sect, canon printing, and the grottos, as well as a compilation of primary sources about the White Cloud sect. The local government claimed to build a temple complex called “Yuhang Southern Hill White Cloud Three Teachings/Religions Cultural Ecological Park” 餘杭南山白雲三教文化生態園. The Southern Hill is not a popular pilgrimage site in the modern era, since it only attracted local visitors after the Cultural Revolution. However, according to the construction plan for this “ecological park,” the temple complex will include a “Vulture Lecture Monastery” 靈鷲講寺 with an area for pilgrims 朝拜區, a temple for local deities called the “Buddha Light Cloister” 佛光院, a school for Confucian national

\textsuperscript{49} For Tangut script input, I use the font and software by Liu Changqing 柳常青, \textit{Xi Xia wen dianzi zidian ji shurufa ruanjian} 西夏文電子字典及輸入法軟件 (Yinchuan: Ningxia renmin chubanshe, 2013). For standard Chinese and English translations of Tangut character, I use Li Fanwen’s 李範文 Sino-Tangut dictionary, \textit{Xia-Han zidian} 夏漢字典, rev. ed. (Beijing: Zhongguo shehui kexue chubanshe, 2008).

\textsuperscript{50} http://science.china.com.cn/2015-10/14/content_8295058.htm
education (guoxue 國學) called the “Cloister for Promoting Literature” 弘文院, a hotel for household Buddhists jushi 居士 called “Cloister of Eight Leaves” 八葉院, a apartment for retirees called the “Cloister of Correct Fruit” 正果院, a center for Chan Buddhist retreat chanxiu 禪修 called the “Bodhi Cloister” 菩提院, and a research center for vernacular Buddhism in Zhejiang 浙江民間佛教研究中心. Although this plan does not include reconstruction of the Puning canon or the printing of a new Buddhist canon, the local government’s great ambition to consecrate the Southern Hill site and institutionalize local religious activists certainly does not fall short of the Mongol conquerors’ ambitions!

**Chapter outline**

The White Cloud movement was a very heterogeneous group of people doing diverse things in the name of the sect. There were devout laypeople and monks, extortionist elites, and profit-making Tangut printers. All of them acted in the name of the White Cloud sect. In order to better understand how and why these different groups and activities all coexisted under the White Cloud name, I have divided the chapters into different forms of the White Cloud sect’s name. The White Cloud movement in Chapter 1 was a loose group of local lay practitioners who were persecuted by the Song government as heretics and foolish people in general. In the early Yuan, the White Cloud movement became an official sect designated by the Mongols. The rulers treated it as a homogeneous Buddhist sect, but different groups of participants made it into heterogeneous entities. The White Cloud movement of Chapter 2 was an official religious
institution that offered economic and spiritual privileges, including property registration, farmland annexation, monastic institutionalization, and the printing of Buddhist canons. In general, the White Cloud movement of Part I (Chapter 1 and 2) was a local interest group throughout the Song-Yuan period.

The White Cloud movement in Chapter 3 was a contractor (and publisher) for printing the Puning canon. It served as a mediator by which different groups extracted local resources and established political connections/networks with the imperial court and prominent Buddhists. In Chapter 4, the White Cloud movement was a local entrepreneur that attracted and raised small-scale donations for printing the Buddhist canon while obtaining spiritual salvation and blessings for the lay donors by sponsorship of Buddhist sūtras. It established social networks linking local well-to-do families and individuals, based in the market towns of the Hang-Jia-Hu plain. Overall, the White Cloud movement of Part II (Chapters 3 and 4) was a social enterprise with a mission to print the Buddhist canon, linking different classes and creating social networks in pursuit of political, economic, and spiritual interests.

The White Cloud movement of Chapter 5, was a religious order that followed the “White Cloud monk” Kong Qingjue’s syncretistic teachings only through the written word. The White Cloud movement in Chapter 6 was a creator of artwork that carved grottos at a site next to the Puning Monastery on the Southern Hill. In Part III (Chapters 5 and 6), the White Cloud movement was syncretistic religious party, in both literary tradition and visual arts. It did not have a core unified doctrine nor a Buddhist philosophy. But its spiritual pursuit and practice were a mix of traditional religions including Confucianism, Buddhism, and Daoism.
Part I, “Formalizing the Unfamiliar,” includes Chapters 1 and 2 and focuses on the chronology and geopolitics of the White Cloud movement across the Song and Yuan periods. It explains how and why the new Mongol regime formalized disparate local groups of monastic monks, and lay religious practitioners in the Jiangnan region into a new institution—the “White Cloud sect.” It analyzes the historical context of different Yuan policies toward the White Cloud sect and how they affected state-local relations.

Chapter 1, “Eating Vegetables and Serving Devils: The Prehistory of the White Cloud Movement,” compares the policies of the Chinese Song dynasty with those of the Mongol Yuan when dealing with newly emergent local groups. The Song government labeled all of these as “people of the way” and “vegetarian devil worshippers” and persecuted them. By contrast, the Mongol Yuan government designated the White Cloud sect officially, and enforced jurisdiction over the sect’s monasteries, private cloisters and lay followers.

Chapter 2, “Gathering People and Making Profits: The History of the White Cloud Movement,” investigates all institutional establishments and changes for the White Cloud sect throughout the Yuan dynasty. By drawing evidence from official chronicles, government records, literati writings, sūtra colophons, and stone inscriptions, my research argues that the Mongols’ creation and abolition of offices related to handle White Cloud sect religious affairs were reluctant responses to this growing lay movement and its social activities. The Mongols appointed Tangut diasporic monks, along with Tibetan colleagues, to take charge of these offices. But they ultimately failed to control the movement. White Cloud members were still active up to the fall of the Yuan dynasty. Thus the White Cloud movement was always deeply rooted in local lay society.
Part II, “Networking through the Buddhist Canon,” consists of Chapters 3 and 4 and focuses on the social network and relationships among different parties involved in Buddhist canon printing projects, including the White Cloud sect’s Puning canon and the related Tangut Hexi canon printed in Hangzhou. Different parties included Chinese, Tangut, and Tibetan monks, local canon patrons, editors and printers, local government, religious affairs bureaus, and the Mongol state.

Chapter 3, “Monks and Statesmen,” traces the White Cloud sect’s political network from top to bottom. The Yuan state legalized and continued monitoring the White Cloud movement by employing new migrant non-Chinese monks and statesmen as clergy officials. I point out that the Tangut Buddhist monks played key roles as mediators in the Puning canon printing project, by implementing imperial policies in the sect and its printing workshops. I demonstrate the strong ties among Tangut diaspora monks and their significant influence on the White Cloud sect’s development in the Jiangnan region. I also reveal the close connection between the Puning Canon and the Tangut Canon in general, by showing how the two printing projects shared similar editors, artisans, workshops, patrons, and sponsors.

Chapter 4, “Local Canon Patrons,” traces the White Cloud sect’s social network from the bottom up. I argue that state influence did not extend beyond the canon printing projects and had only limited effect on lay religious practices. Based on data analysis of canon donors’ list and the donors’ spatial distribution, I argue that urbanized market towns in the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion were where most social activists and lay devotees related to canon production lived. These market towns, which connected by canals and waterways, served as the key hubs that concentrated lay patrons of the Puning canon and
enabled them to make small-scale donations for canon printing. These lay patrons, as I discovered from the data, were from mostly Chinese local common households, including private Buddhist practitioners, farmers, craftsmen, low rank local officials, and even independent widows. This composition is similar to the social structure of the local lay donors to the Qisha canon printed in Suzhou during the Song and Yuan dynasties. It proves the financial capability of lay families and patterns of Buddhist merit-seeking patronage in the Jiangnan region with little interruption from the Mongol conquest and governance.

Chapters 5 and 6 of Part III, “Mixing the Three Teachings,” focus on the religious identity of the White Cloud movement. From textual remains and the visual arts produced by the White Cloud sect, we can determine that the sect did not belong to Buddhism or another religious branch, even though the sect printed Buddhist canons. Instead, the teachings and practices of the White Cloud sect reflected contemporary trends toward religious syncretism in the Song-Yuan period, in which lay religious groups did not follow one particular religion. They had plenty of choices for religious activities that fused elements of the “three teachings”—Confucianism, Buddhism, and Daoism.

Chapter 5, “Writings of the ‘White Cloud Monk,’” provides comprehensive translations and analyses of Kong Qingjue’s two books. Collection of Virtuous Acts is a guidebook of moral teaching in simple words, for lay audience to memorize and act daily. It borrows many terms from Confucian classics. The Tangut translation is similar and much briefer than the Chinese original. It could come from the Tangut Hexi canon, which is closely connected to the White Cloud sect’s Puning canon. Record for Apprentice is a guidebook for beginning Buddhist followers, including both lay and monastic apprentices,
that uses Buddhist jargon and six-character poems for easy recitation. The current version has Dao’an’s detailed commentary, which explains Buddhist terms. From these two extant books, I argue that Kong Qingjue did not create any unique ideas or religious doctrines. Buddhist terms used in his texts such as the “four fruitions” and “ten stages” derived from the Huayan school and were popular in the Song dynasty. Therefore, there is neither a central belief of the White Cloud sect, nor teachings about conducting rituals.

Chapter 6, “Grottos of the Southern Hill,” introduces the existing grottos carved by the White Cloud sect in the Southern Hill, where the Puning Monastery’s headquarters are located. All thirteen grottos have reliefs inside the niches, and their average height is about 2 meters. More than half of them show the sitting Buddha. There are three grottos with unique motifs, including one of a Daoist god and two of different forms of Avalokiteśvara. The vernacular appearance of the sitting Buddha series, their inaccurate mudrās, and the unique figures of a Daoist god and special Avalokiteśvara manifestations, demonstrate the syncretistic trend of the White Cloud as a lay religious movement through the use of local artists and patrons for the grottos. Most of the grottos are dated to the Yuan era. There are two inscriptions attached to the grottos that show carving dates from the late Yuan dynasty (1323-1368). This means that the White Cloud sect followers around the Puning Monastery were still active in merit-making projects after the official ban of the sect in the mid-Yuan dynasty. The carving of grottos serves as evidence of the sect’s continuous local activism, comparable to Part II’s example of local people still printing copies of the Puning canon during the late Yuan dynasty. Local groups related to the White Cloud sect and the Puning Monastery monks never stopped sponsoring and participating in local religious projects throughout the Yuan dynasty.
PART I: Formalizing the Unfamiliar

Chapter 1. Eating Vegetables and Serving Devils: The Prehistory of the White Cloud Movement

As for the deeds of the self-proclaimed “White Cloud evil religion,” who held wide swaths of farmland, forcibly took civil property, harmed innocents, and left no means by which to argue with them: once the local government questioned a case, there immediately arose crowds to make rumors and bribe officials. There was no boundary between white and black [justice and evil], the poor became poorer and stuck in their duties. Only they [the White Cloud members] do whatever they want and do not submit even one inch of silk or one granule of grain to the government. If local commoners and families tried to accuse them, then they would ask their staff to collect false evidence and accuse these common families in return. They were rooted in society for a long time, and people viewed them as dangerous animals. In their eyes there were no laws . . . . Ziyu said, “They will not exist as long as I am still alive! Now I rule our society according to the order of the Son of Heaven. Who are these demon worshippers? Are they going to cause trouble for our politics and for our children . . . ? The evil in their monstrous religion comes from their worship of demons.”

Lu Ziyu, Record of Eliminating Monsters (1218)

This is only appearance of the “White Cloud” movement referred to as religion (jiao 教) in historical records of the Song dynasty. Although in this quote the official Lu Ziyu (1178-1250) called the White Cloud an evil jiao, an “evil religion,” we cannot

51 Lu Ziyu 陸子遹, “Chu yaohai ji” 除妖害記 (Record of Eliminating Monsters), in Minsu zhi 民俗志, Zhizheng Jinling xinzhi 至正金陵新志, ch. 8. See also Li Jingfeng 李景峰 “Zhiguanzhi: Minghuan” 職官志: 名宦, in Suyang xian zhi 溧陽縣志, ch. 9.
conclude that there was such an exclusive White Cloud religious order in the Song period. People in the Song usually did not call the White Cloud movement a religion. Chinese scholar-officials preferred to refer to spiritually related group gatherings as heterodoxy, different from mainstream monastic religions and officially recognized popular beliefs. But what we really see here is these spiritual interests driving people’s ability to collaborate on public affairs in local society and socially influencing both local citizens and government. In spite of all the negative narratives of their activities, people involved in the White Cloud movement sought to accumulate local resources, including farmlands and household properties. The competition over local resources is partly the reason for the government’s negative treatment of local religious movements. They also held high reputations in local society, whether due to common people’s fear or respect. As we scrutinize primary sources, including official writings and orthodox Buddhist chronicles, we find that the White Cloud movement during the Song period was seen very negatively. Officials and orthodox Buddhists spoke out against non-official religious movements.

The White Cloud movement was a part of popular lay activities embodying what the government saw as problematic spiritual pursuits and suspicious practices, including “eating vegetables and serving devils” 吃菜事魔, and “people of the way” 道民. The former was a negative label given by the government, whereas the latter was the autonym of these group members and individuals themselves to indicate their Buddhist devotion. These two categories were integrated, such that a person could be both. The Song rulers and Confucian scholars usually viewed these two phenomena both as markers of participation in secret societies or unlawful organizations. I argue that there was no clear structure of leadership among these people during the Song, but the majority of Yuan
White Cloud sect members were local people from these Song popular local activists and devotees, along with a minority of monks who followed the teachings of the White Cloud monk Kong Qingjue 孔清覺. This chapter discusses the evolution of the sect from the Song to the early Yuan.

“Those who eat vegetables and serve devils,” or just “vegetarian devil worshippers,” became a negative title for people in Western Zhe area (Liangzhe route) whom the Northern and Southern Song governments found to be involved in suspicious spiritual events. They were known for unapproved “assembling at night and dispersing at dawn” 夜聚晓散, “instant assembling and sudden dispersing” 倏聚忽散, and “men and women mixing indiscriminately” 男女混杂. The term “White Cloud Vegetarians” 白雲菜 was used to refer to the movement. “Eating vegetables and serving devils” was a very flexible term that the Song government created. The people who were accused of conducting activities like this were various casually organized groups, rather than a centralized religious sect. Some of them could be related to other millennialist movements and lay Buddhist groups that had their own systems of teachings and practice, as well as clear leadership structures.

“People of the way,” was a name for those lay people who were involved in non-monastic religious activities and local infrastructure projects. The “Way” (dao) of daomin originally referred to the Buddhist way or dharma after Buddhism’s arrival in China. “People of the way” was title that practitioners claimed for themselves, and the character dao often appeared in the names of local lay individuals. In the eyes of the Song government, they represented a wrong way that was neither promoted nor approved by
the government. “People of the way” were the participants and predecessors of the lay movements of religious elements such as the “White Cloud,” the “White Lotus,” and Chinese Manichaeism in the Song-Yuan period. On the other hand, we rarely see any records of both people who were “eating vegetables and serving devils” and groups of “people of the way” in the Yuan dynasty. This was the result of shifting government policies toward lay religious practice and official designations of lay groups, including the White Cloud sect, a subject for the next chapter.

Self-styled “people of the way” and government-labeled “vegetarian devil worshippers” had similarities. First, their activities and public appearances made them different from common people’s normal daily lives, and their spiritual lives were different from typical monastic lives too. Second, they might not have a centralized leadership to oversee different groups, but these people as a whole were very successful at organizing activities, connecting people of different social classes, and collecting funding and local resources, as well as assisting construction projects locally. Third, people from “vegetarian devil worshippers” and “people of the way” were not full-time devout religious cohorts, rather they were part-time meet-up groups. On account of the newly rising market towns, many of them were peasants and land owners. Their religious activities fit in the gap of agricultural seasons and schedules. Fourth, for both “vegetarian devil worshippers” and “people of the way,” these groups’ relationships with the Song state were never successful but rather always received hostile government comment and treatment. For example, once any local unofficial religious activities were labeled as “vegetarian devil worship,” the people involved would immediately suffer a government
ban and persecution. At all bureaucratic levels there was no lenience or room for
discussion of these people’s social status.

As for the geographical distribution of these troublemaking laypeople, most of
them were located in the Jiangnan region, including modern-day southern Jiangsu,
Shanghai, and northern Zhejiang. These were the most populated and economically
developed regions in both the Song and the Yuan Empires. Most participants of the lay
groups were local people of rural commoner social status, based in agriculture and
regional commerce. Government officials do not appear to have been participants in local
lay movements, because both their official duties and Neo-Confucian moral teachings
restrained them from groups with “heterodox” practices. But interestingly, we do see
instances in which names of officials appeared as patrons of bridge or temple building
projects undertaken by “people of the way.” But no official identified himself as a
“Person of the Way.”

Some local elites had been involved in these popular movements. The localization
of social elites in the Jiangnan region shows the close involvement of elites, both those
with and without official posts, in local affairs. As shown in the Introduction, the
Jiangnan region witnessed development of different religious schools, especially
Buddhism, and the popularity of new deities during the Song, especially those who
blessed regional merchants. There is no clear evidence of “people of the way” and the
White Cloud movement worshipping particular deities, but there should be no doubt that
they were not restrained from worshiping different gods since religious syncretism
formed the mainstream of popular beliefs in the Song period. Overall, dynamics of
commercial development, vernacular life, and regional economy provided many choices
for local people in the Jiangnan region to pursue different forms of spiritual life collectively.

This chapter introduces the early history (or even the pre-history) of the White Cloud movement, from its official condemnation and persecution by the Song dynasty to official recognition and legitimization by Khubilai Khan 忽必烈 (1215-1294) in the early Yuan dynasty. After first discussing the active local groups and their religious lives in the Jiangnan region from 1100 CE, the analysis moves to a discussion of Kong Qingjue’s life of and his influence on the White Cloud movement in the Song. It concludes with an explanation for the Yuan dynasty’s new policy and the change of official perspectives on these local powerful groups from the Song to the Yuan.

As I shall discuss further, the White Cloud movement before the Mongols’ arrival was not a single local religious organization with exclusive teachings and members. It was a lay movement combining religious themes with the pursuit of local welfare. At the end of the Northern Song dynasty, a so-called “White Cloud Monk,” Kong Qingjue, was recognized as the founding father of the White Cloud sect. Kong had syncretistic teachings that mixed Buddhism and other moral ideas. There was no practical component to his ideas, and he was not accepted by a wide audience. During the Song period, we see mostly the dynamics of lay groups and movements within local society and observe their ability to influence local construction projects, often in conflict with the interests of the Song government.

In China from the eleventh century onwards, legendary religious masters such as Kong were quite common. They usually created their own syncretistic and easily understood teachings and attracted disciples and followers who could collectively form a
religious group. These masters often provided unorthodox but easy methods to achieve salvation and pursue eternal life and enlightenment in few simple steps. Many of them had millenarian teachings or predicted the coming of Maitreya.

We will see that most participants and supporters of the White Cloud sect in the Yuan were local commoners, including peasants and craftsmen but also rich landowners and families concentrated in the Hangzhou-Jiaxing-Huzhou Plain (the Hang-Jia-Hu Plain). These lay people had connections with White Cloud monasteries and cloisters, which were often privately built and owned since the Song period. The lay people were the leading force of the Yuan-era White Cloud movement. In terms of population and the people who conducted local activities, their power and influence exceeded the monastic Buddhist clergy of the White Cloud. From the Song to the Yuan, White Cloud participants always had clear divisions between monks and lay commoners. In the Song dynasty, the monks who followed Kong Qingjue and his teachings were not ordained at official monasteries and had no officially issued monastic certificate or license 度牒. Although these monks were said to obey to Buddhist principles, including celibacy, maintaining vegetarian diets, and reciting Sūtras, they were still not recognized by the Song government. They were treated still as lay people and had tax duties. More importantly, they faced the risk of persecution and punishment from the government at any time. However, in the eyes of local people, monks and lay Buddhists from private monasteries, including those of the White Cloud, were no different from the monks of officially recognized monasteries. In some sense, local people might feel closer to the former than the latter, due to a monastery’s location and sharing a hometown and culture with the monks (official monasteries tended to have more monks come in from other
places). These private temples and cloisters were built by local engineers and craftsmen and located in suburban areas, mostly market towns.

Their financial support and funds for property management were based solely on local donations. Donation methods and amounts were more flexible and acceptable to lay people than were those of the official monasteries. Not all local officials were hostile towards private temples and their affiliated lay believers. There were cases of local officials submitting donations, and some even requested Buddhist ritual performance and infrastructure building from devout lay people. These officials valued the local movement activists’ availability, skills, and lower cost for conducting various projects. In construction projects, the “people of the way” were often involved.

Overall, in the Song period, most temples that had connections with the White Cloud movement were not official, so they could not receive tax exemptions. However, the lay movements enjoyed other benefits compared with monastic religions, such as easier and cheaper paths to salvation, convenient locations for social gatherings, skills in property management, and the ability to organize local activities and construction projects. As for “people of the way,” they contributed to local society through development projects, undertaken either by individual or private socio-religious groups. They tended to have broad contacts with different groups of people, including different religious institutions, powerful local clans, and even government officials. So their social circles were not limited to only one Buddhist temple or one certain group. Therefore, their religious and social activities could involve quite a variety of people.

In the Yuan dynasty, beginning in the reign of Khubilai Khan, the Mongol rulers favored the White Cloud movement and other lay religious groups. The White Cloud was
recognized officially as a Buddhist sect, and therefore all affiliated monasteries could enjoy a series of privileges including tax exemption, acquisition of property, and donations. The government allowed lay people, including those of “people of the way” and those “eating vegetables and serving devils” to register as members of the White Cloud temples, and had their landed property converted to monastic lands for tax exemption. This good news encouraged a large number of laypeople to attach themselves to the White Cloud sect, regardless of their religious orientation. As we shall discuss in Chapter 2, the broad attachment of lay population to the White Cloud sect during the early Yuan led to a policy shift in the mid and late Yuan dynasty. Because the White Cloud sect had a series of huge impact on the social and political structure of local society in the Jiangnan region.

Throughout the Yuan period, the White Cloud movement still kept a clear division between monks and lay people among its members and supporters in spite of the difference between its development paths during the Song and the Yuan periods. The laymen’s local connections and devotions had shifted in the development of their favored White Cloud sect. In the Yuan dynasty, the number of temples belonging to the White Cloud increased dramatically, and thus many White Cloud monks emerged. These monks started to implement hierarchy, generation division, and lineage. Also among these monks were Tangut monks in addition to the Chinese monks who formed the majority. The laypeople of the White Cloud sect were separate from these monks. They continued the Song traditions of sponsoring and assisting local activities and contributed to the making and publication of Buddhist canons. The canon-printing project was the most successful collaboration between monks and laymen in the White Cloud sect.
“Eating vegetables and serving devils” 吃菜事魔

“Eating vegetables and serving devils” is both a general term and a phrase describing a special phenomenon of lay religious activities beginning in the eleventh century. These activities drew government attention and were given this labeled by the government. Such a title constituted a negative designation. Chinese literati writings and Buddhist chronicles often described these activities as dangerous and evil and people involved as foolish and in need of correct direction. I argue that these were, in fact, well-organized activities of local laypeople who chose much easier alternatives for spiritual pursuit. These self-organized popular activities were usually night gatherings that dispersed at dawn, gatherings of huge crowds, public speeches, vegetarian banquets, and other events at privately built monasteries and abbeys. Some of them had rules or restrictions such as banning meat and alcohol, as well as commitments to celibate life. Some of the participants were recognized as “monks with hair,” or as lay monks. These people had extensive local networks, especially in Western Zhejiang. They could be organized in associations that collected and allocated funds and resources based on donations from lay followers.

Throughout the Southern Song dynasty, the government implemented a series of edicts and laws to prohibit lay religious practices and the building of private temples. The Song government always held a suspicion and hostile views of non-official religious groups. The government’s deep fear and fierce punishment of local lay religious movements were attributed to the Fang La 方腊 Rebellion in the Jiangnan region at the end of the Northern Song dynasty. The Fang La Rebellion was a devastating, large-scale local revolt against the Song government, initiated by a local secret society (possibly the
Chinese Manichaeism *Monijiao* 摩尼教 and lasting three years (1120-1122). At one point, it controlled six prefectures and fifty-two counties, covering the Zhejiang, Jiangsu, Jiangxi, and Anhui regions, which were the most developed parts of Jiangnan. Fang La had also conquered Hangzhou, one of China’s finest cities, which soon became the capital of the Song Empire when its government relocated after the Jurchen invasion in 1127. Fang La’s rebellion in Muzhou睦州 and neighboring regions received support from Manichean allies and other lay religious groups, diviners, and spiritualists. For example, there was a Manichean leader Quzhou衢州 named “Demon Master Zhen”魔王 who joined Fang La’s rebel forces. The Chinese scholar Chen Yuan陈垣 was the first to hinted that the title “eating vegetables and serving devils” might refer to Chinese Manicheans. After that, several Chinese scholars insisted that the title did indeed refer to Manicheans. In recent years, however, scholars have suggested that the title was not necessarily connected to Manicheans. Chikusa Masaaki pointed out that, when the Song government discovered and persecuted suspicious religious activities, they had no clear definition of each religious group. Thus labeling people as “eating vegetables and serving

---

“devils” was just an indication of unlawful religious groups but not a designation for any particular religious sect.\(^{56}\) I agree that the title was just a name for the general phenomenon of newly emerging lay religious movements of whom the government was aware. In fact, even these religious groups themselves were not clearly identified and defined in their teachings and practices. In terms of membership and group division, these people were often mixed among different groups and involved in various kinds of worship and meetings.

The activities of “eating vegetables and serving devils” were found in four main regions—particularly in Jiangnan—including present-day Zhejiang, Jiangsu, Jiangxi, and Fujian, mostly developed coastal areas. In the transitional period from the Northern to the Southern Song, a booming economy, the reclamation of new lands, the urbanization process, new immigration, and new ideas from Buddhist schools in South China caused the prosperity of various religious societies. It seems that the popular religious movements’ wide spread and freedom from government control began at the time of the Fang La rebellion, and official persecution followed then as well.

The prohibition against those “serving devils and eating vegetables” was strict . . . . However, there have been many recently practicing in this way, from Fujian to Wenzhou and reaching Liangzhe [Eastern and Western Zhejiang]. During the Fa La rebellion in Muzhou, their disciples emerged everywhere.”\(^{57}\)

\(^{56}\) Chikusa Masaaki, Chūgoku Bukkyō shakaishi kenkyū 中国仏教社会史研究, 199.

\(^{57}\) Zhuang Chuo 庄绰, Jilei bian 鸡肋编.
Beliefs and categories

When the Song scholar-official Wang Zhi 王質 spoke of those who “eat vegetables and serve devils” in the Jiangxi 江西 region, he mentioned their categories. We can see a variety of groups and the names of texts they used. Their practices were “Karmamudrā,” “double meeting,” “white Buddha,” “Diamond Chan.” And their books were *Fotu xinshi* 佛吐心师, *Foshuo tilei* 佛說涕泪, *Xiaoda mingwang chushi* 小大明王出世, *Kaiyuan jing* 開元經, *Kuodi bianwen* 括地變文, *Qitian lun* 齊天論, *Wulai qu* 五來曲. Some of these appear to be texts of the Manicheans, like the *Xiaoda mingwang chushi*. Another famous Song scholar official, Lu You 陸游, also categorized these groups. He made the definite link of local popular beliefs to secret societies that threatened the state through rebellion. He compared these secret groups with Fang La and historical religious rebels, such as the Yellow turban 黃巾 leader Zhang Jiao 張角 of the Han dynasty and the Way of the Five Pecks of Rice 五斗米道 leader Sun En 孫恩 during the Jin dynasty. He said that Manichaeism (*mingjiao* 明教) was among the most powerful sects at that time. Other names used in different regions for suspicious religious activities include *erkuaizi* 二禿子 in Huainan 淮南, *mounijiao* 牟尼教 (Manichaeism) in Liangzhe 江浙, *siguo* 四果 in Jiangdong 江東, *jingang chan* “Diamond Chan” 金剛禪 in Jiangxi 江西, and *mingjiao* 明教 and *jiedi zhai* 揭諦齋 in Fujian 福建. 58

58 Wang Zhi 王質, *Xueshan ji* 雪山集.
59 Lu You 陸游, “Tiao dui zhuang yi” 条对状一, in *Weinan wenji* 渭南文集, ch. 5. *Erkuai zi* 二禿子, the Chinese Manichean phrase *shuangzong erhui jing* 雙宗二會經, might refer to *erhui* 二會 or *erzong* 二宗. See Chen Yuan, “Monijiao ru zhongguo kao,” 365, quoting Li Jian 李兼, “Jie shimo shishi” 戒事魔十诗; and Jiading Chicheng zhi 嘉定赤城志, ch.37. “Diamond Chan” 金刚禅, not monastic Chan Buddhist, involved laypeople performing religious activities including the recitation of the Diamond Sūtra, *Bishu*
Although Lu You did not explicitly name the “White Cloud,” we find that the term “Four Fruitions” for group religious activities in Jiangdong might refer to the White Cloud. In the orthodox Buddhist chronicle *Shimen zhengtong* (1237), it states that the White Cloud sect was found by Kong Qingjue, who created the theories of “Four Fruitions” and “Ten Stages.”

Among the White Cloud Vegetarians during the Daguan period of Huizong’s reign, monk Kong Qingjue of Baoying Monastery of the Western Capital [Luoyang] resided at White Cloud Chapel in Hangzhou. He established the “Four Fruitions” and the “Ten Stages,” and he wrote several essays. His teachings were in the vernacular, and [his followers] were also called “Ten Stage Vegetarians.”

The “Four Fruition” was a concept influenced by Huayan Buddhism, and Chikusa questioned whether it was related to the White Cloud.

Because of the use of another term, the “Ten Stages,” the White Cloud followers were also called the “Ten Stage Vegetarians” in both the *Shimen zhengtong* and the *Fozu tongji* (1269). The “Ten Stages” (also called the “Ten Habitations” 十住), will be discussed in Chapter 5, on Kong Qingjue’s writings.

---

60 Zongjian, “Chiwei zhi” 斥偽志, *Shimen zhengtong*, ch. 4; also in Zhipan, *Fozu tongji*, ch. 54.
61 In Buddhism, the “Four Fruitions” 四果, or the four fetters, are the four stages that Śrāvaka should achieve in order to become arahats, that is the four stages of enlightenment. They are Sotapanna 須陀恒果 (stream-enterer 入流果), Sakadagami 斯陀含果 (once-returner 一來果), Anāgāmi 阿那含果 (non-returner 不來果), and Arahat 阿羅漢果. Each fruition is a step forward from the previous fruition. From the *Samyuktāgama* 集阿含經.
62 Zhipan, *Fozu tongji*, ch. 54.
Another Buddhist chronicle *Fozu tongji* places the “White Cloud Vegetarians” 白雲菜 into its section on “Devil Worshippers and Villainous Parties” 事魔邪黨. It thus targeted the White Cloud as the opposite of orthodox Buddhism. However, *Shimen zhengtong* points out that the White Cloud followers are not “wicked people” 奸民 but rather “foolish/absurd people” 愚民. It says that these foolish people cannot be confused with those “vegetarian devil worshippers” 實不可與事魔妖黨同論. Therefore, it suggests that the people who were involved in the White Cloud were ignorant and innocent. They were just obsessed and controlled by a few evil leaders, and they were not totally responsible for the events in which they were involved, because these lay people were not clear about what they believed and practiced. Wang Zhi used the term the “sinister way” 左道, which attracted “foolish people” to seek bliss and “wicked people” to seek benefits. “Foolish people” studied and practiced the “sinister way” and were actually deceived by the leaders who were often called masters *zongshi* 宗師. Their secret society had a strict internal structure, and the masters made and implemented rules. Wang Zhi suggested that once the masters were captured, these groups would become automatically disorganized, and the “foolish people” would return to their normal lives.

Overall, the state and organized Buddhism criticized these lay religious practices, but a wide range of people engaged in these activities. Those “eating vegetables and serving devils” did not constitute a particular group with certain set of beliefs; they had nothing to do with orthodox Buddhist teachings. It was a comprehensive title for all

---

63 Zongjian, “Chiwei zhi,” ch. 4.
65 Wang Zhi, “Lun zhendao shu” 論鎮盜疏, in *Xueshan ji*, ch. 3.
suspicious lay religious groups. The beliefs of these people were a mix of varied religious schools, local popular beliefs, and other faiths. The creation and use of this title by scholar officials and the Song government, resulted not from the lay groups’ holding unorthodox ideas, but because of their worrisome activities and the risk of social instability.

**Activities and official persecution**

According to government claims and official records, some common features of the activity of “eating vegetables and serving devils” included but was not limited to: eating vegetables, prohibitions on meats and alcohol, forming groups to read and recite religious texts, circulating cult images and objects, not worshipping orthodox gods and ancestors, not receiving guests, burying corpses naked, rapid assembling and dispersal, mingling of men and women, gathering at night and dispersing at dawn, forming structured organizations with strict principles, spreading out quickly, and growing even faster and wider range after official bans were enacted. Crowds of from hundreds of people to thousands could attend these group activities. The participants in unlawful religious activities were mostly laypeople, including peasants, but they could also include intellectuals, officials, and soldiers. Sometimes, there were dress codes, mostly calling for white clothes or white clothes with black caps. There were activities including

---

66 For example, these beliefs mixed elements from Daoism, Shamanism, and popular rituals and customs. Ye Mengde 葉夢得, *Bishu luhua* 避暑錄話 j.2 Fang Shao 方勺, “Qingxi kougui” 青溪寇軌, in Tao Zongyi 陶宗儀, *Shuofu* 說郛 j.39.


the “white clothes Sūtra assembly” 白衣經會, instruction by the White Clothes Masters 白衣大師 or the White Clothes Way 白衣道. 69 Neither the activities themselves nor the group was inherently problematic. These were just ways for the state to identify them as harmful and wicked.

These activities were well organized. According to government reports, there was often a leader in each assembly or village called the “devil father” 魔翁, “devil mother” 魔母, “devil head” 魔頭, or “Master” 宗師. 70 They also had networks connecting them with similar organizations in neighboring villages. Some activities encouraged frugal lifestyles and Buddhist cultivation. The more important functions of their activities were collective projects for social welfare and local development, as well as uniting in lawsuits and in negotiations with the government. Therefore, some activities became more significant in socially and economically rather than religiously. (In the local society of the early Southern Song, these activities filled an important and unmet need created by a booming population, religious diversity, commercialization, and urbanization. As part of their activities, the White Cloud movement also filled this need.) Some organizations of the people “eating vegetables and serving devils” controlled their followers tightly and had more influence than did local government, thus creating a major threat to the stability of social order in the affected areas, mainly villages. (The assemblies were loosely linked and somewhat different from each other.) Such organizations helped their members in mutual support, demonstrating mutual aid and good organization.

69 Song huiyao jigao 宋會要輯稿 (Beiping: Beiping tushuguan, 1936), xingfa, 2: 132.
70 Zhuang Chuo, Jilei bian, ch. 1; Wang Zhi, Xueshan ji; Li Xinchuan 李心傳, Jianyan yilai xinian yaolu 建炎以來系年要錄, ch. 76.
Once one family had a problem, people from the same party all extended their power to help [the family].\textsuperscript{71}

Once he joined the party, the poorest member had the whole congregation’s financial assistance and thereby became self-supporting through the accumulation of donations. Whoever came across another member [of the party], they did not have to know each other but just took food from their granary. They used all things without individual ownership, and called themselves one family, so they were said to have no boundary. These benefits attracted people.\textsuperscript{72}

In these narratives, they were also called party/faction 黨, revealing the close connections (or sharing of property, time, and identity) inside the organizations.

The Southern Song court, newly set up in Hangzhou after reestablishing order in the wake of the Jurchen conquest, became aware of the newly emerging lay religious groups in the Liangzhe region (present-day Zhejiang). In the fifth moon of Shaoxing 4 (1134) 紹興四年五月, Imperial Diarist 起居舍人 Wang Juzheng 王居正 submitted a court memorial that said:

I have observed the custom of “eating vegetables and serving devils” in the prefectures and counties of Liangzhe. Before the Fang La rebellion, the law governing this matter was loose, and such customs were not so popular. After Fang La, the law became harsher, but the custom of “serving devils” became harder to prohibit. Officials in prefectures and counties witnessed their activities but did not intervene. Some of them coveted recognition or were afraid of incidents. If one traced [these illegal activities] just a little bit, there would be bloodshed in the area. As for household communities and properties, including forests, chickens, and dogs, they were all burned and looted leaving nothing. Over the more than ten years since the pacification of the Fang La rebellion to today, more

\textsuperscript{71} Li Xinchuan, Xinian yaolu, ch. 76.
\textsuperscript{72} Zhuang Chuo, Jilei bian, ch. 1.
than tens of thousands of people have died because of these unfortunate disasters.73

This narrative exaggerates its metaphor, but we can still perceive the huge influence of these people in local society and the government’s fear of their presence. It again reinforces the big bang of lay religious activities’ connection to Fang La and locates the crackdown on such activities in the early Southern Song and in Liangzhe. In the *Important Documents of the Song (Song huiyao jigao 宋會要輯稿)*, there are approximately twenty-six imperial edicts 詔書 and decrees 敕書 from 1092 to 1214 that persecute these people and ban their activities.74 Some of them also cite the official court memorials 奏章/奏文.

The peak in issuing these edicts and decrees was the reign of Emperor Gaozong (1127-1162), possibly reflecting the time of most active lay religious activities or government persecutions thereof. It was especially in the aftermath of Fang La rebellion that the government was keen to restore local order and prevent any similar local revolt. It was reported that even the military had practitioners of “eating vegetables and serving devils,” so harsher punishment was suggested.75 More activity caused more persecution, but greater persecution did not, in turn, eliminate these activities and groups, something shown above in the 1134 court memorial: “法禁愈嚴，而事魔之俗愈不可勝禁。”

---

73 Li Xinchuan, *Xinian yaolu*, ch. 76.
74 *Song huiyao*: xingfa, ch. 2.
75 *Song huiyao*: xingfa, 2: 113, 1145/2/4.
There were officials under Gaozong who understood this problem and suggested that established policy was too harsh. There was a court proposal suggesting that the heads of organizations “eating vegetables and serving devils” be executed but that the followers who did not proselytize be punished with only one hundred strokes. 帝官言：

“吃菜事魔立法太重，刑部遂立非傳習妖教，除為首者依條處斷，其非徒侶而被詭詐誘不曾傳受他人者，各杖一百斷罪。”

Vice Imperial Censor-in-Chief 御史中丞 Liao Gang 廖剛 and famous doctor Zhuang Chuo 莊綽 both suggested punishing the group’s leader but not the followers. 77

Overall, the phenomenon of dramatically increased lay religious activity in the Jiangnan local society was new during the Northern and Southern Song crisis, especially after the Fang La rebellion. As it spread, it influenced local social structure and power struggles in various ways. The imperial court and local government did not have a clear idea of what to do, so their preferred course of action was to label (publicly condemn) them as people who “eat vegetables and serve devils,” to ban their activities, and dismiss their groups.

“People of the way” - 道民

Unlike the title “eating vegetables and serving devils,” which was deployed by the government, local lay religious activists had their own autonyms. From Song records, including local gazetteers, anecdotes, and donors list from local buildings and Buddhist

76 Song huiyao: xingfa, ch. 2, 1139/7/8.
canons, we often see personal names attached to titles like *daogong 道公*, *daogu 道姑*, *daozhe 道者*, *daoren 道人*, *daoyou 道友*, or *daolü 道侶*; or a person’s name will include the character *dao 道*. Sometimes their names would not include *dao* but instead contain certain characters with Buddhist meanings or just a number.

These people were collectively recognized as “people of the way” *道民*, a title that also flourished in the Jiangnan region during the Song period. (On account of their mixed beliefs and practices, they were not necessarily Buddhists.) The title did not carry a negative meaning and was favored by the people so labeled. These “people of the way” overlapped with the people who “ate vegetables and served devils,” and a person would often carry both identities. (Some *daomin* were members of the “devil worshipping” group, and some were not.) Both titles referred to local groups and organizations. Sometimes we find in a donors’ list that members of one family were all “people of the way.”

The large presence of female “people of the way” shows the participants’ diverse social status. The participants were more local commoners and well-off supported households. This phenomenon is also similar to the social structure of local donors for the Puning canon during the Yuan, as discussed in Chapter 4.

As for the close relationship between the *daomin*, “people of the way,” and Buddhists, *dao*, or the way, refers here to Buddhism rather than Daoism. It became a title

---

78 There were also White Cloth people of the way 白衣道者, who corresponded to the people “eating vegetables and serving devils” and dressing in white clothes. See Chikusa P92-3
79 Chikusa P89
80 When Zhu Xi 朱熹 served as the magistrate of Zhangzhou 漳州知事, he promulgated an official statute to persuade female “people of the way” to return to lay life. In this case, the women were more likely female clergy of Manichean temples. “Quan nüdao huansu bang” 劝女道还俗榜, in *Zhuwengong wenji* 朱文公文集, 100: 5097-98.
for the sangha’s merit since the early period of Buddhism in China.\(^{81}\) In the Song period, due to the popularity of lay Buddhism and the variation of Buddhist practice mixed with other beliefs, *dao* became a title favored by lay people to identify themselves rather than by the monks for themselves. In the most common case, *daogong* 道公—“man of the way”—and *daogu* 道姑—“woman of the way”—had the same meanings as *Upāsaka* 優婆塞 and *Upāsikā* 優婆夷, lay attendants in Buddhism. So they were different from monks 僧 and nuns 尼.

These vernacular people did not wear the tonsure nor were they ordained. But some of them took Buddhist vows and obeyed monastic rules. Some of their characteristics observed by contemporaries include, “at home to leave home” 在家出家, and “half-monastic half-secular” 半僧半俗. Most of these lay monks and believers were not tonsured, so sometimes they were called “monks with hair” 僧之有髪. These were similar to modern day *jushi* 居士. In fact, becoming a member of the Buddhist *saṅgha* during the Song period was a hard task, since the government strictly regulated approval. The whole process included apprenticeship 童行, taking the vow *śrāmaṇera* 沙彌, receiving a certificate 度牒 by exam or purchase, and ordination 受戒 by the government with titles and purple garments granted. Therefore, there were many people who wanted to devote themselves to Buddhist life but could not afford the time or money or could not deal with the bureaucracy. “People of the way” thus became an ideal option for them.

\(^{81}\) Originally, *daoren* means someone who possesed *daoshu* (magic) 有道術之人. In the early period of Buddhism in China, *daoren* and *daoshi* often referred to Buddhist clergy. The name became less popular in the Tang period due to the drastic increase in the number of Buddhists. See Qian Daxin 钱大昕, “Daoren, daoshi zhibie” 道人、道士之別, in Shijiazhai yangxinlu 十駕齋養新錄, ch.19.
As for monasteries, Song government had divided most monasteries into two categories: mostly were Shifang 十方, and a few were Jiayi 甲乙. The government normally controlled appointments of abbots and the management of monastic properties. The monasteries usually had very limited tax exemptions and had to pay agricultural and property taxes (except for the merit monasteries for imperial family members’ graves 功德墳寺). Therefore, local people and lay believers preferred to build their own monasteries, both on account of financial concerns and for the convenience of proximity. With their temples and chapels, they called themselves “Chapel Masters of the Small Way” 小道庵主. According to Chikusa Masaaki and Barend ter Haar, people in the Jiangnan region during the Song-Yuan period had more options for self-study and more religious venues and practices. This corresponded with the decline of state power and monastic Buddhism, the growth of the regional economy, and the vernacularization of local beliefs.

“People of the way” were neither merely religious practitioners nor home-based citizens. They were social activists passionate about investing in local affairs and about accumulating spiritual merit for themselves, their families, and their communities. Their social activities were similar to those of the people “eating vegetables and serving devils.” They had strong organization skills and offered mutual aid through finance or local resources. These were very similar to some of the organizations of people “eating

---

82 Chikusa P89
83 Chikusa analyzed the Song government’s control of and profits from issuing monastic certificates issuing. He also showed the popularity of religious titles and the aging 高齡化 of non-ordained Buddhist practitioners 行者 since the Northern Song (those who were not ordained for Upasampada 具足戒). Chikusa P91 The Song rule held that tongxing/tongzi 童行/童子 should be boys under 19 and girls under 14, but their actual ages were much higher, suggesting that many people hoped to remain in a Buddhist status in order to exemptions from tax and corvee.
vegetables and serving devils,” both sets of groups resulted from the growth of market
towns and the booming regional economy in the Song period. “People of the way” also
emerged mainly in Jiangnan villages and market towns, not in the big cities. Most
members were craftsmen and men with skills, so they were able to undertake local
building projects. Though their own social status was comparatively low, they made
connections with powerful families (sometimes through government corruption) and
were able to collect and allocate local labor and property resources to benefit their groups.
Some members thus became powerful local families through their local activism.

“People of the way” can be considered meritorious organizations that worked on
local infrastructure constructions thanks to their many members and patrons of artisans
and craftsmen. According to The Epigraphic Collection of Wuxing County (Wuxing
jinshiji 吳興金石記) and other primary sources, Chikusa Masaaki found many records of
daomin donating money to build bridges and temples (or to buy farmland attached to
temples) in the market towns. Bridge and temple building were valued as good ways to
accumulate merit for the Buddhist dharma from an earlier period. 84 Many market towns
in the region were canal towns 水鄉, so there was a large needs for bridge building when
a canal town grew. The dense rice fields and irrigation systems required many bridges as
well. Also, denser populations, greater wealth, and increased commerce required wooden
bridges to be rebuilt as stone bridges. 85 For bridge and temple building projects, most

84 On bridge building as a way to accumulate merit, see John Kieschnick, The Impact of Buddhism on
Chinese Material Culture (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 2003); Foshuo zhu defutian jing 佛說諸
85 Chikusa P81-82
records date to the southern Song period, with few from the Yuan. People tended to not use their names on donor lists for these projects but instead used names that included the character dao, similar to monks’ dharma names. One bridge project could involve several donors, indicating that these were collective efforts rather than individual activities. But we do not have clear evidence of specific organizations, so that “people of the way” appeared more as loose collectives.

In the eyes of the government, however, “people of the way” were suspicious and part of the people “eating vegetables and serving devils,” because they performed state-like functions in an organized way beyond state control and the tax system. A court memorial dated to the thirteenth day of the ninth month of Qingyuan 4 (1198), quoting a local official, reports that:

“There are so-called ‘people of the way’ in Western Zhejiang. They are actually those who eat vegetables and worship devils. In the name of Buddhism and Daoism, they conceal their property and communications. They are neither Buddhist nor Daoist, neither student nor apprentice. They are outside of the registered households and have become one special

---

86 Chikusa, P82, lists three main reasons for sponsoring bridge and temple building projects: 1) some were built with support of an official patron as high as imperial family members or a grand councilor and shows the daomin’s ability to reach high level powers at times before the White Cloud group had direct contact with the Mongol imperial family; 2) bridge building that continued after the official ban on daomin revealed weak government; 3) daomin demonstrating that they were not only involved in private projects but also contributing to officially sponsored temples and projects. Sample bridge and temple building records were as follows: Yifengqiao shizhu timing 儀鳳橋石柱題名 in 1193, j.10.; Luotuoqiao shizhu tizi 駱駝橋石柱題字 in 1201, j.10; Deshengqiao tizi 德勝橋題字 in 1262, j.12; Baoguosi bushiji 報國寺布施記 in 1237, j.12; Huzhou lu Bao’en guangxiao shansi zhitian ji 湖州路報恩光孝禪寺置田記 in 1284, j.13; Changsheng jiangyuan bei 長生講院碑 in 1315, j.14, Wuxing jinshi zhi 吳興金石志. Wujiang chongjian changqiao ji 吳江重建橋記 in 1324, j.19, Yuan Jue 袁塶 Qingrong jushi ji 清容居士集 j.19. Wuzhou tongjiqiao ji 婺州通濟橋記 in 1300, Huang Jin, Jinhua Huang xiansheng wenji 金華黃先生文集, j.9. The building of official temples Yanjiao Chan Cloister 演教禪院 and Chongsheng Cloister 崇勝院 by seven daomin from 1220 to 1226, in Mo Ruochong 莫若沖, Daoqiao jij 道橋記, j.26, Zhiyuan Jiahe zhi 至元嘉禾志. Yinjing xiuwo jin 徽靜修造記, Zhang Xiaoxiang 張孝祥, Yuhu jushi wenji 于湖居士文集, j.13. Court memorial in Jiading 2 嘉定二年 (1209), Songhuiyao: Shihuo 宋會要 食貨, 61-148.

87 Donors’ lists often begin with statements of “admiring affinity” yuan 緣, such as ganyuan 幹緣, quanyuan 勸緣, and muyuan 萬緣.
group. Their wickedness and evilness exceed those of the common people, but they only practice celibacy and a prohibition on alcohol as their obligations. Their greed and corruption exceed those of common people, but they use temple building and bridge repair to earn merit. Every village has a gathering with its own leaders. In seasons of leisure, they assemble publicly. They say they are burning incense, lighting candles, offering feasts, and reciting Sūtras. Their crowds number hundreds and thousands; they assemble immediately and suddenly disband. They cause trouble and initiate work projects. They search widely for luxury goods and collect the property of commoners. They abuse kind people and act around towns without restriction. Once there is a lawsuit, they collaborate and provide financial support collectively. They bribe government staffs and will not stop unless they succeed. Every time there is a building project, they will bring together groups and spread the word across many counties and prefectures. Artisans and labors constitute their membership and quickly provide all necessary tools and food supplies. People only see their positive ways of making all projects feasible but do not know the risks of their powerful influence. If we do not investigate them right now, I cannot imagine what they will cause in the future! I request that in all counties of Western Zhejiang, commoners no longer be allowed to create group titles, call themselves “people of the way,” or assemble members. The edict should be harsh, requiring that all members to be disbanded to find new jobs. If anyone would disobey this edict, the group head should be exiled to military service in remote and difficult prefectures, and the members should be put into custody. We must destroy these unorthodox groups and return normal life to commoners, in order to promote Your Majesty’s desire to suppress evil and prolong imperial power.”

Approved.88

浙右有所謂道民。實吃菜事魔之流，而竊自托於佛老，以掩物議。既非僧道，又非童行，輒於編戶之外，別為一族。姦淫污穢甚於常人，而以屏妻孥、断葷酒為戒法。貪冒貨賄甚於常人，而以建祠廟、修橋梁為功行。一鄉一聚，各有魁宿。平居暇日，公為結集，曰烧香，曰燃燈，曰設齋，曰誦經，千百為群，倏聚忽散。撰造事端，興動工役，夤緣名色，斂率民财，陵駕善良，横行村疃。間有斗訟，則合謀并力，共出金錢，厚賂胥吏，必勝而/乃已。每遇營造，陰相部勒，嘯呼所及，跨縣連州，工匠役徒，悉出其黨，什器資粮，隨即備具。人徒見其一切辦事之可喜，而不知張皇聲勢之可慮也。及今不圖，複/后將若何！乞行下浙西諸郡，今後百姓不得妄立名色，自稱道民，結集徒黨，巖切曉諭，各令四散著業。如敢違戾，將為首人，決配遠惡州軍，徒黨編管。務要消散異類，使復齒於平民，以推廣陛下抑誕怪、暢皇極之意。從之。

88 Song huiyao: xingfa, 2: 130. The Shimen zhengtong reads, “既非僧道，又非童行。”
Orthodox Buddhist chronicles also criticized the “people of the way” on both theological and competitive grounds. They suspected that the public projects initiated and involving these people were actually attempts to collect money rather than serve society. Overall, we cannot deny that by collecting money to fund public projects, these “people of the way” were at least partially seeking donations and spreading their influence.

In conclusion, “people of the way” emerged mostly during the Southern Song period in the countryside and market towns of Jiangnan. These were not specific groups but a new social phenomenon in which religiously devout local commoners collaborated with each other for collective work and involvement with local affairs. These self-identified people would use breaks between agricultural seasons and their own spare time to assemble for religious and social activities and attach themselves to powerful families and government in search of patronage and financial or policy support. They had no coherent leadership, but these people were very successful in terms of collecting local labor, technical skill, and property. These people could raise huge crowds, gather people and resources easily and quickly, and had a membership of artisans, craftsmen and skilled peasants. They practiced Buddhism and other vernacular beliefs in different ways to provide simple salvation and the accumulation of merit, but the government did not approve of these methods and were suspicious of their intentions.

These “people of the way” included members of the White Cloud sect and other lay religious groups such as the White Lotus sect and were the origins of larger Yuan-

---

89 See *Fozu tongji* 48: 54.
90 See also Chikusa’s definition, P77
dynasty groups of White Cloud members. Though the Song period witnessed the
diversification of religious schools, the vernacularization of popular religion, and the
syncretism of different religious traditions, the Song government often tightly monitored
and restricted religious development, especially during the Southern Song.

The Southern Song government used the sale of monastic certificates and temple
licenses as its main sources of income in its later years, and it viewed the control of
religious institutions as essential to the empire’s stability and social order. The
government would suspect any non-ordained monk or religious personnel, or private
institution of spiritual life and ritual, for its political purpose and potential for causing
riots. This brought down immediate punishment and persecution. These local activists’
success in gathering together people and recourses drew the government’s attention and
was seen as a threat to the empire. On the other hand, the “people of the way” were not
an insular secret society that been isolated and separated from the main stream of the
local society; they were the major force behind local development and the growth of
market towns, which in turn connected varied parts of the region’s economy. This special
phenomenon also may have changed the forms of family structure and daily lives,
yielding more involvement in local affairs and easier participation in religious practices.

There is only a single record of the White Cloud movement’s leadership in the
Song (appearing in different versions), and it connects the phenomena of the “people of
the way” and the people “eating vegetables and serving devils.” In 1202, a “person of the
way,” Shen Zhiyuan 沈智元, an requested official tablet 乞賜敕額 from Song Emperor
Ningzong 宋寧宗 to make the White Cloud Chapel an official monastery, but the
emperor refused the request and banished Shen.
In the second year of the Jiatai period [1202], Shen Zhiyuan of the White Cloud Chapel called himself a “person of the way” and petitioned for an official tablet. An official said, “people of the way’ are people who ‘eat vegetables and serve devils.’ They are so-called wicked people. They are neither Buddhist monks nor Daoists, neither students nor apprentices. They have formed their own party, with crowds of hundreds and thousands. They use their evil teachings to fool uneducated folks. Sometimes they employ excuses of repairing bridges and building roads in order to collect people’s fortunes; they set up private chapels, in order to hide from the public eye. [I] request the exile of Zhiyuan to a remote area and the demolishing of their chapel buildings as a warning sign for those who practice evil teachings.” Approved.

嘉泰二年，白雲庵沈智元自稱道民，進狀乞額。臣寮言：“道民者，吃菜事魔，所謂奸民者也。既非僧道童行，自植黨與，千百為群。挾持妖教，聾瞽愚俗。或以修橋砌路，斂率民財；創立私庵，為逋逃淵薮。乞將智元長流遠地，拆除庵宇，以為傳習魔法之戒。”奏可。

Another version of this passage from the Fozu tongji reinforces the “evil” characteristics of the “people of the way” and their power and organization within local society. It mentions that there was already an edict in place before Zhiyuan’s petition that ordered private chapels of the “people of the way” to be destroyed within a month. But Zhiyuan expanded his private chapel and even petitioned to the court to make it legal. So the official linked it with the Han rebels of the Five Pecks of Rice 五斗米道 and suggested persecution.

“Now Zhiyuan dares to make a fool of the court. Such action is extreme. In the past was the Five Pecks of Rice, which dispatched its disciples in the names of Huangdi and Laozi. They meandered all around the empire to deceive people. Later their members numbered over one hundred thousand, and at the same time the Han court became weak. Now if we do not stop this kind of group, they will be able to do anything in the future. [I] want to order Lin’an [Hangzhou] prefecture to reregister Zhiyuan [for exile] and to confiscate their property as a warning sign for those who practice evil teachings and avoid the laws. For those attached to powerful families and take their property as the group’s, have the Imperial

91 Zhipan, Fozu tongji, ch. 54.
Censorate name the families who protect them and submit a court memorial.” Approved.\(^2\)  

今智元又敢妄叩天閤玩侮朝廷。若此為甚。昔傳五斗米道者。始託黃老分遣弟子。周遊四方轉相誘誘。其後數十萬眾。同日竊發漢室遂微。今此曹若不防閑。何所不至。欲下臨安府將智元等重行編竄。籍其物业以為傳習魔法。既視典憲之戒。寄居勢家認為己產。蓋庇執占者。臺諫指名以奏。制可。  

One major issue in this incident is the issuing of an official tablet 敕額 by the government. The Song government had tight control over legalizing a monastery by selling or granting a tablet and then making profit on it. Shen Zhiyuan sought not recognition for the White Cloud group but only to justify the White Cloud Chapel to make it legal. Since he only mentioned one chapel, I doubt that there was a singular group of the White Cloud movement.  

We should be aware that these two versions come from an orthodox Buddhist chronicle, the *Fozu tongji*. A similar entry can be found in another Buddhist chronicle, the *Shimen zhengtong*, chapter 4, under the item “White Cloud Vegetarians” 白雲菜 of the section “Records of Denouncing the Fakeness” 斥僞志. It uses the same tone to criticize Zhiyuan and his followers and reinforces the decision to persecute them. Zhiyuan was sent into exile and never allowed to return. 將智元等重行編配。永不放還。The houses and religious sites they built were to be demolished, except for those buildings and pagodas that carried inscriptions from previous imperial rulers. Those buildings remaining were to be managed by monks from approved neighboring monasteries.  

\(^2\) Zhipan, *Fozu tongji*, ch. 48.
strictly enforced in affected routes and prefectures, the so-called White Cloud activists still sought attachment to wealthy families and to make connections with powerful people in order to overturn the imperial decision and to reestablish their private chapels. Therefore, these private religious institutions were repeatedly abolished and reestablished in succession.

At the end of this entry, it quotes from a court debate to conclude that “Buddhism changed to Chan [Buddhism]; Chan [Buddhism] weakened to evil [teachings]; evil [teachings] erupted into bandits” 闻政論云。教變則禪。禪弊為魔。魔熾為賊. The commentator labeled the White Cloud movement as evil, one step away from turning into bandits. Persecution, therefore, was urgent.

In this chapter’s opening quotation, we see another incident of persecution from Suyang county in 1218, after Shen Zhiyuan’s unfortunate court petition. The magistrate Lu Ziyu labeled the White Cloud wicked and evil. He confiscated the civil property under the White Cloud movement’s control and transferred it back to its original owners.

The Fozu tongji entry on Shen Zhiyuan mentions that the South Mountain (Nanshan) of Yuhang in Hangzhou was the place where the “White Cloud Master of the Way” conducted his teachings. So who was this White Cloud Master of the Way?

---

93 Shimen zhengtong, ch. 4.
**The “White Cloud monk”**

The so-called White Cloud monk (*Baiyun heshang*) Kong Qingjue 孔清覺 (1043-1121), from an elite family in Luoyang and a descendant of Confucius, became a Buddhist monk and traveled widely to sacred sites around China. He trained and studied at different monasteries and followed various masters before coming to Hangzhou before the Jurchen conquered Northern China in 1127, during Huizong’s reign and a period of Daoist prominence. He was originally a monk at the Baoying 寶應寺 monastery of Luoyang, then the western capital 西京 of the Northern Song empire. He was believed to be the fifty-second generation descendant of Confucius.

In fact, Kong’s background was among those professional elites with a glorious family legacy and still living close to the empire’s political center. His great grandfather Kong Jing 孔勍 (dates unknown) was a high official serving two dynasties, the Later Liang dynasty (907-923) and the Later Tang dynasty (923-936). He was the head military commissioner of Xiangzhou, Zezhou, Luzhou, and Heyang 襄州澤潞河陽節度使 in the Tongguang period (923-926), and he was once the Grand Preceptor for the Heir Apparent.

---

94 Most primary sources for Kong’s biography are orthodox Buddhist chronicles. They are reliable in terms of factual information such as dates and locations. These are not hagiographic since Buddhist chronicles are hostile to Kong’s teachings and the White Cloud sect. One exception is the White Cloud sect leader Dao’an’s commentary on Kong Qingjue’s *Chuxue ji*. As will be discussed in detail in Chapter 5, Dao’an traced the history of the sect back to Kong and praised his life and teachings.

95 Kong came from Luoyang and have had connections with Manichaenism because Luoyang was one of the centers for Manichaism in China during the Tang-Song period.

96 His style *zi* was Benran 本然, and he was born in Dengfeng 登封 county, Luoyang, on Qingli 慶曆 3 (1043)/10/22. *Shishi jigulue* 释氏稽古略, ch.4. See also Dao’an’s preface to the *Chu xueji*: 姓孔氏，即至聖文宣王五十二世孫也。
太子太師。¹⁷ Though most great clans declined during the Northern Song dynasty due to the centralization of power and the popularization of civil examination system, Kong’s family retained their high social status such that his father Kong Xin 孔訢 (dates unknown) attained the jinshi degree but did not hold office. His mother, Madam Cui 崔氏, held a special surname that might come from the Boling 博陵 or Qinghe 清河 Cui clans, which was one of the most politically powerful aristocratic clans in medieval China up to the Five Dynasties period。¹⁸

As for his alleged Confucian descendant, it is possible that he had claimed himself to be of the sage’s lineage. However, his great-grandfather Kong Jing was a native of Yanzhou 兖州, not far from Confucius’ hometown in Qufu 曲阜, Shandong. Many generations of his family before him carried the surname Kong, so he might be a descendent. When he was young, he was known for his intelligence and study of Confucianism。¹⁹ His identity as a member of the sage’s lineage and his Confucian training greatly increased his authority to mix the three teachings, at least the Confucian portion, into his own syncretistic one. Scattered Daoist influences are mentioned in his biographies. The later development of Kong Qingjue's teachings mixed Confucian philosophy and moral standards with doctrines from several schools of Chinese monastic Buddhism.

¹⁷ Shishi jigulue, ch. 4. For Kong Jing's biography, see Jiu Wudaishi 舊五代史, ch. 64; Tangshu 唐書, 40: 858; Yongle dadian 永樂大典, ch. 18129. He died at the age of 79 and was known as a patron of Buddhism.
¹⁸ For the Cui family, see Patricia Ebrey, The Aristocratic Families of Early Imperial China: A Case Study of the Po-Ling Ts'ui Family, 1978.
¹⁹ Shishi jigulue, ch. 4.
Kong Qingjue had sought office from local officials many times, but no result is recorded. After the road to civil service was blocked, Kong went into monastic life, something in which he was already interested. Surprisingly, he did not first become a monk in his hometown of Luoyang. Luoyang has been one of the centers of Buddhism in North China since the first Buddhist temple White Horse Temple (Baima si 白馬寺) was established there in 68 CE. Luoyang was one of the political and cultural centers in the Tang dynasty, and it also occupied a significant position in the Northern Song Empire as its western capital. Different Buddhist schools flourished in Luoyang. Thus Buddhism greatly influenced the urban life and culture of the region, also seen in materials such as the still-extant Longmen Grotto complex in the south suburbs.

Besides Buddhism, other religions, especially Manichaenism, flourished in the city, because Luoyang was one of medieval China’s biggest metropolises and the focal point of different groups of people coming from overseas. It was also the easternmost departure point for the continental Silk Road. Luoyang was, in fact, one of the centers of Manichaeism in China from the Tang to the Song periods. Therefore, some scholars suspect that Kong Qingjue had been exposed to Manichean teachings in Luoyang and later borrowed some of them into his own teachings.\(^ {100}\)

At the age of twenty-six in 1069, he left home with his parents’ approval, after obtaining personal inspiration from reading the *Lotus Sūtra* 法華經, and took Buddhist vows at the Baoying monastery on Mount Longmen 龍門 in Ruzhou 汝州 (present-day

\(^ {100}\) Sun Kekuan 孫克寬 *Baiyunzong dumeng xiaoji* 白雲宗讀蒙小記.
Linru county 临汝縣, Henan) under Master Haihui 海慧大師. Heeding Haihui’s advice to seek Buddhist teachings in the south, he left Baoying monastery and started his pilgrimage. His first stop was the famous Buddhist sacred mountain Mount Emei 峨眉 in Jiazhou 嘉州 (in present-day Sichuan) to see monk Qiansui 千歲 (“The Monk One Thousand Years Old”). Next, he went to Mount Fushan 浮山 (Floating Mountain) of Shuzhou 舒州 in Huaiyu 淮西 (present-day Huaining county, Anhui). He built a retreat at Taishou Cliff 太守巖 (the “Prefect Cliff”) and sat in meditation for twenty years.

By then Kong Qingjue was fifty years old and had broad travel experience across the Song empire, except for the southeast coastal region where he would head next. He did not return to his hometown of Luoyang. Whether Kong was aware of it or not, north China was undergoing a series of military threats from the Jurchens. It is unknown whether he chose to avoid a secular lifestyle with his own family due to fears of war fear or because of family suffering in the north. He was a student of some of the most renowned Buddhist masters, and he visited different sacred sites. He must have had expertise in Chan and Huayan Buddhism, and possibly Pure Land as well. Though he had no disciples during the twenty years he practiced Buddhism alone in the mountains, he still kept in mind the popular trends of mixing the three religions, popular religions, and

---

101 The Baoying monastery was part of the Linji 臨濟 school and located in the south of Ruzhou. Master Haihui 海慧大師 might refer to Chan Master Huiyong 慧顒禪師, who was also called the Monk Baoying, named after the monastery. *Zhili Ruzhou quanzhi* 直隶汝州全志, ch. 9.

102 Monk Qiansui may have been a Tiantai master. Mount Emei was the sacred Mountain in Chinese Buddhism, the bodhimanda of the bodhisattva Samantabhadra 普賢菩薩.

103 Kong’s years at Taishou Cliff were approximately 1072-1092. The Taishou cliff was also called Dizhu yan 滴珠岩, Feiyu yan 飛雨岩, or Datong yan 大通岩 (named after Datong chanshi 大通禪師 who used to sit here). It has a cave 26.5 meters high and 200 square meters in area covered by only one string of skylight 一線天, water drops from above like pearls, and above the cliff there is a stone hall 石閣 (35 square meters) called Yindong 隱洞 or Fuyan 複岩. *See Fushan zhi* 浮山志.
the syncretism of different Buddhist schools. This made him able to create his own
 teaching to matching current trends and to gain popularity among local followers, though
 this was probably not what he expected. He took no recorded disciples after his long
 journey, so it seems more likely he traveled alone until settling in Hangzhou.

In 1092, he traveled around Zhejiang. In 1093, he arrived in the Lingyin
Monastery 靈隱寺 in Hangzhou. At that point, he stopped traveling and stayed there
with his followers 隨眾居止. His followers included both monks and laymen. He
had initially two followers surnamed Wang 汪 and Luo 羅 who eagerly pursued study
under his guidance. The number of their fellow students (i.e., Kong’s disciples) increased
daily 學侶日臻.

The Chan master Yuanmingtong 圓明童禪師, abbot of Lingyin Monastery, had Kong
stay in a hut retreat behind the monastery called Baiyun shan’an 白雲山庵 (“White
Cloud Mountain Chapel”) or Baiyun an 白雲庵 (“White Cloud Chapel”). From that
point forward, he started teaching and established his own sect 玄化開闡。乃自立宗.
He named his school the “White Cloud Sect” 白雲宗 from the hut where he was

---

104 Shishi jigulue, ch. 4, and Dao’an’s preface to the Chu xueji (元祐八年 聴錫于古杭靈隱寺). Lingyin Monastery was one of the most famous Chan Buddhist temples in south China.
105 Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4.
106 Dao’an’s preface to the Chu xueji (僧俗問法者 紛紛而來).
107 Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4 (白雲庵 杭州靈隱寺方丈後山之庵也。...... 靈隱圓明童禪師 以寺後白雲山庵居覺”); Dao’an’s preface to the Chu xueji. According to the preface, the abbot Yuanming Tong or Yuanming Zhentong Chan Master was also named Monk Lai’antong (住持懶菴童和尚). During the Song period, due to restrictions on the number and the processes for becoming a monastic monk, a tradition developed that traveling monks or laypeople would build a hut attached to a monastery as a site for residence and meditation 結庵而居. Sometimes there would be a large group of such non-monastic practitioners living behind an official monastery.
108 According to Overmyer, 615, Kong “established the White Cloud sect at the White Cloud retreat close to Lingyin monastery in Hangzhou in 1108.” We should note that Kong did not necessarily intend to establish a sect; there might have just been followers seeking his instruction and surrounding him in his hut.
living. So his followers called him the “White Cloud Monk,” and they were called “White Cloud Vegetarians” or “Ten Stages Vegetarians” 從者尊之曰白雲和尚。名其徒曰白雲菜。亦曰十地菜。 Later, he built a hut retreat called Fudi an 福地庵 (“Blessed Place Chapel”) on Mount Longmen 龍門山 (“Dragon Gate Mountain,” the same name as that of the mountain south of Luoyang) in Yuhang 餘杭 (a northern suburb of present-day Hangzhou). He developed theories about the dragon god and about the “three refuges” and the “five injunctions” 為龍神說三歸五戒. In 1104, Kong Qingjue went to the Kaihua Monastery 開化寺 of the Six Harmonies Pagoda 六和塔 by the Qiantang 錢塘 River (in the southwest suburbs of Hangzhou). He lived in a hut named “Purple Cloud Chapel” 紫雲庵. Some monks and

109 Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4; Dao’an’s preface to the Chu xueji. According to Dao’an, the hut already had the name “White Cloud” and did not take its name from Kong. The hut’s name matched the prophecy around Kong’s birth, and he already had the sobriquet “White Cloud.” It is said that “when the master [Kong] was born, there were white clouds filling the room. Therefore he called himself the ‘white cloud.’” The preface also says, “His style was Benran; his sobriquet was Baiyun.” See also ter Haar 2001 paper, P94.

110 Shimen zhengtong.

111 Overmyer, 623; Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4. For 三歸 五戒, see also ter Haar 2001 paper, P94.

112 The Kaihua Monastery 開化寺. The fact that Qingjue chose the Kaihua Monastery shows his personal preference for suburban temples over those in or near the city, and the need of laypeople and monks in these areas between the rural and the urban for ways to salvation and prosperity that were easy to understand, fast, and cheap. The Six Harmonies Pagoda 六和塔, which still exists today, serves not only Buddhists folks but is a lighthouse for people traveling on the river. The pagoda is near one of the main ports of Hangzhou, Jiubao 九堡. It not only secures easy access for pilgrims, merchants, and fishermen to Hangzhou from the agricultural hinterland but also provides a public space attached to the port’s marketplace. It is unknown that whether the Purple Cloud Cloister 紫雲庵 had been built earlier.
laymen invited him to preach at the Zhengji Monastery (正濟寺) about the Huayan Sūtra (華嚴經, the Avatamsaka Sūtra). Kong had been in Hangzhou for about eleven years from 1093 to 1104, establishing his reputation and refining his teachings. This was a transitional period when the Northern Song Emperor Huizong ruled from Kaifeng (1100-1126) and initiated persecution of Buddhists in order to promote Daoism.

Kong chose to stay in Hangzhou rather than travel to other places or to return to North China. There were several reasons. First, he was sixty years old, and his health probably would not have allowed him to travel long distances. Second, he might have had a considerable number of disciples and lay followers who both sought out teachings and also supported him financially. It was hard for him to travel alone without disciples following him. Third, Hangzhou was by far one of the most Buddhist cities in Song China. In order to avoid Huizong’s anti-Buddhist persecutions, it was better for Kong to stay where a great number of monks and lay believers held the power to resist government actions.

So far, we can see that during this eleven years, Kong Qingjue’s charisma and simple teachings brought together a of a teacher and his students. Whether or not he did so willingly, Kong was the leader of this group. His followers and supporters included both monks and laymen, yet no one was chosen as Kong’s successor. In the meantime, Kong moved out to Hangzhou’s hinterland, which became the center of the movement and was chosen for his relic burial sites after his death. In 1107, he went to Qianjin city 千金市 in Gui’an 復安 county of Huzhou 湖州 (present-day Wuxing county, Huzhou)

---

113 Overmyer, 623; Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4.
and built a hut retreat called *Shidi an* 十地庵 “Ten Stages Chapel.” Afterwards he went to Jingshan 菁山 of Wucheng 烏程 (present-day Wuxing county, Huzhou). A legend said that when he stopped there, a spring emerged from the ground. So he built a hut retreat called *Chuchen an* 出塵庵 “Leave the Dust Chapel” and lived there. His followers asked him to return to Zhengji Monastery 正濟寺, but it is unknown whether he returned, stayed at the Chuchen retreat, or went somewhere else afterwards.

Kong Qingjue’s teachings were formed during Emperor Huizong’s persecution of Buddhists 時當毁教. Key concepts in his teachings include the “four fruitions/grades” 四果 and the “ten stages,” which he used to divide the large and small vehicles 大小兩乘.

Zongjian in the *Shimen zhengtong* criticized these concepts:

> Though he discoursed on the four grades he did not know how to make manifest the treasures [of Buddhism] by developing new and suitable means [of communication]. Though he discussed the ten stages, he did not understand how to interchange discrepancies and unite differences. Although he wanted to attack the Ch’an school, in fact his religious views did not adhere to the truth but developed into a demonic teaching (moshuo).

然論四果, 則昧於開權顯實。論十地, 則不知通、別、圓、異。雖欲對破禪宗。奈教觀無歸。反成魔說。

In fact, Kong’s teachings do not attack the Chan school. They were also not demonic teachings 魔說 opposed to Buddhism.

Kong Qingjue’s written work, as we know, were the *Chuxue ji* 初學記 (*Record for Apprentice*), *Zhengxing ji* 正行集 (*Collection of Virtuous Acts*), *Zhengzong lun* 證宗

---

114 Overmyer, 623; *Shishi jigu lüe*, ch. 4.
115 *Shishi jigu lüe*, ch. 4.
116 Overmyer 621; *Shimen zhengtong*.
117 Overmyer 621, *Shimen zhengtong*. 
論 (Discourse on Verifying the Fundamentals), Sanjiao bian 三教編 (Compilation of the Three Teachings), and Shidi ge 十地歌 (Song of the Ten Stages).\(^{118}\) Both Chuxue ji and Zhengxing ji survive in the Puning canon, and the Tangut version of the Zhengxing ji in Tangut canon. Kong’s two extant texts show that his main teachings were intended only to make the Buddhist path to salvation easier to understand to lead people to better lives with good morality. Some jargon was borrowed from the Avatamsaka Sūtra and the Mahaprajñaparamita Sūtra 大品般若經. In addition to these, we have several texts in Tangut script authored by “the White Cloud Buddhist” (Baiyun shizi 白雲釋子). It is unclear that whether we can attribute them to Kong Qingjue, a topic undertaken in Chapter 6.

On account of the book Zhengzong lun (no longer extant), the monk Juehaiyu 覺海愚 denounced Kong to officials and pointed out the text’s faults.\(^{119}\) In the title itself, Zhengzong lun, “Discourse on Verifying the Fundamentals,” zong can mean “sect” in addition to “fundamentals.” The book was probably concerned with proving the theoretical legitimacy of the White Cloud sect, which contradicts orthodox Buddhist teachings. In any case, the book disturbed monastic Buddhists and was denounced by officials.

In 1116, Kong was banished further south to Enzhou or South Enzhou (南) 恩州 in Guangnan 廣南 (present-day Yangjiang 阳江, Guangdong).\(^{120}\) Four years later, in

---

\(^{118}\) Overmyer, 617, 623, 625; Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4. Shidi ge should be related to the classic Huayan Sūtra Shidi jing 十地經 (Daśabhūmika Sūtra).

\(^{119}\) Shimen zhengtong 覺海愚力排其謬于有司; Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4 (覺海愚禪師辨之); Fozu tongji, ch. 54.

\(^{120}\) Shimen zhengtong; Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4; Fozu tongji, ch. 54.
1120, ten of his disciples, including Zhengbu 政布, went to the capital at Kaifeng and petitioned for his release. They received an imperial edict that rescinded the punishment and released Kong at his leisure 蒙旨放令逐便. On 1121/7/20, he thanked the emperor for his lenience, and on 8/3, he wrote a gatha and sent it to Prefect You 作偈投太守游公. In the gatha he said that he would depart on 9/26. As he promised, he passed away on that day. He was seventy-nine years of age and had been a monk for fifty-two years since taking the monastic vow at Baoying Monastery in Ruzhou.121

Table 1: Timeline of Kong Qingjue’s life (1043-1121)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Residence</th>
<th>City/County</th>
<th>Related People</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1043</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Luoyang</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1069</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Baoying Monastery, Mt. Longmen 龍門(山)寶應寺</td>
<td>Ruzhou 汝州</td>
<td>Master Haihui 海慧大師</td>
<td>Took Buddhist vows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Shuzhou, Mt. Emei 峨眉山</td>
<td>Jiazhou 嘉州</td>
<td>Monk Qiansui 千歲和尚</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1072-1092?</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Taishou Cliff, Mt. Fushan 浮山太守巖</td>
<td>Shuzhou, Huaxi 淮西舒州</td>
<td></td>
<td>Spent 20 years in meditation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1092</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Zhejiang 浙江</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1093-?</td>
<td></td>
<td>White Cloud Chapel, Lingying Monastery 靈隱寺白雲庵</td>
<td>Hangzhou 杭州</td>
<td>Yuanjingtong 圓明童, Disciples Wang 汪 and Luo 羅</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fudi Chapel, Mt. Longmen 龍門山福地庵</td>
<td>Yuhang, Hangzhou 杭州餘杭</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1104</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>Purple Cloud Chapel, Kaihua Monastery, Six Harmonies Pagoda</td>
<td>Qiantang, Hangzhou 杭州錢塘</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

121 Overmyer, 623-4; Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1107</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>Shidi Chapel 十地庵</td>
<td>Taught the Huayan sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gui’an, Huzhou 湖州歸安</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chuchen Chapel, Jingshan 菁山出塵庵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wucheng, Huzhou 湖州烏程</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Zhengji Monastery 正濟寺</td>
<td>Disciples asked him back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1116</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>Enzhou, Guangnan 廣南恩州</td>
<td>Banished because of Zhengzong lun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>Zhengbu 政布 and another 9 disciples went to Kaifeng to plead with the court</td>
<td>Free from banishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1121</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>Prefect You 太守游公</td>
<td>Sent a gatha to Prefect You and died</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where Kong Qingjue died was unknown, but a possibility is the Southern Hill 南山 in Yuhang, the northern suburb of Hangzhou and home of the Nanshan Puning Monastery 南山普寧寺, later the sect’s headquarters. Kong’s relics were buried at the mountain in the second month of 1123. The pagoda was called Baiyun, the “White Cloud” Pagoda, and the cloister was called the Pu’an (Universal Peace) Cloister 普安院. Later disciples changed the name to Puning 普寧. The places his disciples preached include Zengshan of Chongde 崇德甑山, Shanzhu of Songlin 松林善住. Some of his sacred relics were distributed and buried at places including Deqing 德清, Longshan 龍山, Chaoshan 超山, Fangshan 方山, Ganyuan shan 乾元山, Gui’an 歸安, and Yanshan 嵌山.
All were sites in northern Zhejiang, the area of the movement’s greatest developed afterwards.¹²²

Kong Qingjue spent the largest part of his life around Hangzhou and northern Zhejiang. Why did Kong choose this area as his base for spreading teachings and attracting disciples? First, Hangzhou offered rich Buddhist soil, advanced economic status, and a developed agrarian society. Second, as mentioned before, the Dragon Gate Mountain 龍門山 in Yuhang where Kong made his Fudi retreat happened to bear the same name as the location of his first monastery, the Baoying Monastery in Ruzhou. Third, there was a legend about the White Cloud Chapel 白雲庵, his first retreat in Hangzhou, that matched a story that in the room where he was born in Luoyang was full of white clouds giving him the nickname “White Cloud.”¹²³

Direct records of how Kong Qingjue’s teachings were spread during the Southern Song are scattered, mainly due to official prohibitions of unorthodox religious practice. Because the White Cloud movement was illegitimate in the Song, any lineage after Kong was either but off or stayed underground. However, the development of this movement in Southern Song lay society established the location of its foundation and its practices. On the one hand, there was a smaller, more organized doctrinal movement around Kong Qingjue. On the other hand, there was a large foundation of local lay “vegetarian devil worshippers” and daomin, who chose the White Cloud movement as one of their religious options. Those daomin constituted the principal population of the White Cloud

¹²² Shishi jigu lüe, ch. 4; Overmyer, 632.
¹²³ “師初誕日。有白雲滿室。因以白雲自稱。茲庵之名。默與心契。從而居焉。由是白雲之名。流芳益著。” Dao’an’s annotated edition of the Chuxue ji 初學記, in the Puning Canon.
sect during the Yuan. The White Cloud’s location in northern Zhejiang and its mostly lay composition were unchanged.

Japanese scholars would call this lay religious movement “people’s religion” shomin shūkyō 庶民宗教. Kong’s teachings were aimed at and easily accessible to both monastic Buddhists and common lay people. These lay people of the region’s new market towns were less educated peasants and artisans. The majority of the White Cloud members came from the larger body of daomin, who were part-time religious devotees based in local Jiangnan societies. They hardly distinguished themselves from other religious groups or teachings, and they practiced no particular White Cloud rituals or liturgies. The White Cloud followers did not worship any deity or prophet. Kong himself did not become a cult. Members’ private temples and home shrines could contain idols of popular belief, since the Jiangnan region was the center of such worship in the Southern Song, as many studies have showed.\textsuperscript{124} When the movement developed locally in the Southern Song, the White Cloud became less theoretical or doctrinally based and more pragmatic and community based. Most accounts of the movement in the Southern Song talk about the gathering of crowds and collaborative local effort. No names of notable monks from the White Cloud movement in the Song survive, except for the acclaimed founder Kong Qingjue.

\textsuperscript{124} Hansen, \textit{Changing Gods}; von Glahn, \textit{The Sinister Way}.
**Rebirth when the Mongols came**

Following the conquest of the Song Empire and its capital at Hangzhou in 1276, the Mongols formally organized the monks and lay practitioners in the region into a religious order, naming it the “White Cloud sect.” Based on the Mongols’ short-term goal to stabilize Jiangnan society, the newly designated sect was intended to take charge of local monasteries, private temples, and semi-religious lay people. The Puning monastery in suburban Hangzhou served as the sect’s headquarters and established a studio for printing Buddhist canons. Unlike other religious groups in the Yuan, the White Cloud movement did not have a clear system of doctrinal beliefs, ritual orientations, or any practical customs. Throughout the Song-Yuan period, local laypeople were the driving force for the White Cloud movement’s expansion and perpetuation, a movement in which monastic Buddhist monks had limited influence. Overall, in the Southern Song, there was a sect named “White Cloud” by Kong Qingjue, which was rather small in terms of monastic participants. But it attracted larger groups of followers, who were the leaderless and not very religious *daomin* and “vegetarian devil worshippers.” They were both tributaries into the Yuan phenomenon that coordinated all of them into an official White Cloud sect.

The central figure of the White Cloud movement between the Song and the Yuan dynasties was the monk Dao’an 道安. 125 Dao’an was the chief abbot of Miaoyan monastery in Huzhou 湖州妙嚴寺 in 1257, and he later became the chief abbot of Puning monastery in Nanshan of Hangzhou. He had made two trips for imperial audiences with

---

125 Dao’an’s dharma name was Master Huizhao 慧照大師.
Khubilai Khan in the capital Dadu, and he died there in the Grand Yanshou Monastery 大延壽寺 in 1281, during his second trip. He was the revolutionary reviver of the White Cloud sect. He went to Dadu twice to meet Imperial Preceptor Dampa 膽巴/膽八 (1230-1303) and through Dampa’s introduction gained an audience with Khubilai Khan. He received the title White Cloud Sect Master 白雲宗主, and the sect was thus designated by imperial order. He also became the abbot of the White Cloud sect’s headquarters, the Puning Monastery on Southern Hill in Hangzhou. Puning Monastery was where Kong Qingjue had stayed and was buried with some of his relics. Dao’an connected the sect with Kong the White Cloud monk, thus claiming his authority as a follower and ninth generation disciple of Kong’s teachings. He also made new annotated editions of Kong Qingjue’s writings to be included in the Puning Canon. He initiated the Puning Canon printing project and received financial support from government and clergy officials.

One reason that the White Cloud movement did not constitute an exclusive, member-based sect during the Song period was that Puning monastery had not yet become the center of the movement. Only when the Yuan government set up the relevant

126 Mou Yan 牟巘 (1227-1311) Huzhou Miaoyansi ji, with calligraphy by Zhao Mengfu 趙孟頫 (1254-1322), held by the Gest Library, Princeton University. The Miaoyan Monastery was built in the Jiaxi period 嘉熙 (1237-1240) by Shi’anxin 是庵信, and the monastery printed a Buddhist canon. After Shi’anxin’s death in 1257, Dao’an succeeded to chief abbot. Because of Song imperial family members’ patronage, the monastery was made an official Jiayi 甲乙 monastery. The blocks for printing the Buddhist canon were destroyed during the Song-Yuan war, and monks at the Miaoyan Monastery made blocks and printed another canon in the Yuan period. In 1292, an imperial edict promoted the monastery from “cloister” 院 to “monastery” 寺, with the award of an imperial tablet. Dao’an’s successor was Runing 如寧, followed by Rumiao 如妙, Ruwei 如渭, Mingzhaor 明照, and then Minglun 明倫. The temple compound expanded continuously during the Yuan dynasty. This text does not mention the White Cloud sect. We can also see that Dao’an started making connections with and gaining favor from the Song imperial before his success with the Yuan ruler. The text names Gushan Dao’an 古山道安. We cannot be sure whether that is the full dharma name of Dao’an, or the names of two monks Gushan and Dao’an.

127 Ogawa 小川, Hakkyunshū daizōkyō, 白雲宗大藏經局, 3-5; Puningzang defang guangfu Huayanjing 普寧藏大方廣佛華嚴經卷, ch. 40.
offices there, did it become the sect headquarters. Puning monastery was not a public religious institution with government approval in the Song period, so it could not have any monastic clergy. As for the leadership of the White Cloud movement in the Song, we have no clear information about whether there was a lineage of monks or a family of lay people leading the movement. More likely, there were groups of people who “ate vegetables and served devils” and “people of the way” active in the Jiangnan region. They would have circulated and read many unorthodox religious texts, including those by Kong Qingjue. In the next chapter, we shall see that in the Yuan dynasty the government was not initially clear about unfamiliar local activist groups. They recognized the religious merit of the White Cloud sect and made it a legitimate Buddhist school. The new government’s formalization and patronage did not affect the character of the White Cloud sect as a social enterprise, which was successful in controlling local resources, building local networks, and operating local businesses, including the printing of a Buddhist canon.

**Conclusion: from Baiyun cai to Baiyun zong**

There are three immediate reasons for the rise of this lay movement during the early Southern Song: 1) Suppression of Fang La rebellion; 2) unintended consequences of Southern Song raising revenue by taxing monastic certification; 3) unintended consequences of Huizong’s crackdown on Buddhism at the end of the Northern Song. The wider context was the commercialization of the Jiangnan economy and the emergence of a “bourgeoisie” in rural towns.
Jiangnan remained the richest area in China, during both the Song and Yuan periods. The White Cloud movement, along with local active religious groups, remained strong and popular throughout these two periods as well. In the Song period, the movement was called the “White Cloud vegetarians” (Baiyun cai) within the category of people who “eat vegetables and serve devils” and “people of the way.” These worried the central government and received harsh punishment. There was also no exclusive organization of the movement under clear leadership. The White Cloud monk Kong Qingjue’s teaching and legacy had very limited influence in the region, both among the monastic community and local lay believers. In the Yuan period, the White Cloud movement became an official recognized sect—the “White Cloud sect” (Baiyun zong). The Mongol rulers permitted the practice, created the sect, and established relevant bureaus to make the White Cloud sect a role model for local religious groups. Though the Mongols treated the sect as a Buddhist school, the sect participants had no specific rituals or doctrines for practice.

The surviving teachings of Kong Qingjue mixed the three religions with Buddhist elements. These teachings misinterpreted orthodox Buddhist doctrine and had no strong theoretical foundation from which to create a religious school. Besides, there were no particular deity or gods that the White Cloud participants were taught to worship. As a result, religious beliefs were not a pressing concern either for members of the sect or for state monitors and literati witnesses. (Technically speaking, any daomin in the Song could become a White Cloud member in Yuan.) The stability of local society and fierce government control were the main concerns, for rulers of both the Song and the Yuan.
The movement was labeled “heterodox” in the Song, not because of its teachings but on account of their extensive social activities.

As we shall see in Chapter 2, laypeople led the sect’s growth in the Yuan period, just as during the Song. Members could get married, and gender boundaries between men and women were not strict. Celibate monks were part of the sect but not a significant component. There are no records of people “eating vegetables and serving devils” and very limited records about “people of the way” in the Yuan. This shows the Mongol government’s tolerant policies and the different views of scholars regarding the movement. It also reveals the assimilation of these people into the sect and other local religious groups.

At the state level, direct contact between group members and leaders with the imperial government was a failure in the Song, as in the example of Shen Zhiyuan, but the early Yuan saw successes, such as that of Dao’an. However, the White Cloud movement never fomented riots or rebellion during the Song and the Yuan—not because of timely government persecution arrived on time but rather because the White Cloud members’ primary interests were commercial not religiously ideological or political. The only exception to this is that Kong Qingjue and his monastic followers seem like really devout people at in least Kong’s teachings, even if those were not fully Buddhist teachings. Continuous social interactions in the region through the White Cloud movement secured the growth of local market towns with property related to the sect. Participation in the White Cloud sect was not a faster path to archive personal salvation or enlightenment but was a way gain commercial advantage and local influence.
Moreover, *daomin* included some legitimately devout people, especially women. There could be both religious and commercial aspects.

The movement was not a marginal Jiangnan phenomenon, though the Song government tried to marginalize them. It represented the dynamics of local society in Jiangnan and shows how local activism combined with religion and network building strategies. The sect offices were able to offer monastic registration for lay people and their farmland and property. So the White Cloud enterprise prospered, with these powers as the source of their business.
Chapter 2. Gathering People and Making Profits: The History of the White Cloud Movement

There was one group called “the White Cloud sect” outside (of Buddhism), is especially evil and abusive. In the beginning, they did not have a way of practice. They only recited Sūtras at home, prohibited meat and alcohol. But they did not abandon agriculture and miss the tax payment. In the precedent Song dynasty, (the government) claimed that (the sect) had night assembly and dawn disband. Due to the fear that it could cause disaster, it was banned. But that time (the sect) had only few families participated. Today they do not obey Buddhist disciplines, and devour meat and alcohol. They use fake names to avoid corvée duty. They can mobilize ten thousands of people, for reciting Sūtras and worship services. They distinguish themselves from vernacular people, but also differentiate themselves from Buddhists and Daoists. The government did not realize their fakeness, and established special bureau for them. Now the sect supervisor Qian Rujing, keeps conducting illegal deeds, and (his power) overcomes those of Buddhist bureaus and Daoist offices. It is better to dismiss the sect, in order to remove the parasite of the state, and release people’s strength.

Zheng Jiefu, Dade 7 (1303)

The White Cloud sect was crystallized after the Mongol conquest in the Jiangnan region. As mentioned in Chapter 1, Dao’an had received permission directly from Khubilai Khan to reestablished the sect. The White Cloud sect enjoyed a prominent position among official religious groups in the Yuan Empire’s religious hierarchy. Following the founding of relevant religious bureaus in the early Yuan dynasty, the White Cloud sect had privileges to issue its own monastic certificate to individuals and

set up affiliations of monasteries and private chapels. They enjoyed same rights as other Buddhist schools in the Empire. Same as their Song predecessors, the sect members included two cohorts: monastic monks, and lay people as the main stream. Many of these lay people of spiritual pursuits were the target of Song government’s persecution, who were self named “people of the way” and government claimed “vegetarian devil worshippers.” The White Cloud sect also received government sponsorship for one of the largest Buddhist canon printing projects in the Yuan Empire – the Puning Canon. The sect overall became a commercial enterprise which gained economic benefits from business related to monastic certificate selling, farmland and property acquisition and management, as well as canon printing and publishing.

Once the White Cloud sect was formally recognized and institutionalized by the Yuan court. In the period of Khubilai’s reign in the area (1276-1294), the government supported the sect, in financial and policy means. But after Khubilai’s death, for thirty-five years in the mid Yuan dynasty before 1330, the government had dramatic policy changes towards the sect and religions in general, including a series of establishment and abolition of related clergy offices. These changes corresponded the hectic political struggle and power competition in the Yuan court and inside the Mongol imperial family during the mid Yuan period. This period also contains most extant records of the White Cloud sect. From these records we should not conclude that this thirty-five year was the sect’s most active period. However, it was definitely the peak time when the sect activities drew attentions from the government and public eyes, thus many of their activities were recorded in various documents. It can be attributed to their activities out of government control, the government’s raised concerns of tax revenue loss, farmland
reform, and local disorder. As Chikusa Masaaki foresaw in his pioneering work in the 1970s, that the future research of the White Cloud’s development should focus on the political background rather than just on the religious activities.  

The Yuan religious bureaucracy and organizational structure

The Yuan established a unique system of clergy bureaucracy for religious affairs (mostly Buddhist affairs) both empire-wide and regional. An imperial edict of Khubilai Khan says,

“Ordering under the heaven (i.e. all over the Empire) to establish Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs Xuanzheng yuan, Buddhist Registrar Bureau Senglu si, Buddhist Rectifier Bureau Sengzheng si, and Buddhist Superior Bureau Dugang si (or, Senggang si). Grant them seals and letters, and dispatch them to each route, take charge of religious schools, and protect dharma.”

The newly created governing system of religious affairs headed by one centralized institution - Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs Xuanzheng yuan 宣政院. It was the Supreme Control Commission built in 1264, and changed named in 1288. It led total of 26 branches all over China and Tibet, in which 18 of them had function of civil administration. There was also a central bureau called Commission of Merit and Virtue

---

129 Chikusa, Chūgoku Bukkyō shakaishi kenkyū, 95.
Supervision Office for Buddhist Teachings *Shijiao zongtongsuo* (sometimes *Shijiao zongshesuo*) was the particular bureau that manage affairs of monastic Buddhists, including issuing monastic certificate, appointed abbots, granting titles and monitoring monastic properties. We do not know if there are a central one before *Xuanzheng yuan* was established. There were several regional ones in the empire. The most important one was the *Jianghuai shijiao zongtongsuo* (sometimes *Jiangzhe shijiao zongtongsuo*), which oversaw Buddhist monks in Jianghuai/Jiangzhe province, mainly the Jiangnan area. It was established in Hangzhou in 1277, one year after the city was conquered by the Mongols. Unlike *Xuanzheng yuan* which was a civil bureau, usually the office holders of *shijiao zongtongsuo* were all Buddhist monks. The chief director of this clergy bureau was titled as Supervisor *zongshe* 總攝 or Commander *zongtong* 總統. The most influential Supervisor was the Tangut monk Yang Lianzhenjian 楊璉真伽. He was active in

---

132 Hucker, *Dictionary of Official Titles*, #3485
133 So far as we know, these are the *Shijiao zongtongsuo* established in the Yuan Empire, mostly at the provincial level: in Jianghuai/Jiangzhe province 江淮/江浙行省; in Jiangxi/Longxing province 江西/隆興行省; in Fujian province 福建行省; in Shaanxi-Sichuan province 陝西四川行省; in Gansu province 甘肅等處行中書省, one office in Ningxia 宁夏 and one office in Lintao 臨洮; in the “Central Area” 腹里 (around the capital with jurisdiction directly under Central Secretariat).
134 *Yuanshi*, ch. 9. The name Jianghuai and Jiangzhe match the name changes of the province Xingsheng, so they have the same territorial jurisdiction. The office’s seat shifted between Yangzhou and Hangzhou but was more often in Hangzhou, until the office’s termination in 1299.
135 The three chief clergy officials appointed in 1277 by Khubilai for *Jianghuai shijiao zongtongsuo* were the Tangut monk Yang Lianzhenjia 楊璉真伽 (蔑真加 / 憫真加 / 嘉木揚喇勒智), the Jurchen monk Xingyu 行育 (or, Kang Jixiang 亢吉祥, Hang Jixiang 行吉祥, Monk Longchuan 龍川和尚), and the Tibetan/Tangut monk Jiawa 加瓦 (or, Jiawaba 加瓦八). See Zhou Mi 周密, *Guixin zazhi* 癸辛雜識 (1991), 161.
Hangzhou for reconstruction of religious landscape and Buddhist canon print from 1277 to 1291, favored by Khubilai throughout his reign. He was dismissed in 1291 due to the corruption case of his closed court alliance Sangha (桑哥, ?-1291). Two months after Sangha’s execution in the capital, Regional Commissions for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs Xing Xuanzheng yuán 行宣政院 was established in Nanjing to overcome Jianghuai shijiao zongtongsuo in Hangzhou. In 1292 or 1293, the office was relocated to Hangzhou.¹³⁶ Xing Xuanzheng yuán was the branch office of Xuanzheng yuán in different regions, and there were several of them in the Yuan Empire by that time.¹³⁷ This change was mainly aimed to replace monk officials by civil officials. Jianghuai shijiao zongtongsuo in Hangzhou was closed eventually in 1299, based on the proposal from Imperial Preceptor Shalopa 沙羅巴 (Tangut monk from Qinzhou 秦州, surname Gao 高, 1259-1314) who had served as Zongtong in the Hangzhou bureau before.¹³⁸ From 1291 to 1299, Xing Xuanzhengyuan 行宣政院 was mainly clear up the mess of farmland dispute which Yang Lianzhenjia left in Jiangnan. Yang had received bribes and illegally registered over 500,000 tenant farmer households to monastic status to evade taxes. Xing Xuanzhengyuan 行宣政院 had returned them all back to common households.¹³⁹ Xing Xuanzhengyuan 行宣政院 (in Hangzhou and other places overall) was/were also removed and reestablished many times in the mid and late Yuan period, and lasted till the end of the Yuan. There were also a

¹³⁶ Zhizheng Jinling xinzhi 至正金陵新志, ch. 6; Liangzhe jinshizhi 两浙金石志, ch. 14; Deng Duoling 邓冲刺, Yuandai Hangzhou xingxuan zhengyuan 元代杭州行宣政院 (1995).
¹³⁷ This was similar to the Xing Zhongshu sheng (or province) serving as the branch office of the Zhongshu sheng — the Central Secretariat. Xing Xuanzheng yuán was usually set up in regions that had significant number of religious groups and institutions. From all extant information we have today, we know that there were several Xing Xuanzheng yuán in the Yuan Empire.
¹³⁸ Yuanshi. On Shalopa, see Lü Jianfu 呂建福, Zhongguo mijishi 中國密教史 (1995), 541; Shi Fahong 釋法洪, “Chi jian dishi pai 敕建帝師碑 in Fozu lidai tongzai, 22: 733; Herbert Franke.
¹³⁹ The number 500,000 tenant farmer households might be an exaggeration. Another source says 23,000 households.
temporary bureau for controlling Buddhist monk called Supervision Commission for Promoting Religion 廣教總管府, established in 1331, and removed in 1334. There were sixteenth of them all over the empire including the Jiangnan region.\footnote{Yuanshi, ch. 34.}

Overall, this bureaucratic system had its advantages and disadvantages.\footnote{This bureaucratic system of religious affairs was mainly an invention of the Yuan Empire, though it had learned ideas from the Jin and the Song. The Song dynasty had an institution called the Chuanfa yuan 傳法院, Institute for Propagation of the Tripitaka. It was under the Court of State Ceremonial, Honglu si 鴻臚寺. The Chuanfa yuan’s main function was to gather scholar officials to translate and publish the Buddhist canon.} It regulates Buddhists and local religious activities. On the other hand, it was very redundant and still offers monks tremendous power and privileges. Buddhist monks were involved in politics and local affairs. They could govern local people and control resources over officials’ reach, and influence court politics as well. Because of the monks’ overpowerful, in the mid and late Yuan period, huge numbers of young adults who suppose to work chose to become Buddhist monks, and Buddhist temples collectively obtained overwhelmingly high amount of properties and lands. Farmlands and households were affiliated to Buddhist institutions to avoid tax duties. Many Buddhist monks and groups also committed crimes and even cause rebellions. Therefore, there is a saying that the Yuan dynasty was end in the hand of Buddhist monks. The Yuan government always had lenient laws regarding Buddhist monks, and tolerant gesture towards religious groups overall. According the Yuan legal document compilation \textit{Yuandianzhang} 元典章, Buddhist monks had exemptions from tax, labors and military service. They also enjoyed privileges of special juristic procedures (joint court system 約
monastic groups enjoyed the unprecedented privilege that never seen in previous dynasties.

As for the privileges of a Buddhist monastery, the Yuan government also treated them in a high regard. The monastery enjoyed more freedom of managing its property and self managing its monastic affairs and human resources. Comparing to local government and many other institutions in the Yuan period, Buddhist monasteries were quite independent in its own development and regulation, separated from external influence. In 1264, long before the conquest of the Southern Song, the Mongols issued an edict that succeeded a policy from the Chinggisid period about tax exemption for four religious groups, including Buddhists, Daoists, Christians and Muslims. Only land tax 地稅 and commercial tax 商稅 were enforced, since Khubilai was in need of resources for his two campaigns against Ariq Boke in the north and the Southern Song in the south simultaneously. After the conquest of the Southern Song in 1276, this policy was then hardly enforced, due to the more stable revenue source for the central government. This means that secular people paid land and commercial taxes but monasteries did not, though there was still a law stating that they were supposed to. Besides land and commercial taxes, for people who affiliated to religious institutions in South China, mostly monastic clergy, the head/individual tax 丁税, itemized taxes 科差 and assisted labor 助役 are not required. Also, there was an edict in 1277 of a general all-included tax

142 Yuandian zhang 元典章: xingbu 刑部, ch. 1.
143 Cho, “Beyond Tolerance,” 89, 93; Tongzhi tiaoge jiaozhu 通制條格校註, 29:718; Yuandianzhang 元典章, 24: 1a (note that the Yuandianzhang was not an official legal code but rather a composition of legal cases).
exemption for these religious groups in the Jiangnan region, and another edict in 1295 of a general tax exemption for religious groups all over the empire.\textsuperscript{144} Overall, most likely in the Jiangnan region, all taxes were exempted and not charged since the conquest of the Southern Song. In the meanwhile, Buddhist monasteries tremendously dilated/expanded their properties, especially farmlands. According to official policy, farmland of monasteries that were left from previous dynasties or granted from the emperor were not taxable, but farmland and cash donations for commercial purposes from local people were taxable. First of all, this was hardly enforced. Second, even if the monastery submitted the taxes, it will be the local government who received them, not religious bureaus. In any case, the financial contribution of Buddhist monasteries and religious institutions in the Jiangnan region to the state was very limited, in the contrast, the spending and awards from the state budget to these institutions were huge. Thus the Buddhist monasteries indeed became a burden of the state economy, which the state did not realize but allow its continuous expansion.\textsuperscript{145} Buddhist monasteries and groups, including the White Cloud, became extremely wealthy, for the land, population, business and resources they owned. As stated by the late Yuan scholar Wei Su 危素 (1303-1372),

Monks have more land but less duties, and accumulation for ten years made them lots of wealth and properties.\textsuperscript{146}
僧人田多差役少，十年積蓄多財資

\textsuperscript{144} Cho, “Beyond Tolerance,” 108-9. This was proposed by Dampa in 1294, as will be discussed later.
\textsuperscript{145} Bai Wengu 白文固, “Yuandai siyuan sengni de fuyi wenti 元代寺院僧尼的賦役問題, Zhongguo jingjishi yanjiu 中國經濟史研究 1998.1; Chen Gaohua 陳高華 and Shi Weimin 史衛民, Yuandai jingjishi 元代經濟史.
\textsuperscript{146} Wei Suo 危素, “Shaofusi fatangji” 昭福寺法堂記, in Wei Taipu wenji, ch. 2.
The purpose of establishing offices on religious affairs was apparently to regulate and control all Buddhist individuals and groups directly from the central government more efficiently. According to *Yuanshi* 元史, which were edited by Chinese court scholars in the Ming dynasty, the Yuan Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs *Xuanzheng yuan* 行宣政院 was effective in supervising the three main Buddhist schools, but was not able to control White Cloud and White Lotus sects. Because these sects were searching for their own interests, rather than simple religious practice.\(^{147}\)

If all temples in the empire were led by Inner and Outer (i.e. Central and Regional) Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs, including those of Chan, Jiao and Lü schools, they would stay on their own business. Only so called White Cloud sect and White Lotus sect, were particularly focusing on wicked means for benefits.\(^{148}\)

若夫天下寺院之領於內外宣政院，曰禪，曰教，曰律，則固各守其業，惟所謂白雲宗、白蓮宗者，亦或頗通奸利云。

Therefore, it was necessary for the Yuan court to establish separate office to directly take charge of the unruly White Cloud and White Lotus. The office for the White Cloud was established, but no office was established for the White Lotus.\(^{149}\) It shows the unique status of the White Cloud sect in the arena of the Yuan religious landscape. The White Cloud received more attention from the Yuan emperor and government, and successfully secured their favor and support. The Yuan religious affairs offices were highly hierarchical based on different levels of jurisdiction, from the court, provinces 行省, to routes 路. There is no office down to the level of counties and prefectures. Both

---

147 Note that the *Yuanshi*’s authors were Ming officials.
149 The White Lotus was recognized in 1312 at the beginning of Renzong’s 仁宗 reign, thanks to the sect leader Pudu’s 釋普度 (1255-1330) request to the court.
White Cloud and White Lotus were local based (towns and villages), and not concentrated in provincial or route capitals. The White Cloud sect was spatially stable and limited to the Hang-Jia-Hu Plain, while the White Lotus sect spread out to different regions. The court established offices on the White Cloud sect was also due to its assigned mission to complete the Puning canon, whereas the White Lotus sect did not have a state sponsored canon printing project.

This chapter analyzes the difference and similarities of the activities of the White Cloud members in the Yuan compared to their predecessors along with the “people of the way” and people who “eating vegetables and serving devils” in the Song? It also demonstrates how the Mongol government’s unstable policies changed the religious office establishment and the development of the sect. My research claims that the leading force of the White Cloud sect was not monastic monks, but lay people? In the following sections of this chapter, I will divide the development trend of the sect by different reign periods of the Yuan emperors. Because each emperor has different policies for institutional changes toward the sect. In each section of one emperor’s reign period, I discuss the changes related to the establishment and abolishment of bureaus, official persecutions and awards, the leaders of the White Cloud sect, as well as Buddhist canon printing projects. More records in official chronicle Yuanshi appeared in the period between 1276 to 1323, as we can see three times of persecutions in 1303-06, 1311, and 1316-20. We have limited information for the period from 1323 to 1368 the end of the Yuan. But it does not mean that the White Cloud sect disappeared. They survived till the beginning of the Ming dynasty.
Shizu’s 世祖 reign (1276-1294)

Monk Dao’an’s petition to Shizu - Khubilai Khan - led to official recognition. So the White Cloud sect in the Yuan dynasty was first led by monastic monks of the Nanshan Puning Monastery in Hangzhou. Dao’an as the key figure of the sect’s revival, was the real founding father of the White Cloud sect. He can compare to Pudu 普度 (1255-1330), who had published *Lushan lianzong baojian* 庐山莲宗宝鉴 “Treasure Book of the Lotus sect in Lushan” and revived the White Lotus sect. According to Richard von Glahn, The reason why Khubilai recognized the White Cloud as a sect, was because his intention to balance the powerful and wealthy Chan Buddhist monasteries in the Jiangnan area. The White Cloud sect centered in Huzhou and Jiaxing, and acquired enormous landholding through donations and registration of monastic status from those rich landowners and local patrons who sought tax and corvée duties exemptions.\(^\text{150}\)

Though Khubilai was aware of Chan Buddhists’ influence in South China and preferred other Chinese Buddhist schools than the Chan, he rather had tolerant and friendly attitude toward all Buddhists. I argue that Khubilai’s decision is based on the trust and favor of Dao’an through his personal referee Imperial Preceptor Dampa, for the concerns of various ways of merit accumulation through diverse religious groups, and later on the mission of Buddhist canon printing industry for the White Cloud.

(Figure 1)

In the early Southern Song dynasty, there was a comparable example. The first Emperor Gaozong (1107-1187) once favored the White Lotus sect, and had offered two

imperial audiences with the sect founder Mao Ziyuan 茅子元 (1096-1166) in 1133 and 1166. The emperor invited Mao for teaching Pure Land Buddhism at the court, but did not recognize the White Lotus sect. The sect and Mao still suffered persecution regardless of these two imperial audience. Also, in the Song, no bureaus of religious affairs for the White Lotus sect was established. The White Lotus sect still had no right for ordination of a monk, abbot appointment and temple legitimization. The Yuan was much more creative and tolerant, though this special favor was given to the White Cloud sect, not the White Lotus sect. The Mongols went way beyond their Song counterpart. They not only made the White Cloud sect legal by officially creating relevant clergy bureaus, but also made it a role model of Buddhist schools. In the eyes of the Song rulers, the White Cloud movement were trouble makers same as the “people of the way” and people who “eating vegetables and serving devils.” But in the Yuan government’s view, the White Cloud sect was a standard example of religious order and local Buddhism.

The office for managing the White Cloud Sect Buddhist Registrar Bureau (or, Monk Registry Bureau / Monk Recorder Office) Baiyunzong senglu si 白雲宗僧錄司 of浙西道杭州等路 was set up in the Puning monastery 普寧寺 in Southern Hill 南山, located in the outskirt of Hangzhou in 1279 or earlier. Dao’an 道安 was the head of the bureau 浙西道杭州等路白雲宗僧錄, and later he had the title as the Master of the White Cloud Sect 白雲宗主. There were also a separate office called the White Cloud Sect General Overseer Office Baiyunzong zongshesuo 白雲宗總攝/宗攝所. No detailed introduction of these two offices were available, except the names. The White Cloud Sect

151 Liu Xiao 劉曉. This was later the (General) Monk Registry Bureau (總) 僧錄司.
Buddhist Registrar Bureau could be the procedure office that issuing monastic certificate and complete registration, and the White Cloud Sect General Overseer could be the investigator office that advising religious activities and implementing censorship. These dual offices regulated monastic activities and properties of the White Cloud sect, and separated it from jurisdiction of Jianghuai/Jiangzhe Cross-Routes Supervision Office for Buddhist Teachings Zhulu shijiao zongtong/zongshesuo 諸路釋教總統/總攝所. However, they were both mutually influenced, as we shall see later in the case of Yang Lianzhenjia and other clergy officials’ sponsorship on Puning canon print. In general, once the monks and lay people attached to the White Cloud sect, they were controlled by these two offices, thus did not have tax, corvée and census/report duties to local government anymore.

Table 2: Structure of bureaucratic systems (civil and religious affairs) in the Yuan dynasty

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offices for Civil Affairs</th>
<th>Offices for Religious Affairs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Central Secretariat</td>
<td>Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>中書省</td>
<td>Xuanzheng yuan 宣政院</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Secretariat</td>
<td>Cross-Routes Supervision Office for Buddhist Teachings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— province</td>
<td>Zhulu shijiao zongtong/zongshesuo 諸路釋教總統/總攝所</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>行中書省 (行省)</td>
<td>(General)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Buddhist Registrar Bureau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White Cloud sect (General)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White Cloud sect General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Overseer Office</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

152 Zhongguo xinzheng quhua tongshi: Yuandai juan 中国行政區劃通史:元代卷 (Shanghai: Fudan daxue chubanshe), 1.

153 Some scholars argue that the Xuanzheng yuan only dealt with Buddhist Affairs and that there were the Jixian Yuan 集賢院 for Daoist affairs and the Chongfu si 崇福司 for Christian affairs. There was no central bureau for Islam. See Atwood (2015), 9.

154 See Herbert Franke, “Tibetans in Yuan China.”
From the table, we see that the hierarchy of the religious offices was established partially in parallel with the civil offices. We should be aware that both the civil and religious offices were not absolutely spatially related. There were overlap of regional boundaries. Also, there were overlap of administrative functions and official members too. In the primary level, Xuanzheng yuan was directly responsible to the central government. After that, Xing Xuanzheng yuan and Shijiao zongtongsuo were both based on a province or two, covering several routes. As for prefectures and counties, there were different bureaus matching each level of civil administration. The offices related to the White Cloud, including Buddhist Registrar Bureau and General Overseer Office, were more for the sect concerns, than based on geography. But their office ranks are as high as

---

155 Lu 路 in the Yuan period were different from the routes of the Jin and Song dynasties. Yuan lu were on the level below the province.
Xing Xuanzheng yuan and Shijiao zongtongsuo, but also independent from them. (office rank will be discussed in the section on Wuzong’s reign in 1308) In the Yuan dynasty, there were few other special religious sects were established or recognized, received official patronage. In North China, there was the Buddhist Grand Kaiyuan sect 大開元宗, the Great Dhūta Teaching 大頭陀教, and the Daoist Quanzhen 全真 sect. So the White Cloud was the only example of such bureaucratic settings in South China, and the only one that had relevant bureaus established. At last, the government had established a special office for canon printing project – the Tripitaka Print Office. It served as an official publisher that collecting donations, managing the printing process and selling the Sūtras for profits.

**Table 3: Brief timeline of the offices related to the White Cloud sect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect</th>
<th>Year established</th>
<th>Year abolished</th>
<th>Officers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>White Cloud sect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhist Registrar</td>
<td>By 1279 or before</td>
<td>1306 abolished</td>
<td>Controller 提控 Administrative Clerk 知事</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bureau</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Buddhist/Monk Registrar 僧錄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Cloud sect</td>
<td>unknown</td>
<td>1303 abolished</td>
<td>Sect Supervisor 宗攝 Buddhist/Clergy Administrator僧判</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Sect) Oversee Office</td>
<td>1308 reestablished</td>
<td>1309 abolished</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(name 1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Cloud sect</td>
<td>unknown</td>
<td>1311 abolished</td>
<td>General Supervisor 總攝 Buddhist/Clergy Administrator僧判</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(General) Oversee</td>
<td></td>
<td>1319 abolished</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office (name 2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

156 The Dhuta sect’s leader was granted the title “Chan Master of Dhuta” 頭陀禅師. In south China, the White Lotus sect had its leader granted the title “Tutelary protector of the White Lotus sect” 白蓮掌教護持. But no bureaus were established for these two sects.

157 There may have been other official titles, such as Auditing Officer Zhaomo 照磨 (see Zhou Mi, Guixin zazhi, bieji A), Recorder Jingli 經歷, and Manager Zhushi 主事. Some might have belonged to the Shijiao zongtongsuo 釋教總統所.
Most seats in the offices were held by the sect’s monks. The first chief abbot Dao’an was appointed Monk Register, and a non-Chinese (色目) was appointed Clergy Administrator. Thus a monk could have double identity as both a monk and a government employee. The White Cloud sect became self-governing in this sense, and was largely independent from the state. White Cloud sect’s monks were extremely powerful in the local society, if they held a government appointment at either the Overseer Office or Monk Registry Bureau. There is a story in an early Yuan biji that mentioned a confidence man who had been attached to a Song Grand Councilor had turned into the protective wings of a monk registrar of the White Cloud sect.

“Zhu Shifu of Anji county, was the son-in-law of the Grand Councilor Ma Biwu (i.e. Ma Tingluan 馬廷鸞 1223-1289). There is a man surnamed Wen, and he got to enter Ma’s household because of Zhu. Recently he had no one to rely on, so he turned himself to a monk registrar of the White Cloud sect. Wen had no way to please him. So he created a story, saying: [In the past Biwu told me that, ‘when I was in the office of Grand Councilor, Emperor Duzong (reign 1264-1274) asked me: I dreamed of a holy monk’s visit, he asked me to lend him a land in the palace for the residence of monk. I approved. What omen is this? I (Ma) kept silent because I thought this would not be auspicious.’ Today the newly built Banruo Temple of the White Cloud sect, is on the site of the former imperial residence hall. So we know things are all predetermined.] So the monk registrar’s disciples recorded this story on a stele in the temple, in order to consecrated it.” Alas! If Emperor Duzong had such dream, by that time Jia Sidao (1213-1275) controlled state affairs, how come the emperor only told this to Ma? Even if he only told Ma, how come Ma did not let his relatives know, but only tell Wen? Therefore, we can see how fearless a villain could be. I am afraid if our next generations believe this story without knowing the truth, so I have to reveal it.

158 Overmyer, 634.
159 Biography of Ma Tingluan 馬廷鸞 (1223-1289), in Songshi 宋史, ch. 414
160 Zhou Mi, Guixin zazhi, xuji B.
安吉縣朱實夫，馬相碧梧之婿也。有溫生者，因朱而登馬相之門，近又無聊，遂依白雲宗賢僧錄者，無以媚之，乃創為一說，雲：「曩聞碧梧與之言雲：『向在相位日，蒙度宗宣諭雲：朕嘗夢一聖僧來謁，從朕借大內之地為卓錫之所。朕嘗許之，是何祥也？』馬雖知為不祥而不敢對。今白雲宗所造般若寺，即昔之寢殿也。則知事皆前定。』於是其徒遂以此說載之於寺碑，以神其事。嗚呼！使當時果有此夢，方賈平章當國，安得獨語馬公？使馬公果聞此語，安得不使子侄親友知之，且獨語門吏耶？可見小人之無忌憚如此。余恐後人不知而輕信，故不得不為之辯。

Though it is a retrospective writing of anecdote, it shows how powerful a White Cloud monk registrar in the Yuan local society could be, that a person who used to attach the former Song Grand Councilor would come to please him. It also reveals the Banruo temple 般若寺. It was built on the previous Song palace site after the conquest of Hangzhou, under Yang Lianzhenjia’s sponsorship during Khubilai’s reign in the Jiaozuo region.

Tangut monk Yang Lianzhenjia was a patron/protector of the White Cloud sect and its Buddhist canon printing projects including both Puning Canon and Tangut Hexi Canon. He sojourned in Hangzhou and was active starting from the Mongol’s conquest of the city, since himself was a military clergy and had achievement in Khubilai’s southern campaign against the Song. Yang was known for his transformation of Hangzhou’s sacred landscape. He destroyed many Song remained buildings, and implanted Tibetan Buddhist style sculptures and temples. As for the monuments he had built, he erected five temples and one stupa on top of the Southern Song imperial palace site. These five temples belong to five different Buddhist schools, and one of the temples was of the
White Cloud sect - the Banruo Temple. The former Song palace was located at the Phoenix Hill 鳳凰山 in the south side of the city. In 1277, the abandoned palace had a fire which burned down many buildings. In 1284, Khubilai Khan issued an imperial order to build five grand Buddhist temples on the palace site, and divide them to be affiliated to five different schools for promoting their teachings. Khubilai’s decision to build these temples was a direct response to Yang Lianzhenjia’s suggestion after the palace fire. Based on Khubilai’s approval, Yang became the leader who implemented the edict and sponsored this reconstruction project. In the second month of 1288, Yang Lianzhenjia reported to Khubilai that the project was completed.

Banruo Temple was on the site of the Gate of Hening 和寧門, the main northern entrance into the Southern Song imperial palace and the south endpoint of the imperial thoroughfare 御街 which was the central commercial street in the city, dividing Hangzhou city into two parts: east and west. The construction of Banruo Temple in the old palace site, along with the other four temples which belonged to four official

---

161 The five temples were named Baoguo, Xingyuan, Banruo, Xianling, and Zunsheng. The Banruo Temple (Banruo means "wisdom of Buddhism") was a monastery of the White Cloud sect. The Grand Baoguo Temple (Baoguo means "compensating the state") was a monastery of the Chan (Zen) school. The Xingyuan Temple (Xingyuan means "making the Yuan prosper") was a monastery of the Tiantai school. The Xianling Temple (Xianling means the "forest of immortals") was a monastery of the Ci'en school (or the Weishi "Consciousness Only" school or Faxiang "Dharma Characteristics" school). The Zunsheng Temple (Zunsheng means "revering holiness") was a monastery of Tibetan Buddhism with a stupa attached to it. In addition to the five temples, Yang Lianzhenjia also built a huge Tibetan-style white stupa. The stupa is called Zhennan, meaning "Suppressing the South."

162 Yikui Xu, Shi feng gao, j.10, 2B-5B.


164 Ying Lang 朗瑛, Qi xiu lei gao 七修類稿 (Shanghai: Zhonghua shuju shanghai bianjisuo, 1959), j.2 天地類 杭州宋宮考, 36.


166 According to Zhou Mi, however, the Banruo Temple was also located at a former Song emperor residence 寝殿. see Mi Zhou, “Jianseng weimeng” 奸僧偽夢, Guixin zashi, 202-3.
monastic Buddhist schools (including Chan, Tiantai, Ci’en, and Tibetan), recognized the high rank of the White Cloud sect. This elevation of the White Cloud’s status was intended to challenge the former Song authority, and balance the influence of other larger Buddhist schools with the raising status of the White Cloud sect. As we know, none of the temples of the White Cloud sect in the Southern Song and the Yuan were located inside the city wall of Hangzhou, this Baoruo Temple in the former palace site is the only example. Therefore, the establishment of the temple highlighted its uniqueness among all white Cloud worship venues as well as its significance in Yuan Hangzhou’s sacred landscape.\textsuperscript{167}

Throughout Khubilai’s reign, there was no persecution towards the sect since it was officially established. There were only bureaucratic settings, and awards for the sect. Besides these creativity and accomplishments, during Khubilai’s reign, the White Cloud sect had completed the Puning Canon printing project. It was started in 1277 by Dao’an as a private project at the Sixi Monastery 思溪寺 in Huzhou, and soon gained financial support from the Yuan court. The workshop was moved to the Grand Puning Monastery in the outskirts of Hangzhou. Editors reviewed existing Sūtras to a new edition, and craftsmen made new blocks. The project mainly completed in 1290.

Dao’an had also made a lineage system for the White Cloud chief abbot succession. After him, was the ninth generation, and retrospectively traced back to Kong Qingjue as the first generation founder. As stated in Chapter 1, Dao’an’s successors were

\textsuperscript{167} More on this palace site temple building project, see Ding Guofam 丁國范 175; \textit{Daqing yitongzhi} 大清一統志 j.217; \textit{Qianlong Hangzhou fuzhi} 乾隆杭州府志 j.31; \textit{Jiajing Renhe xianzhi} 嘉靖仁和縣志 j.12; \textit{Fenghuangshan chanzong da Bao’en si ji} 凤凰山禅宗大報國寺記, Jinhua Huang xiansheng wenji 金華黃先生文集 j.11.
Runing 如寧, then Rumiao 如妙, then Ruwei 如渭, then Mingzhao 明照, then Minglun 明倫, in chronical order. There was a rule of different generations in the lineage used first character of the monk’s name as a mark. The ninth generation used hui 慧, the tenth Ru 如, and the eleventh ming 明. Dao’an was the ninth generation, as his dharma name is Huizhao 慧照. (In 1290, Ruzhi 如志 succeeded the position of chief abbot.\textsuperscript{168}) Also, as discussed in this chapter, the lineage of monastic abbots yield way for lay leaders. Many of them seem to be from a certain Shen 沈 family. This lay leadership transformation, took place around the same time that the Tangut clergy official Yang Lianzhenjia lost power in the 1290s, and the simultaneous process of replacing clergy bureau Shijiao zongtongsuo by a civil bureau Xing Xuanzhengyuan. This might also be related to the general decline of Tangut and Tibetan monks’ influence on the White Cloud sect as well as Buddhist affairs in the area. Dao’an had close relations with Imperial Preceptor Dampa and many other important non-Chinese Buddhist leaders both in the court and the region. Many of them were Tibetans, Tanguts and Uyghurs.\textsuperscript{169}

Chengzong’s 成宗 reign (1294-1307)

There was a decline of monastic influence (especially those of Tangut and Tibetan monks) at the turn of the century (from 13th to 14th centuries). As mentioned in the introduction of this chapter, in 1291 Yang Lianzhenjia lost his position due to involvement with Sangha 桑哥 in the court purge. In the meantime, the Xing

\textsuperscript{168}大正新脩大藏經 第十冊 No. 293《大方廣佛華嚴經》CBETA.
\textsuperscript{169}There is even a scholar arguing that Dao’an was from the Tangut royal family. 孫伯君, see Chapter 3 for more details.
Xuanzhengyuan 行宣政院 of Jianghuai/Jiangzhe province based in Yangzhou and Hangzhou was established. In 1299, Yang Lianzhenjia’s office – Jianghuai/Jiangzhe shijiao zongtongsuo Jianghuai/Jiangzhe Supervision Office for Buddhist Teachings 江淮/江浙釋教總統所 was removed. So Xing Xuanzhengyuan 行宣政院 completely took over the administrative matters of this office. In the White Cloud sect, it happened simultaneously the transition of leadership from monastic monks to lay people. Though lay people was always the major driven force of the sect activities, during Khubilai’s reign monastic monks held positions as the sect head, at least in the case of Dao’an. In addition, many monastic monks involved in or had connections with the White Cloud were Tangut and Tibetan Buddhist monks, who also held leading positions at the Supervision Office. So the dismiss of Yang Lianzhenjia in 1291 and the eventual removal of the Supervision Office in 1299 might mark to the decline of their influence in religious affairs of the Jiangnan society.

Emperor Chengzong’s reign had dramatic shift of religious policies on the White Cloud sect, due to the change of secular policy towards elite merchants, rich households and monks in the Jiangnan region. During the reign, social and political crisis emerged, such as the conflict for the imperial throne and loss of tax revenue due to farmland attached to Buddhist institutions. Also, local economy were monopolized by rich families and the state economy of trade largely controlled by ortog 茅貿 “official merchant” who ran wholesale of government wanted commodities and sold usuries to commoners. In addition, Buddhist monks had tremendous power in the empire, and the population of monks increased dramatically, including those of the White Cloud sect as well.
In the six month of Dade 6 大德六年 (1302), the most important ortog - salt and granary transport merchants, Zhu Qing 朱清 of Yangzhou and Zhang Xuan 張瑄 of Suzhou were arrested and later executed. They used to receive government patronage for critical tribute transport from the Jiangnan region to the capital Dadu through ocean. Then rich households in Jiangnan 江南富户 were accused of assimilating 兼併 commoners’ farmland, and were persecuted through an urgent order from the emperor. The emperor also changed the policy to challenge Buddhist power that Buddhists who committed crimes should be charged heavier. Buddhists who committed crimes were to be on trial by officials from both Central and Regional Secretariats, and in case of the judge corruption the case would be heard by Imperial Censorate 御史臺. 170

In later chapters on Buddhist canon printing projects, we know that Zhu Qing and Zhang Xuan’s families were very enthusiastic donors of the Qisha Buddhist Canon 磘砂藏 printed in Suzhou, which had connections with the White Cloud Puning Canon 普寧藏 in Hangzhou. Their execution not only affected the central government revenue and local economy, but also the printing business of Qisha Canon and local religious landscape in the Jiangnan region.

In 1303, there was a famine in the Western Zhejiang, which was the core region of the White Cloud sect. The local government’s granary had not enough grains for refugees, so they sold official positions in exchange of money from commoners to buy food for relief 大德七年，... 浙西饑，發廪不足，募民入粟補官以賑之. 171 Lack of

---

170 YS20:439
171 YS 170:3987-88. biography of Shang Wen
food, not enough labor due to monastic attachment, and corrupted officials exacerbated the situation and caused unequal distribution the inappropriate storage of granary. The central government enforced a series of ways to rescue people, and change the situation. Emergency food package were distributed, and various taxes were waived from 1303 to 1304.

There was continous rain in west Zhe region, people of famine 140,000. Food release has been a month. Still waive the summer tax that year, and together with wine and vinegar taxes of the affected households. Waive the additional local taxes of that year (1303). In Dade 8 (1304), tenant households in the Jiangnan region had too high private taxes. It is order to take twenty percent off the taxes, and make it the permanent rule.

In 1303, as the quote in the beginning of this chapter shows, a Confucian scholar Zheng Jiefu 鄭介夫 (?-?) pointed out the negative influence of the White Cloud sect on local society. He claimed that the White Cloud sect was not a normal Buddhist school, but a gangster group which sought their own interests and abused local people through its special clergy offices yamen 衙門. He made connections between the group in the Yuan and the Song periods, and suggested that they were both evil but the at the moment in the Yuan the White Cloud group grew much larger and caused greater local disorder and harassment. He suggested to disqualify the sect, remove the clergy offices, and punish the head. The head of the White Cloud sect was a lay person named Qian Rujing 錢如鏡,

---

172 Xin Yuanshi 新元史 j.79, zhi 志 46, shihuo 食貨 12, zhengxu 賑恤 shang 上.
173 ibid.
174 Zheng Jiefu was from Kaihua 開化 county of Quzhou 衢州 in Southern Zhejiang. He had no official position, but was famous due to his proposal “Proposal of the Great Harmony” Taiping ce 太平策 submitted directly to the court in 1303. This quote of the White Cloud sect was included in this proposal.
matches the tenth generation character Ru 如. He was also a clergy official titled Sect Overseer 宗攝, head of the Overseer Office 宗攝所.\textsuperscript{175}

In the same year, in the court, a memorial was submitted by Shang Wen 尚文 (1236-1327), the Grand Master for Assisting toward Goodness 資善大夫, and the Left Minister of Central Secretariat 中書左丞.

In Dade 7 (1303), Shang Wen submit a court memorial again, criticize the White Cloud sect in the south and suggest to abolish it, and dismiss its members to serve same tax and labor duties as other commoners.\textsuperscript{176}

It was approved by the emperor. An imperial order was issued to abolish the clergy office and charge their farmland taxes.

As mentioned in the Shizu’s reign, Dao’an had close relationship with the Imperial Preceptor Dampa, who helped make connection between the sect with Khubilai Khan. Dampa was the key person in the process of official recognition, financial support and bureaucratic establishment of the sect. He died in Shangdu in the fifth month of 1303, just two months before the official persecution of the White Cloud sect. The White Cloud sect received punishment was directly caused by Shang Wen’s proposal. But other factors

\textsuperscript{175} Liu Xiao 劉曉, “Baiyunzong zongshe Qian Rujing xiaokao” 白雲宗宗攝錢如鏡小考. Qian’s tenure ended around 1307-8, then it’s the era of Shen Mingren till 1323

\textsuperscript{176} YS 170:3987-88 biography of Shang Wen.

\textsuperscript{177} YS j.21 454 not long time ago in the same month, " there was a ban on the monks who carried princes' orders and harassed local people in the name of temple construction. " 秋七月辛酉，禁僧人以修建寺宇為名，竄諸王令旨乘傳擾民。YS j.21 453.
also made the sect decline at that time, including the sect’s lost of powerful people’s support in the central court. This was the first time downfall of the sect after its initial establishment. Shang Wen’s proposal was recorded in official document, which could be attributed to the successful investigation and punishment carried out by the government later. There could be many other similar proposals to suspect the White Cloud sect in the earlier period, even during Shizu’s reign. But due to the protection from powerful persons in the court such as Dampa and Khubilai’s personal favor, no imperial order of persecution was given. Therefore there were no record in government documents, and also in literati writings which they often praised the officials’ good actions taken based on imperial orders. From Persian source, we know that during Emperor Chengzong’s reign, Dampa was known for releasing criminals and plead to emperor for the criminals. He was lenient, and challenged the judicial system. Also, Dampa was the main advocate to enforce a policy of a general tax exemption for Buddhist monks in all regions of the Yuan Empire in 1294. The imperial edict was issued in 1295, that included the tax exemption of land and commercial taxes which in the previous time were required for religious groups in the empire except the Jiangnan region. These examples show that Dampa had huge influence in the decision making of the emperor on religious affairs, and politics of the state.

---

178 Wonhee Cho 108; the tax exemption was granted to not only Buddhists, but also other religious groups too including Daoists, Muslims and Christians in the 1295 edict, which the Buddhists was not happy to see. The Buddhists insist their exclusive privilege of tax exemption since Dampa's proposal in 1294. 179 Dampa, Herbert Franke, “Tibetans in Yuan China”; Dampa gained Khubilai’s trust and appointment since the campaign against the Song in which he gave valuable advice to Khubilai, 佛祖 歷代通載.
The abolishment order of the sect was implemented by Gao Fang 高昉 (1264-1328) and Su Zhidao 苏志道 (1228-1320). Gao Fang was the Attendant Gentleman at the Ministry of Rites 礼部侍郎, and Su Zhidao was the Clerk of the Ministry of Revenue 户部令史. They were dispatched by the court directly as special investigators on the case.

Sending officials from these two ministries to punish the White Cloud, might indicate the two main focus of the abnormal deeds of the sect - non-orthodox religious practice and problem of tax revenue and household registration. Also, the proposer Shang Wen and implementers Gao Fang and Su Zhidao, they were Chinese scholar officials and non-Buddhists. By that time, many officials of Buddhist bureaus were Tibetan and Tangut monks, why other Mongol or non-Chinese officials did not accuse the sect, or were assigned to investigate it? These Chinese scholar officials had no connections with the sect, and had less interest on the sect’s religious practice than their social activities.

The proposal was through court memorial, which was the highest level of bureau and judge - the emperor. Did Shang Wen receive the petition from local officials, or he discovered the sect’s misbehavior by himself and decided to report it? Did he have direct contact with the sect? Why the investigators were sent directly from court as well, rather than local investigation first? Maybe local officials were close to the sect, or shared mutual interests with it.

According to Shang Wen’s proposal recorded in his gravestone, the White Cloud sect had awarded (might be, actually sold out) bureau seals to others, set up more than seven thousand offices owned by powerful families in many counties, and total

---

180 Ding Guofan 丁国范 176.
181 A later case in this chapter shows that Qeliu 黑驢 a Mongolian official proposed to persecute the sect.
population of the White Cloud members were over several hundred thousand. “錫印章，群縣酋豪名署七千余所，眾數十萬。” These members took others’ wives, farms and houses. They lured foolish people, in the name of giving them blessings. They escaped labor and tax duties, and instead they were good at bribing (officials and powerful people). “發而妻子田宅，誖愚民，托祝釐。逭徭賦，幸習甘賄。” Shang suggested to abolish the sect, dismiss its members, and make them to share the same labor and tax duties as other commoners. “於是罷之，斥散黨興，同民賦役。”

According to Gao Fang’s memo recorded in his gravestone,

(Gao Fang) was promoted to be the Attendant Gentleman at the Ministry of Rites. Powerful people in Western Zhejiang converted their houses to Buddhist cloisters, and all ordained (by themselves) as Buddhist monks and nuns. They called their religion as the White Cloud sect. Every day they lured hooligans to conduct illicit activities, took people’s farm, house, and enslaved people’s children. Commanderies and counties could not avoid their bother. When secretary (Gao Fang) heard about this, he took charge of this case by law. He collected many people’s farmland and houses, and returned many people to commoner registration from monastic status, and removed over ten thousand of corrupted officials. People in Zhejiang rejoiced from this.

According to Su Zhidao’s memo recorded in his two gravestones,

182 Boshu luchong 李術魯翀, “Pingzhangzhengshi zhishi Shanggong shengdaobei” 平章政事致仕尚公神道碑, Yuanwenlei 元文類, j.68.

183 Su Tianjue 蘇天爵, “Gao Fang shendaobei” 高昉神道碑, Zixi wengao 滋溪文稿, j.11. Though no date is given in this gravestone memo, this seems to be the same incident as the previous mentioned abandon of the sect in 1303. Reason 1, it is Shunde Zhongxian King’s ruling period “時順德忠獻王當國.” Shunde Zhongxian king 順德忠獻王 is Halahasun (Qara Qas) 哈剌哈孫 (1257-1308) served as the Right Chief Councilor of the Central Secretariat from 1303 (ninth month) to 1307 (eighth month), see biography in YS j.136:3291-95, Liu Mingzhong 劉敏中, “Shunde Zhongxian wang bei”順德忠獻王碑; Su Tianjue 蘇天爵, “Shunde Zhongxian wang” 順德忠獻王, Yuan mingcheng shilue 元名臣事略, j.42, “Zaixiang liebiao”宰相列表, YS. Reason 2, “中書以聞,” means the memorial proposal stated by Shang Wen, the Left Grand Councilor of Central Secretariat, see Ding Guofan 177.
(Su Zhidao) at the Ministry of Revenue followed Gao Fang, the Attendant Gentleman at the Ministry of Rites, to investigate the case of the White Cloud sect. The White Cloud sect in Western Zhejiang, ripped off rich people, and collaborated in lending usury and bribing the powerful and wealthy, attached to Buddhism, established bureaus, distributed its members, defrauded and robbed people. Their followers were many ten thousand, and overwhelmed in many prefectures and counties. They were those who pursued unlawful interests and behaved illegal activities. (The investigators) saved those who realized their fault out of the group, confiscated tens of thousands values of farmland and houses, and returned several hundred children of good families back to commoner status. The case took two years, and (the investigators) traveled back and forth to the capital five times, and reported all these to the emperor. 184

“[蘇志道]在戶部從禮部侍郎高公昉治白雲宗獄。浙西白雲宗強梁富人，相率出厚貸、要權貴，稍依傍釋教，立官府，部署其人，煽誘劫持。合其徒數萬，凌轢州縣，為奸利不法者。能為明其詐誤者出之，田盧資賄當沒入者巨萬沒入之，良家子女數百當還民間者還之。閱二歲，五往返京師，以具獄上。”

(Su Zhidao) transferred to be the Clerk of the Ministry of Revenue. Powerful people in Western Zhejiang, in the name of Buddhism, collaborated together for wicked deeds. They had several ten thousand members, and named themselves the White Cloud sect. They held private seals to mark affiliations, both government and local people felt sick of the sect. There was an imperial edict to call the Attendant Gentleman at the Ministry of Rites Gao Fang to investigate this case, and had the gentleman (Su Zhidao) follow him. They traveled back and forth to the capital five times, till they completed the task. They confiscated tens of thousands values of properties, returned children of good families, and saved several hundred people who fell into this wrong way. 185

“[蘇志道]轉戶部令史，浙西豪民以佛為標榜，相煽為奸，眾至數萬，號白雲宗，握印章以總其屬，公私病之。詔禮部侍郎高昉治其獄，以[即蘇志道]從，京師五往返，始竣事，沒資產巨萬，歸良家子女，出詐誤者數百人。”

Therefore, it took Gao and Su two years, and five times of trips back and forth to the capital to report to the emperor. It shows that the case had affected many aspects of

184 Yu Ji 虞集, “Su Zhidao mubei” 蘇志道墓碑, Daoyuan xuegu lu 道園學古錄, j.15.
185 Xu Youren 許有壬, “Su Zhidao shendaobei ming bing xu” 蘇志道神道碑銘并序, Zhizheng ji 至正集, j.47.
local society in the region, including social, economic and political situations. 1. Gao and Su corrected people who were members in the sect but not leaders, back to their original registration status. Since most of them just had status change before from commoners to monks, rather than full-time monastic monks, they had not been resided in monasteries but just house shrines or cloisters. There was no record about any particular monastery, or any place as their headquarters. So it is doubtful that they had a centralized system in the region, and the leadership was not clear. Most members were lay people, no mention of monastic monks belong to the sect. No name of a leader was given, unlike the later persecutions that imperial edict indicated the Shen family was the head of the sect. 2. The investigation team was also able to return children and youth back to their households. They might have been enslaved in the farmland or other properties of the White Cloud sect as servants. These was no unusual as many Yuan households and social elites, especially the Mongols, had house slaves, tenant farmers, and young workers/contractors. So it was not a special phenomenon of the White Cloud. It shows that the leadership or the high level members of the sect tend to be lay people who ran properties, rather than monastic Buddhist monks. 3. The most important task that Gao Fang and Su Zhidao did was to collect or confiscate farmland and properties of the sect. This was the big gain for the government at that time, who was suffering from the shortage of income and tribute. 4. In addition, in these available documents including both proposal (of Shang Wen) and investigation report (showed in the investigators’ gravestone memos), there were neither deity worship nor ritual practice.

The White Cloud sect, was a local self-organized interest group in the name of Buddhism, investing and collecting resources, as well as distributing and allocating them
according to their own principles and sect member ranks. (White Cloud was an umbrella term that covered a wide range of activities.) These lay people made system challenged the economic and governmental structures that the Mongol rulers had set up. So the government’s main focus on this case was the reordering of local society’s population, retrieving local government’s authority in resource control, and securing more local resources. Concerns on lay Buddhist practice was the minimum concern. As Kitamura Takashi suggested, this persecution in the Dade period was mainly due to economic reasons, rather than political motivations. The region was suffering from the shortage of food due to famine, shortage of land produces, and shortage of government revenues from taxes and tribute goods. So the central government takes actions immediately after Shang Wen’s proposal. Powerful families as social elites emerged in the Song period, had been extremely successful in collecting local resources and manipulating local affairs. In Chengzong’s reign, as we showed, there was a shift policy change towards some big powerful families in the rich Jiangnan region, and the White Cloud members were among them.

Following the first official ban, investigation and punishment of the White Cloud sect in 1303, the dispute and reorganization of farmland became more intense in Jiangnan. There is an example of farmland dispute involved a White Cloud sect monk. In Dade 8 (1304), 55 mu of farmland belong to the Confucian school in Dapeng canton, were occupied by a White Cloud sect monk Gu Mingjing. He sold the land to Er Ajiu and others. It was reported to local officials by the Confucian

---

186 Kitamura Takashi, 447.
school, to return the land as the school farmland 學田.\(^{187}\) The local officials ruled the case, returned the land, and punished Gu Mingjing. The 1303 ban weakened the land control of the White Cloud sect. Chikusa Masaaki argues the general weakness of Buddhists’ control over farmland in Jiangnan after the punishment and death of Yang Lianzhenjia in the 1290s, who took the farmland of over 500,000 households in the region.\(^{188}\) The land abuse and remaining active monks and monasteries of the White Cloud sect, pushed the imperial court to abolish relevant offices of the sect, in order to ban the sect comprehensively.

Three years later after the ban (1303), in the first month of Dade 10 (1306), the White Cloud sect’s Buddhist Registrar Bureau was abolished. The three year gap means that during this period, the White Cloud sect was still able to recruit monastic and lay members, organizing their properties and activities, and keep their identity and privileges.

In the spring first month of Dade 10 (1306), \(wuwu\) day, (an imperial edict ordered) to abolish Buddhist Registrar Bureau of the White Cloud sect in Jiangnan. Their members to be returned to every prefectures and counties, monks back to every other monasteries, and all farmlands to be enforced taxes.\(^{189}\)

大德十年春正月戊午，罷江南白雲宗都僧錄司，汰其民歸州縣，僧歸各寺，田悉輸租。

Thus, but the end of Chengzong’s reign, the dual offices of the White Cloud sect were both abolished. The sect lost its administrative support, but still kept growing.

\(^{187}\) “Jiaxing lu ruxue guifu tianzu ji” 嘉興路儒學歸附田租記, 大德八年 1304. Liangzhe jinshi zhi 兩浙金石志 j.14 87-90; Chikusa 竺沙雅章, Sō Gen Bukkyō bunkashi kenkyū 宋代佛教社會史研究 305.

\(^{188}\) Chikusa, Sō Gen Bukkyō bunkashi kenkyū , 305.

\(^{189}\) YS j.21 467.
Wuzong’s 武宗 reign (1307-1311)

During Emperor Wuzong’s reign, there were an reestablishment but soon abolishment of the White Cloud sect Overseer Office. As mentioned in the previous section of Emperor Chengzong’s reign, two religious bureaus related to the White Cloud sect were removed in 1303 and 1306 respectively. Also, the White Cloud sect suffered from persecution. Their members were sent back to common household registration, and the sect no more had the right to issue monastic certificate for individuals. There were not too many White Cloud sect registered monks existed at that time.

Emperor Wuzong was known for spending enormous amount of money from the Imperial Reserve to award people grant package with honorary titles. It caused significant financial crisis for the central government, which sometimes the income to the Imperial Reserve could not catch the speed of the emperor’s spending due to frequent awards.190 The White Cloud sect Overseer Office was reopened in 1308, but only lasted one year. In 1309, it was closed again.

In the third month of Zhida 1 (1308), dingmao, the White Cloud sect Overseer Office was reestablished. Official second rank, three appointments of officials.191

1308 至大元年三月丁卯，復立白雲宗攝所，秩從二品，設官三員。

In the third month of Zhida 2 (1309), xinmao day, the White Cloud sect Overseer Office was abolished.192

1309 至大二年三月辛卯，罷杭州白雲宗攝所。

190 “封爵太盛，錫賚太隆。” Bi Yuan 畢沅. Xu Zhih tongjian 續資治通鑑. j.197.
191 YS j.22:497. It is noteworthy that in the fifth month of 1308, the White Lotus sect was banned.
192 YS j.23:510 following this edict, there was another edict to open the Dhuta sect’s Monk Registry Bureau in Huguang province 立湖廣頭陀禪錄司.
The 1308 order was the only record of the official rank of the White Cloud Overseer Office. 從二品 Rank 2 Lower Class was really high in the officialdom of the Yuan Empire. Xuanzheng yuan was Rank 1 Lower Class 從一品, and Xing Xuanzheng yuan was Rank 2 Lower Class. 193 Official rank of Shijiao zongtongsuo was unknown, but from two Supervisors’ rank we know that it would be around Rank 2 and Rank 3. 194 Also there was another law in 1308 that advancing Rank (higher than Rank 4) to one more rank. 195 So the White Cloud Overseer Office could be Rank 3 Lower Class in previous period when the office existed. But this advancement applied to all offices, in any case, the White Cloud sect and its three appointed officials at the Overseer Office enjoyed high official rank as equal as Xing Xuanzheng yuan, or even higher than Shijiao zongtongsuo. Therefore, the White Cloud sect was directly responsible to the court and Xuanzheng yuan, with no restraints from local bureaus of both civil and religious affairs. In fact, in the earlier example of Khubilai’s reign, the Supervisor Yang Lianzhenjia of Jianghuai/Jiangzhe Shijiao zongtongsuo was so powerful and abusive in Hangzhou, but had not bothered the White Cloud sect at all. It was actually the officials at the White Cloud sect Overseer Office, their rank were higher than Yang’s.

193 Zhicheng Jinling xinzhi 至正金陵新志, j. 6 “Guanshou zhi” 官守志.
194 Kitai Sari 乞臺薩裡/乞臺薩裡 Rank 3 Upper Class 正三品 (later promoted to Rank 2 Upper Class 正二品) YS j.130:3174, “Chici Qitai sali shendao bei” 敕賜乞臺薩裡神道碑, Fozu lidai tongzai 佛祖歷代通載 j.22; Rin-chen-grags-shis / Rin-chen-bkra-shis 輔真術納思/輔真吃剌失思 Rank 3 Lower Class 従三品 YS juan. 17: 360.
Renzong’s 仁宗 reign (1311-1320)

Emperor Renzong’s ten year reign marked the most developed period of the White Cloud sect, accompanied with dramatic policy changes and institutional reorganizations. At first, in 1311, the emperor banned all regional and local offices of religious affairs. Only the central office Xuanzheng yuan remained. The White Cloud sect Buddhist Registrar Office was in particular removed. Then in 1315, the sect leader Shen Mingren 沈明仁, received honorary titles and great awards from the emperor. This was the peak time that the White Cloud sect enjoyed imperial patronage. But by the end of this period from 1316 to 1320, Shen was persecuted for his misconducts of farmland collection and monastic certificate sale. Some scholars treat year 1320 as the dooming point of the White Cloud movement. However, evidence from various sources, including Buddhist canons and stone inscriptions, all suggest that the sect did not die out during this period but continued its development. Shen Mingren himself also survived after the persecution directly ordered from the emperor.

Kitamura Takashi 北村高 suggested that, in contrary to the persecution in the Dadu period (1297-1307, persecution 1303-1306) which were mainly due to economic reason, the series of punishment in the Yanyou period (1314-1320, persecutions 1316-1320) were due to both economic and religious reasons. However, I claim that the second persecution was also due to economic and political concerns. Both the edict in 1311 and the persecutions from 1316 to 1320, were because Shen and his followers annexed farmlands, recruited monks, as well as bribed officials and court servants for

---

196 Kitamura Takashi 北村高 447.
official posts. Shen’s behaviors were not illegal or against the state will, when they were conducted. It was the economic loss and local disorder that caught the attention of the state. Though the White Cloud sect were accused of disturbing social orders, committing crimes and violating local governments, we can see their unchanging main interests were benefits from local resources including farmland and selling of monastic certificates and Buddhist canons. Here we shall think about these questions: What was the real influence of the White Cloud sect on local society? The award and persecution of the White Cloud sect during Emperor Renzong’s reign was due to the White Cloud sect’s leader Shen Mingren, or the group as a whole? Was the White Cloud sect specially treated by the court, or same as other religious sects?

In the first month of Zhida 4 (1311), Emperor Wuzong passed away. The successor Renzong was an enthusiastic patron of many religions, including Confucianism, Buddhism, Daoism, similar to previous Mongol rulers. But he had series of policy changes soon following his enthronement that banned most bureaus of religious affairs, whether they were led by Buddhist monks or civil officials. Here the White Cloud sect was punished, but its offices remained.

In the second month, jiazi day, the Regional Bureau of Transmission and the Regional Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs in the Jiangnan region were abolished. In jiazi day, an official at the Imperial Censorate reported, “the White Cloud sect General Overseer Office governs the hairy monks in Jiangnan. They do not support their parents, avoid duties and harm people. (I) plea to recall their awarded imperial decrees and silver seals, and return the sect members back to commoner registration.” Approved.

---

197 YS 24:537.
198 YS 24:538 same entry see, Fozu tongji 佛祖統紀 j.48:436-1, Overmyer 638 English translation, but the date was mistaken as 延祐六年 (1319) rather than 至大四年 (1311).
In the second month, dingmao day, abolish (all) Supervision Office for Buddhist Teachings, and all Buddhist Registrar Bureau, Buddhist Rectifier Bureau, and Buddhist Superior Bureau everywhere. As for monks on trail, transfer the case to relevant officials.\textsuperscript{199}

Also in the second month, in the legal document compilation \textit{Yuandianzhang}, an imperial decree from the heir apparent prince (Yingzong, Shidebala) was recorded.

\textbf{Abolish monastic bureaus and offices}

In the () month of Zhida 4 (1311), Fujian Pacification Commission received an official document from Jiangzhe province. Central Secretariat reported it.

In the second month of Zhida 4 (1311), the twenty-seventh day, received an imperial decree from the heir apparent prince saying, “Except Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs and Commission of Merit and Virtue, other Supervision Offices and bureaus that controlled Buddhist monks all to be abolished. Seals they have received, to be destroyed. Also, in every route, town, prefecture and county, all Buddhist monks’ offices including Buddhist Registrar Bureau, Buddhist Rectifier Bureau and Buddhist Superior Bureau, to be abolished. To confiscate and destroy their seals. If they have any dispute of management, leave the case for local office to judge.” This is so, end of the decree. In his honor.\textsuperscript{200}

\textsuperscript{199} YS 24:539

\textsuperscript{200} Yuandianzhang 元典章 j.6:33.
In the fourth month, the White Cloud sect’s offices were officially abolished, along with the offices of other religious groups.

In the summer fourth month of Zhida 4 (1311), *dingmao* day, abolish all offices of Buddhists, Daoists, Christians, Muslims, Dhūta sect’s and the White Cloud sect’s. 201

The imperial decree abolished religious offices (except central ones), but still confirm the waiver of duties for religious clergy. The decree reads as,

Abolish offices of Buddhists and Daoists, and waive their duties

In the fourth month of Zhida 4 (1311), received the imperial decree: Buddhist, Daoist, Christian, Muslim, do not serve duties. They communicate with heaven, and bless our life. It is said so. Buddhist, Daoist, Christian, Muslim, White Cloud sect, and Dhūta religion, they often rely on their bureaus, and harass other people. People said so, and it is true. Because of this, except two bureaus which controlled Buddhist monks including the Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs and Commission of Merit and Virtue, all other bureaus, including those controlled Buddhist, Daoist, Christian, Muslim, White Cloud sect and Dhūta religion, in every route, prefecture, subprefecture and counties to be abolished, and their seals to be confiscated. If there is any case of dispute, ask civil officials to judge it according to laws. Since this imperial decree, Buddhist, Daoist, Christian and Muslim who did not have to serve duties, still do not have to serve. Civil official do not ask these clergy to serve as heads of towns and counties. Do not abuse power. This decree orders so, those who violate it will be charged crime. These Buddhist, Daoist, Christian, Muslim and others, learn about this decree, but still not practice religion according to their teachings, and conduct activities which do not match their religious principles. Do they feel ashamed or afraid? 202

革僧道衙門免差發（33/1a）

至大四年四月，欽奉聖旨：
“和尚、先生、也里可溫、荅失蠻，不教當差發，告天，咱每根底祝壽者。”道來。和尚、先生、也里可溫、荅失蠻、白雲宗、頭陀教每根底，“多立着衙門的上頭，好生搔擾他每”麼道，說有。為那般上頭，

201 YS 24:542
202 Yuandianzhang j.6:33. Wonhee Cho, 71.
除這裏管和尚的宣政院、功德使司兩個衙門外，管和尚、先生、也里可溫、荅失蠻、白雲宗、頭陀教等，各處路府州縣裏有的他每的衙門，都教革罷了，拘收了印信者。歸斷的勾當有呵，管民官依體例歸斷者。

今後依着聖旨體例，和尚、先生、也里可溫、荅失蠻在前不曾交當的差發，休交當者。管民官休教他每當里正、主首者。休倚氣力者。這般宣諭了呵，別的人有罪過者。這和尚、先生、也里可溫、荅失蠻等，倚著“這般宣諭了也”麼道，不依自己教門行，做無體例勾當呵，不羞、不怕那甚麼？

According to Yuandianzhang, this decree also affected Confucians. As there was a dispute case of Confucians reported by relevant officials, the emperor repeated the decree to the Ministry of Justice.

Confucian dispute case interrogated by relevant officials
(Imperial order) given to the advice from Ministry

“According to the imperial decree issued on the twenty-sixth day of the fourth month of Zhida 4 (1311), ‘All bureaus that took charge of Buddhist, Daoist, Christian, Muslim, White Cloud sect, and Dhūta religion, in every route, prefecture, subprefecture and county, to be abolished, and their seals to be confiscated. If there is any case of dispute, ask civil officials to judge it according to laws.’ End”

儒人詞訟有司問（53/7b）
送據刑部呈：‘照得至大四年四月二十六日欽奉聖旨節該：‘管和尚、先生、也里可溫、荅失蠻、白雲宗、頭陀教等各處路府州縣裏有的他每的衙門，都教革罷了，拘收了印信者。歸斷的勾當有呵，管民官依體例歸斷者。’欽此。’

This new policy shows the overall shift in the way that the Yuan state dealt with religion. It is not a specific persecution of the White Cloud sect as some of the previous abolitions were. This change of the Yuan religious policy is due to the Yuan emperor’s concerns about the expanding authority and wealth of religion in general, not only Buddhism. Emperor Renzong’s punishment on religious groups and abolishment of clergy bureaus are related to his series of reforms, which were initiated by his will of rule.

203 Yuandianzhang j.6:33.
the empire by Confucian ethics 以儒治國. He tried to clear up corruption in the court, cut off redundant officials in the system, made new laws (eventually completed in 1323, published as Dayuan tongzhi 大元通制 by Yingzong), and most importantly resumed the civil examination system 科舉考試. In 1314, he started a reform for farmlands known as “Management of the Yanyou period” 延祐經理. It included a census of farmland in three provinces: Henan, Jiangxi, and Jiangzhe, where had most farmland dispute but also were leading agricultural areas in the empire. However, because of the corruption of the officials and their connections with rich farmland owners, many farmland owned by powerful families were not registered, but farmland of lower class families and poor peasants were added much more acres. Therefore, those who had no relations with the corrupted officials, had to pay much higher land taxes and granary submissions, based on the higher amount of land size reported by the census officials. This land reform ended with failure in 1315, and a two month rebellion by Cai Jiuwu 蔡九五 in Ganzhou 贛州 of Jiangxi. In Jiangzhe province, it also caused the rich richer, and the poor poorer, in terms of farmland ownership. The powerful White Cloud sect must had used this opportunity to take more farmland, and make connections with local officials for mutual benefits. The sect’s economic status rejuvenated again, and drew the emperor’s attention for another revival.

Since 1312, although the bureaus overseeing the White Cloud sect were abolished and clergy were returned back to commoner registration, the sect kept growing in the local society. From Huangqing 皇慶 1 (1312) to Yanyou 延祐 1 (1314), a former White Cloud sect monk Zhengming 前白雲宗僧正明, along with a former Buddhist Controller
Henghui 前釋教提控僧亨會 (might also be a former WC monk), assisted local magistrates of Huzhou to renovate a Daoist temple – the Traveling Palace of the East Peak Emperor 東嶽行宮 and build a huge temple compound including total of 49 buildings.²⁰⁴ The two former monks organized resource collection, fundraising, and managing contractors. Their skilled and efficient works of local construction projects and close connections with local officials lasted no matter of the ban of the sect offices by the central government. On the other hand, the central government still interacted with the White Cloud sect leader Shen Mingren 沈明仁, and approved his request to print more copies of the Puning canon for the court.²⁰⁵

While the sect’s active members kept involved in local projects, the sect’s lay leadership lineage remained. In the tenth month of 1315, the so-called White Cloud sect master 白雲宗主 Shen Mingren 沈明仁 was awarded two honorary titles Grand Master for Glorious Happiness 榮祿大夫 and Minister of Works 司空.²⁰⁶ This direct award from the emperor was the second time in the history of the sect, the first time was from Khubilai on Dao’an to make the sect official. The personal connection between the Yuan emperor and the White Cloud sect leader promised the further development of the sect, as well as its prominent position in both local society and the religious world. Shen Mingren was a native of Huzhou. The character Ming 明 belongs to the eleventh generation of the lineage of the sect chief abbot. As for the spatial distribution, the center of the sect development still concentrated in market towns of Huzhou, in the south plain of Lake Tai.

²⁰⁴ Meng Chun 孟淳 and Zhao Mengfu 趙孟頫, “Changxingzhou xiujian Dongyue xinggong ji” 長興州修建東嶽行宮記, Liangzhe jinshi zhi 兩浙金石志.
²⁰⁵ See the quote in the beginning of Chapter 3, which will be discussed in detail in Chapter 3.
²⁰⁶ YS j.25:571.
Huzhou area had been home to the Yuan White Cloud sect leaders, from Dao’an to Shen Mingren.

Nonetheless, the third and last ban of the White Cloud sect followed the personal award of Shen Mingren soon after. In 1316, monks of the White Cloud sect were accused of manipulating officials and cheated on getting honorary titles, abused power for illegal activities, and without official permission ordained more than 4,800 vagabonds/vagrants to Buddhist monks. “白雲宗僧使權貴冒名爵，恣橫不法，擅剃度遊民四千八百餘人。” The investigator for this case was Yu Jiusi 于九思, the Judicial Secretary 理問官 of Jiangzhe province.\(^\text{207}\) (In the following year 1317, in the fifth month, Gao Fang 高昉, one of the chief investigators of the White Cloud case in 1303, was appointed to a high official position as the Left Grand Councilor 左丞相 of the Central Secretariat.) In the sixth month of 1317, the seal of Shen Mingren’s granted honorary title Minister of Works 司空 was confiscated, and no need to transfer his case to relevant officials (for investigation). “六月，癸亥，禁總攝沈明仁所佩司空印 毋移文有司。’\(^\text{208}\) “No need for investigation,” Shen Mingren probably got protected by someone and pardoned.

In 1319, the formal persecution against Shen Mingren came.

In the tenth month of Yanyou 6 (1319), in yimao day, officials at Central Secretariat said, “The General Supervisor of the White Cloud sect, Shen Mingren, took people’s farmland 20,000 qing, lured 100,000 members, secretly bribed court servants, awarded titles and official posts without permission. Now (we) already pursued the loss according to the imperial edict, dismissed its members, and returned people their lost farmland. It is better to investigate all their illegal affairs.” In reply, the emperor issued

\(^{207}\) “Yuan gu Zhongfeng dafu Hunan dao xuanweisi Yugong xingzhuang” 元故中奉大夫湖南道宣慰司于公行狀, Huang Jin, *Jinhua Huang xiansheng wenji* 金華黃先生文集, j.23.

\(^{208}\) YS j.26: 579
an imperial decree saying, “I know about Shen Mingren’s wickedness and evilness, so harshly interrogate him!”

延祐六年十月，乙卯，中書省臣言：「白雲宗總攝沈明仁，強奪民田二萬頃，誑誘愚俗十萬人，私賂近侍，妄受名爵，已奉旨追奪，請汰其徒，還所奪民田。其諸不法事，宜令覈問。」有旨：「朕知沈明仁姦惡，其嚴鞫之。」

We have no record about what specific punishment that Shen Mingren received from this imperial decree. But this court memorial by officials of Central Secretariat shows details of the misdeeds conducted by the White Cloud sect leader. Shen Mingren took tremendous numbers of farmland from commoners in the Jiangnan region, and recruited approximately 100,000 members. Comparing to a previous investigation on Yang Lianzhenjia 楊璉真伽 in 1291, who was the Supervisor of Jianghuai/Jiangze shijiao zongtongsuo, he had protected 23,000 households to be exempted from tax duties. But we should be aware that huge amount of population were attached to the White Cloud sect, who were more likely volunteered based on registration privileges rather than forced by the sect leaders. Till then the White Cloud sect was indeed a landowner enterprise with all lay members – so-called “hairy monks.” They held farmlands, ran their business as normal, lived in secular life, and avoid taxes, corvée and other duties, and only under the name as “Buddhist.”

There was a Yuan source that compared Shen Mingren with Yang Lianzhenjia, and also made connection of Shen Mingren’s White Cloud sect with “people of the way.”

Powerful Monk Lure Commoners
The powerful monk Sect Supervisor Shen of Huzhou, succeeded the legacy of Commander Yang, set up a religion to lure commoners, and

---

209 YS j.26:591-2, same entry see, Fozu tongji 佛祖統紀 j.48:436-1, but the date was mistaken as 1320 延祐七年 rather than 延祐六年 1319.
called it the White Cloud sect. People who were admitted into the religion could avoid tax and corvée duties. Monks of their monasteries required each attached farmland to submit 3 sheng of rice per mu as “donation,” and called it the “granary for people’s share.” The sect’s foolish followers also practiced this religion. They all wore turbans looking like bird’s beak, and called themselves “people of the way.” In the syzygy day, they had crowd assembly with a hundred and fifty people. After Shen was persecuted, their grains and farmland registration were all confiscated and later transferred to Shou’an Mountain Monastery (in Dadu). When the government investigated the case again, these registered farmland’s owner did not actually own a land but only a listed number. When the government pursued them for taxes, there were people who had no choice but selling their wives and children, and some of the “owners” committed suicide. Monastic registered farmland not only charged rent (in the form of rice submission), but also added “donation” requirement. Therefore, this disaster lasts till today, and affected those who had to serve normal tax and corvée duties in these towns.  

This entry mainly focused on the farmland issue of the sect, and did not mention its Buddhist canon printing business. The tone of this negative narrative was similar to the 1303 proposal of Zheng Jiefu that quoted in the beginning of the chapter. It highlighted the disaster that the sect left on the local society, that poor peasants were not able to afford rent for the monastic farmlands, and the monasteries owned more farmlands and kept making profits. The White Cloud sect was well organized under Shen Mingren’s leadership. They connected towns and villages, and were very powerful in

---

211 Kong Qi孔齊, “Haoseng youzhong”豪僧誘眾, Zhizheng zhiji至正直記, j.3; Ding Guofan 180, he argues that 1. Shen zongshe is Shen Mingren; 2. Shou’an Mountain Monastery壽安山寺 matchese YS record (YS j.34:767). Shou’an Mountain Monastery is also called Shifang Pujue Monastery十方普覺寺, in suburban Beijing, was constructed from Yanyou 7延祐七年 (1320) to Zhishun 2至順二年 (1331), Xu Huili許惠利, 1987.
terms of members’ population and the amount of farmlands they owned. The White Cloud sect as a farmland enterprise, had service of accepting, registering, lending and management farmlands. So the sect more like a farmland bank. For the people who registered their names under the sect, they have to pay 3 sheng of rice as rent for each mu of their farmland attached to the monastery, called the “grain for people’s share” danzhongliang 贍眾糧. On the other hand, the sect also registered some members who did not actually have their own farmland and charged them rents. This problem emerged as the persecution against Shen Mingren discovered. After the sect properties and farmlands were confiscated, for the “farmland” (only listed) which were returned back to commoners, the government tried to charge taxes for these farmlands, but found out the registered numbers were fake and these people did not actually own land. But they still had to pay taxes, so the government persecution caused second wave of devastating local commoners after the White Cloud sect’s first wave of rip off local famers. 212 In general, the White Cloud sect had two sides in terms of farmland issues. For positive side, they registered famers and their farmlands so they could avoid tax and corvée duties. For negative side, they robbed farmland for their monastic property, and registered people’s farmland or list farmland under people’s name against their will to charge rents.

As for the monastic landownership, Buddhist monasteries in the Yuan period, held great amount of farmland and threatened the authority of local government. 213

---

212 Here I use “rent” for private institution such as the White Cloud sect, and “tax” for public government.
213 Farmland categories in the Yuan, includes guantian 官田, citian 賜田, zhitian 職田, and xuetian 学田. More issues on the farmland and monasteries in the Yuan, see Li Gan 李干 and Zhou Shezheng 周社征, “Yuandai siyuan jingji chutan” 元代寺院經濟初探, Sixiang zhanxian 思想戰線, 1986, 5; Zhai Guoqiang 翟國強, “Yuandai Jiangnan sitian de zudian guanxi” 元代江南寺田的租佃關係, Neimenggu daxue xuebao 內蒙古大學學報 1989.1; Cao Luning 曹旅寧, “Yuandai de sichan guanying wenti” 元代的寺產官營問題,
Monasteries took farmlands and forest hills as their permanent properties. Since hills are hard to count, we can find cases for ratio of monastic owned farmland in one county. In Changguo subprefecture 昌國州 (Dinghai county 定海縣, Zhejiang), in the Dade period (1297-1307) there were total of 2,900 qing of farmlands, within it 1,000 qing were owned by monasteries, almost one third of all farmlands in the county.\(^{214}\) A monastery’s farmland did not necessary have to be close to the temple. As the previous quote mentioned, the White Cloud sect’s farmlands, mostly in Western Zhejiang, were transferred to Shou’an Mountain Monastery in Dadu. Monasteries’ farmlands were from three components: imperial award, annexation (robbery of commoners’ farmland), and registered farmland of lay commoners. For the first component – imperial grant, an emperor once could award a monastery over 100,000 qing of farmland.\(^{215}\) For the second component – annexation, this was especially the issue in the Jiangnan region. As the richest and most agriculturally developed region, Buddhist monasteries took many farmlands from common households. This empire-wide phenomena of monastery annexing commoners’ farmland in the mid and late Yuan period was very similar to the situation in the mid and late period in Xi Xia kingdom. For the third component – registration and lending, these lay commoners hoped to escape taxes so they registered their farms under monastic name. They could do so either through personal relations with or bribed monks, or had one member of his family registered as monk so the whole

---

\(^{214}\) Feng Fujing 馮福京, Dade Changguozhou tuzhi 大德昌國州圖志.
\(^{215}\) “Yuanzhi shehui ge jiceng he jingji gaikuang” 元之社會各階層和經濟概況, Zhongguo tongshi 中國通史.
family’s farmland and property could be made under this monk’s name. So many farm owners registered themselves as monks.

As for the case of the White Cloud sect’s landownership, since it was not an orthodox Buddhist school and had no rituals, no vows and no obligations, also it was already mostly based on lay population, it was much convenient to registered there than other monastic Buddhist schools such as the Chan school. Another option, rather than the landowner or his family member registered as a monk, he could donate the farmland to the monastery and then lend it to work as a tenant farmer 佃戶. He acted as a contractor but was still the real owner of the farmland. This way he became the employee of the monastery, so he could not only get the farmland tax free, and get himself free from corvée duty. Therefore, for all these tricks, the White Cloud sect could use its privilege to sell monastic registration, and made wide connections with local powerful families.

Last but not least, the direct reason of the government persecution on the White Cloud sect was not only based on their misdeeds of farmlands, but the interest conflict of farmlands in the Jiangnan region. For this part of the Empire’s most important granary region, there were highest amount of official owned farmlands 官田 comparing to other parts of the Empire. The Yuan state had established a bureau called Supreme Supervisorate-in-chief for Revenues 江淮等處財賦都總管府 and its several Supervisorates 提舉司.216 One of their functions was to charge harvest taxes and interests from the official owned farmlands, and allocated them as the main food revenue sources

---

216 Supreme Supervisorate-in-chief for Revenues 江淮等處財賦都總管府, Hucker #6828.
of the Yuan state. The White Cloud sect’s activities and interested might have contradicted with those of the bureau’s.

In the following year 1320, Shen Chongsheng 沈崇勝, a disciple of Shen Mingren (might also be his relative since they shared the same family name Shen) went to the capital secretly (according to an order from Shen, apparently he returned back to Jiangnan without harsh punishment), tried to save the sect by bribing the officials. The plot was reported to the emperor by Left Grand Councilor of Jiangzhe province (Branch Secretariat) 江浙行省左丞相 Qeliu 黑驢 (or, 哈律, 赫嚕). Qeliu was Mongolian. This was the first time a case about the White Cloud sect was initiated or reported by a non-Chinese official. This suggests the looser connection between the White Cloud sect’s Chinese lay activists and non-Chinese officials. The court memorial was submitted just about ten days before the emperor’s death. Whether this was related to any court conflict or high level power struggle is unknown. The court memorial was heard and approved by the emperor, and the disciple was arrested.

In the spring first month of Yanyou 7 (1320), in xinmao day, the Grand Councilor of Jiangzhe province Qeliu reported, “the monk of the White Cloud sect, Shen Mingren, illegally ordained over 4,800 monks, received cash over 40,000 ding, was already investigated and convicted. Now he dispatched his disciple Shen Chongsheng secretly come to the capital to bribe and look for help. (I) plea to arrest him and send him back to Jiangzhe province for punishment too.” Approved...... In dinghai day, the emperor fell sick. In Xingchou day, the emperor passed away at Guangtian Hall, aged 36, and in throne 10 years.

延祐七年春正月，辛卯，江浙行省丞相黑驢言：「白雲僧沈明仁，擅度僧四千八百餘人，獲鈔四萬餘錠，既已辭伏，今遣其徒沈崇勝潜赴

217 Yuanren zhuanji ziliao suoyin 元人傳記資料索引, 2549.
218 YS j.26:593, Renzong - Ayurbarwada (1285-1320).
Here we notice that one of Shen Mingren’s crimes was to ordain or register monks, in fact sell monastic certificate to commoners, for his own interest of cash income. This again proves the White Cloud sect’s business of making profits from monastic registration of commoners.

As will be discussed further in later chapters, during Renzong’s reign, the White Cloud sect under Shen Mingren, still continue Buddhist Sūtra printing business. Both Chinese and Tangut Buddhist texts, along with additional esoteric texts were printed under the sponsorship of many clergy officials and local lay people. It will be discussed in Chapter 3.

**Yingzong’s 英宗 reign (1320-1323)**

After Renzong’s death in the first month of Yanyou 7 (1320), the successor Yingzong had started a series of new policies that many of them were against those of the Renzong’s. However, the official persecution on Shen Mingren and the White Cloud sect continued.

In the second month of Yanyou 7 (1320), renzi day, appoint Qeliu - Left Grand Councilor of Jiangzhe province as Manager of Governmental Affairs at Central Secretariat.

dingsi day, Supervisor of the White Cloud sect Shen Mingren charged for his crimes, and an imperial edict ordering that people who were registered as monk in the White Cloud sect to return back to commoner status in the Jiangnan region.\(^2\)

\(^2\)YS j.27:616
延祐七年二月壬子，以江浙行省左丞相黑驢為中書平章政事。
丁巳，白雲宗(總)攝沈明仁為不法坐罪，詔籍江南冒為白雲僧者為民。

In the same month, a court purge was initiated by Temuder 鐵木迭兒. Under Yingzong’s approval, four high level officials Yang Duo’erzhi (Yang Dorji) 楊朵兒只, monk Rin-chen-grags-shis 輶真吃剌思, Xiao Baiju 蕭拜住, and He Sheng 賀勝 were killed.220

Yang Dorji was of Tangut descend. He had served office in the Jiangnan region, and was a patron of the Buddhist canons printed by the White Cloud sect.221 His downfall along with monk Rin-chen-grags-shis 輶真吃剌思 also marked the decline of the Tangut and Tibetan monks in the imperial court, who were key patrons of the White Cloud sect.

In Yingzong’s short reign, the problem of monastery taking farmlands, and their disputes with local people continued too. There were two legal cases of Shen Mingren had disputed with local people on farmland ownership. In the first case, Shen got protected from Grand Empress Dowager 太皇太后 Tagi 答己 (?-1322), and escaped punishment. Shen Mingren had not been punished severely for several times since Emperor Wuzong’s reign, but still grew power and control in the local society. He had for sure close connections with the court and even imperial family members. Therefore, we see that the Grand Empress Dowager personally intervened the investigation against Shen. This is the only record that a member of the imperial family protected the White Cloud sect. Also, this is the only record mentioning Shen Mingren’s canon printing (and block carving) business within his farmland dispute charges, though here carving blocks were

220 YS j.27:599; Yang Dorji and Rin-chen-grags-shis were also patrons of the White Cloud sect’s Puning canon, as discussed in Chapter 3.
listed together with tonsuring monks (and registering monks) both seem quite negative deeds.

In the first tenth day of the seventh month of Zhizhi 1 (1321), Central Secretariat reported, “As for the matters related to tonsuring monks and carving (print) blocks by Shen Mingren, should be took care of by Ministry of Justice. For the case of farmland dispute against Shen Mingren sued by thirty-three people including Zhang Shifu, should be sent to Hangzhou route to manage.” Respectfully received an imperial decree from Grand Empress Dowager: “do not investigate, and give (investigators) travel expenses to return back to the capital. This was the report, please act accordingly.”

至治九年（ correction: 至治元年）七月初十日，中書省咨：“為沈明仁剃僧雕版事，該刑部照得。沈明仁為章士服等三十三狀告争田，發付杭州路羁管。”敬奉皇后（ correction: 太皇太后）懿旨：休問，給駿赴都。此咨，請敬依施行。

The second record on Shen Mingren’s farmland dispute case, gave information about his final destiny that exiled to Hainan island. The story was quite dramatic, and was included in a memorial record of political achievements 政績記 (a form of literature) of a official Song Wenzan 宋文瓚 in Western Zhejiang. Song served as Registrar of Surveillance Commission in Zhexi (Western Zhejiang) Route 浙西道肅政廉訪司經歷 in the Zhizhi 至治 period – Yingzong’s reign (1321-1323). He was known as good at dealing with farmland disputes in Western Zhejiang, which were involved with court officials. For example, another case of in his memorial record, on Wu Jisun 吳機孫, involved highest level court officials Tegsi 鐵失, Temuder 鐵木迭兒, Liu Kui 刘夔, and Bargis 八里吉思 (the former two were in fact key players in the assassination of Yingzong in 1323). These officials all had interests in farmlands in Western Zhejiang, so

222 Xingtong fushu 刑統賦梳, j.3. Ding Guofan, 179, he claims that Zhizhi 9 至治九年 (1329) should be Zhizhi 1 至治元年 (1321), “敬奉皇后” should be “敬奉太皇太后.”
we could imagine that the White Cloud sect’s farmland issues were not just regional, but affected state politics as well.

When sir (Song Wenzan) served as the Registrar in Western Zhejiang, once he met a staff led a prisoner, and the prisoner bowed down and claimed innocence while he saw sir. Sir stopped his horse and asked the prisoner. The prisoner said, “I am a farmer in Huzhou, name is Yang Xin, for generations we are farmers. One day there was a government official came and said he was from Eastern Zhejiang, and arrested me for theft. So I was in prison without knowing the reason.” Sir asked this official to show his governmental license and suspected that it was fake. Sir ordered relevant office to interrogate him. (As sir expected,) the license was indeed fake and the truth of this case emerged. Sir said, “there must be a reason,” so he ordered further interrogation. Therefore (sir) got the story: the powerful monk Shen Mingren had dispute on farmland with Yang Xin, so he plotted to arrest Xin by a fake governmental order of death penalty and wished to kill him. Exile the monk to Hainan.

Beside the above case that Shen Mingren committed crimes. There were other two recorded legal cases, showing that Shen committed crimes and created unjust cases.

They were recorded in the epitaph of Xu Taiheng, a local official in Gui’an county in Zhejiang. He was a native of Yuhang in Hangzhou, where the White Cloud sect’s headquarter Puning monastery located. Xu was also active in granary and tributes’ water transportation from Zhejiang to the capital.

Xu Taiheng, style name Hefu. His ancestors were from Longyou of Quzhou, and later they moved to Yuhang (of Hangzhou). Tai was prudent and smart. When he became Juren, he interned as a clerk at Pingjiang

---

223 Liu Ji 劉基, “Qian Lianghuai duzhuanyunyanshi Songgong zhengji ji” 前兩淮都轉運鹽使宋公政績記, Chengyibo wenji 誠意伯文集, j.8: 56-62.
subprefecture. When he completed the service there, he was appointed as clerk at Gui’an county.

(case 1) Shen Mingren of the White Cloud sect, acted in the name of the government, and officials were afraid of him. Shen had two opponents, their neighbor’s daughter was killed. Shen created words to accuse them, and to make them “confess” crimes. Taiheng tried to claim their innocence, but the prison staff said, “this is the will of Mr. Shen, we do not dare to disobey.” Taiheng responded, “I can die, but cannot kill the innocents in order to please others.” The staff then released them.

(case 2) One of Mingren’s (monk) disciples had relationship with a common lady, and was beaten by her husband. At that time, there was a robber committed murder. The monk sent secret report, to accuse the husband along with his other opponents total of seven people. The government arrested them, and the prison staffs tortured them. They all “confessed.” Taiheng ordered staffs to take off their torture instruments, so they started crying and telling the story. County magistrate suspected the case, and interrogated them. When Taiheng arrived, he learned that these seven people claimed that their allegedly “stolen goods” (confiscated by the government) were actually their properties. The staffs took several pi of the remaining textiles from their homes, and compared the lens (with those textiles of the “stolen goods”), no one were not matched. Also, their kitchenware and other stuffs all matched. The monk then confessed his crimes. Afterwards the government captured the real robber in Wukang. All people were amazed and acknowledged (Taiheng’s judgement).

徐泰亨，字和甫，其先衢州龍遊人，後徙余杭。泰亨性警敏，用舉者試平江州掾。歲滿，署歸安縣典史。

(case 1) 白雲宗沈明仁，冒名爵，官吏畏之。沈有怨家二人，其鄰女為何人所殺，沈使以他辭引二人，傅致其罪。泰亨欲直其冤，吏白：“此沈公意，孰敢不從!” 泰亨語之曰：“吾能死，不敢以濫殺媚人。”卒出之。

(case 2) 明仁弟子私民婦，為其夫所歐。適有盜殺人，僧為飛書，誣其夫及平日怨家七人，官為捕治之，獄卒凌虐，皆誣服。泰亨命去其械扭，始垂泣自言，縣令以有左驗難之。泰亨親至其地。悉得七人以已物實其贓狀，取其家藏布數匹，析縷以比，無不合者，釜灶及他物又合。僧乃伏罪。已而獲真盜于武康，人皆嘆服。

徐泰亨, 字和甫, 其先衢州龍遊人, 後徙余杭。泰亨性警敏, 用舉者試平江州掾。歲滿, 署歸安縣典史。

(case 1) 白雲宗沈明仁, 冒名爵, 官吏畏之。沈有怨家二人, 其鄰女為何人所殺, 沈使以他辭引二人, 傅致其罪。泰亨欲直其冤, 吏白: “此沈公意, 孰敢不從!” 泰亨語之曰: “吾能死, 不敢以濫殺媚人。” 卒出之。

(case 2) 明仁弟子私民婦, 為其夫所歐。適有盜殺人, 僧為飛書, 誣其夫及平日怨家七人, 官為捕治之, 獄卒凌虐, 皆誣服。泰亨命去其械扭, 始垂泣自言, 縣令以有左驗難之。泰亨親至其地。悉得七人以已物實其贓狀, 取其家藏布數匹, 析縷以比, 無不合者, 釜灶及他物又合。僧乃伏罪。已而獲真盜于武康, 人皆嘆服。白雲宗僧沈某, 冒名爵, 淵官府。有悟其意者兩人, 將置之死地。兩人之冤家私鄰女不得, 殺以滅口, 棄屍桑林中。事覺, 陰使他辭引兩人, 傅致其罪, 君將直其冤, 吏持不可, 曰: “此沈公意, 孰敢拒
也？”君盡立羣吏於前，語之曰：“吾能死，不能濫殺以求媚於人。”會使者行部，君卒白出之。
沈之徒有僧某者，通民家婦，為其夫所毆而銜之。適有遭劫殺者，賊弗得。僧為飛書誣其夫，及有他怨隙者其人，故以書憎遞卒家，七人中或以罪黥，卒得之，曰：“此警跡也”。因捕治不疑。君察其冤，而七人者苦卒虐，莫敢易辭。君命去其杻械，始垂泣自言。令以左驗已具難之。君服幣衣，佯為賣蔔至其處，悉得七人以己物實臟狀。取其家餘絲布數升，析縷以比，無不合；釜竈及他物存者，又合。僧乃伏罪，七人者得直。已而獲真盜於武康，人始歎服焉。

From these two cases, we learn that Shen Mingren and his disciples, were still remain identity as monks that recognized by other people. But the White Cloud sect in 1320s had became a true enterprise that often conduct outlaw activities, in addition to their business of farmland and Buddhist canons. These specific legal cases were the only record of this kind. Comparing to the Song period, that accusation were mainly based on description of group activities, these cases were not only vivid, but also showed the real impact of the White Cloud sect on local people’s daily lives. The Song government were mostly labeling the White Cloud as unlawful lay religious movement due to their prejudice against legitimate range of social and spiritual practices. But we do not see a specific case of local dispute between a White Cloud sect member and other partie. The Yuan records, mainly on Shen Mingren, also shows the structure of the White Cloud sect leadership since Renzong’s reign in 1310s, were lay people for their monetary interest perpetuation. No monastic monks, or Tangut monks were involved. Also, Shijiao zongtongsuo already removed in 1299, and the replaced bureau of Xing Xuanzheng yuan less influential in the Jiangnan local society, comparing to the White Cloud sect. In some sense, the White Cloud sect was known among local officials, as a group of monkish gangs, or Buddhist mafia.
Besides all these negative accounts, there was one entry praising the efficiency of hiring the White Cloud sect for construction works. In the eleventh month of Yanyou 7延祐七年 (1320), an imperial edict was issued to order every county to build a memorial hall for the Imperial Preceptor Phagspa. In Jiaxing嘉興, a local official Gao Ren嘉興路總管府治中高仁 recruited members of the White Cloud for the project there, and said by employing these members it would not cost one dime from the government and one hour labor from local people.列郡方作祠奉帝師，凡庀材用，召匠傭，一出于民力。獨諭浮屠氏之籍白雲宗者，俾任其役。官無一粟之耗，民無半餉之勞，而祠事以備。

As Chikusa Masaaki pointed out, the White Cloud sect was an organization of civil engineering木土工程集團. They conducted collaborative construction projects for local development. But in the Song period they were more active in such construction works, and more spontaneous in doing so. The need for market town expansion and more interests from construction could be the reasons. As for the Yuan period, they did business in other fields for more interests, and not so much in construction. But they still carried out projects based on government orders, as showed in this case. Also, less construction needs for local infrastructure in these market towns of Hang-Jia-Hu Plain could be the reason too.

225 YS j.27.
226 “Jinan Gaoshi xianying bei” 济南高氏先塋碑, Jinhua Huang xiansheng wenji 金華黃先生文集, j.28.
The Late Yuan (1323-1368)

Scholars had often argued that the White Cloud sect died out after the 1330s due to the government persecution, including more effective property confiscation and the sect’s loss of connection with the court. So the sect who was highly relying on official support, lost the government’s motivation and patronage. However, I would argue that the sect maintained active in the local society, based on few literature records, and grotto inscriptions made in years 1328 and 1335. But the sect gradually lose influence in the local society due to various reasons. So the government documents and literati writings hardly mentioned them.

The farmlands of the White Cloud sect were confiscated by Cao Jian, Vice Director of Left and Right Bureaus in Jiangzhe province. By 1323, all White Cloud owned farmlands were confiscated and some of them transferred to be under the registration of the newly renovated Shou’an Mountain Monastery in the outskirts of Dadu. It took few months, and the local powerful families and commoners were not bothered.

However, in 1330, the decision of persecution had been overturned again. A White Cloud monk Shen Mingqi (don’t know his relation with Shen Mingren, might be relatives, they share same surname Shen and generation character Ming), plead to the court to change the ownership of farmlands owned by Shou’an Mountain Monastery and return them back to the White Cloud sect. It was approved by the emperor.

227 YS j.186: 4283 Biography of Cao Jian.
and ordered Central Secretariat to enforce this. 文宗至順元年 1330 九月，至治初
(1321-1323)以白雲宗田給壽安山寺為永業，至是其僧沈明琦以為言，有旨，令中書
省改正之。 228 By that time, the government also gave up the plan to replace clergy
officials by civil officials completely. As mentioned in earlier, from 1331 to 1334, the
government established sixteen Supervision Commissions for Promoting Religion 廣教
總管府 all over the Empire, and appointed monks to take charge of these offices. In the
mean time, Xing Xuanzheng yuan’s office in the Jiangnan region between Yangzhou and
Hangzhou also experienced changes. In any case, Buddhist monks were still very
powerful in the Empire in the 1330s, till the Mongols’ retreat in the 1360s.

The government ban on the White Cloud sect before did not extinct it
immediately. According to Overmyer’s count, the White Cloud sect over fifty
monasteries, retreats, and shrines in northern Zhejiang and southern Jiangsu, from
Hangzhou to Wuxi in the late Yuan dynasty. 229 However, according to Overmyer, the
White Cloud sect lost power and declined during that period from 1330 to 1370, since it
was highly dependent on the government. 230 However, as I argued, the sect was still
active in the region, though less influential and less notable for the government and
literati. They restrained from farmland annexation and monastic registration.

Besides the declined gang aspect of the sect, the religious aspect of the sect
remained in the late Yuan. The sect continued printed copies of the Puning canon, and
carved blocked and printed newly added books in the canon. In Yuantong 2 元統二年

228 YS j.34:767.
229 Overmyer 639; Ogawa Kan’ichi 小川貫弌, “Gendai Byakuun shumon no katsudo jotai” 元代白雲宗門
の活動状態, 16-17.
230 Overmyer 639.
(1334), *Vast Record of the Monk Zhongfeng of Tianmu* 天目中峰和尚廣錄 (a collection of teachings of Zhongfeng Mingben 1263-1323) was added into the canon according to an imperial edict. Its colophon in Yuantong 3 (1335) also records that the abbot of the Puning Monastery at the time was Mingrui 明瑞, who was also granted the title Master *Fozhi miaoyin guangfu* 佛智妙應廣福大師。^{231}

Other new example of their activities are the two inscriptions attached to the sculptures at the “Southern Hill Grotto” 南山石窟 site near the headquarter Puning Monastery。^{232} These two inscriptions are dated to 1328, and 1335 (or 1341), as will be discussed in Chapter 6。^{233}

The last record of the White Cloud sect, was in 1370 in a Ming imperial edict. The Ming founding emperor Zhu Yuanzhang 朱元璋 (1328-1398) banning all profane worships and suspicious sects. This harsh new policy could be attributed to Zhu’s personal experience and concern about religious power, and the social background of religion in late Yuan Chinese society. In particular, the popularization of lay religious

---

^{231} Sun Bojun 孫伯君, “Yuankan Hexi zang kaobu” 元刊西藏考補 2011: 63; *Zhonghua dazangjing* 中華大藏經 No. 78, PP432-3; One extant copy of *Vast Record of the Monk Zhongfeng of Tianmu* can be found at the East Asian Library, UC Berkeley.

^{232} On the Southern Hill *Nanshan* where the sect headquarter Puning monastery and Puning Canon printing studio/workshop located, there were about a dozen of Yuan period sculptures (mostly reliefs) in niches on the cliffs existed today. They were carved by the White Cloud sect members, but never been well studied by contemporary scholarship. Probably due to its location, I have made field trips there, and investigated their spatial distribution, style and period. Though more than 2/3 of the sculptures lost already, this site was similar to Feilai Feng Peak by Lingyin monastery in Hangzhou that had sculptures mainly made in the early Yuan period by Yang Lianzhenjia. These two sites were very rare cases of Yuan period grottos in South China. Though Feilai Feng Peak had many Tibetan-esoteric style sculptures, the Southern Hill contains all Chinese style sculptures including those of Buddhists, Daoists, and popular beliefs. In Appendix 3, I will list all sculptures with images and analyze them in detail.

^{233} Inscription texts according to *Xihu shiku* 西湖石窟 and my field trips. For details, see Appendix 3; there were another version of the second inscription saying Zhiyuan 1 延元年 (1335) should be Zhizheng 1 至正元年 (1341), but it does not affect my argument that the White Cloud sect was active making grottos in the late Yuan period. I will discuss this further in Chapter 6.
activities, spiritual organizations, and overpower of religious institutions especially Buddhist monasteries, became the main concern to make this edict born.

For common people, worship ancestors; in the new year eve, worship kitchen god; in the countryside in spring and autumn, worship gods of earth and grain; once there is a disaster, worship ancestors. If sacrifice ceremony for gods in villages, towns, or commenderies, then local ward, society, commandery, or county self organizes it. Once Buddhists and Daoists set up meals for ritual services, they should not submit memorial, worship (in green words?), and also not allowed to make sculpture or image of heavenly deities. As for the White Lotus society, Manichaeism, the White Cloud sect, Shamanism, planchette writing, cult worship, spelling (amulet or talisman), and consecrating water, all these wizardries, should be banned. Soon after, the sinister way declined, and people had no confusion on spiritual pursuit.  

Overall, I would argue that the doom of the White Cloud sect was due to the Yuan-Ming crisis, warfare and the decline of the Jiangnan region’s economy in general. (The sect’s golden time was from the 1270s to the 1330s. This nearly 60 years period with interruptions in between, is short time period that within living memory for an individuals.) The key turning point was the strict ban of unorthodoxy religious groups and limited allowance on monastic certificate permission by Zhu Yuanzhang. On the other hand, some popular religious groups and secret societies became a big threat for the Mongol regime and became one of the major forces calling for the rebellion against the

---

234 This was submitted by Central Secretary and approved by Zhu Yuanzhang as an imperial edict. Ming shilu: Taizu gaohuangdi shilu 明實錄:太祖高皇帝實錄, j.53:1307-8; This text was also included in Libu zhigao 禮部志稿 in Siku quanshu 四庫全書 j.84:14-15, Taipei: Shangwu yinshuguan, 1983, “不許章奏” replaced by “不許進章.” Chen Xiyuan 陳熙遠, and Qiu Pengsheng 邱澎生, “Mingqing falu yunzuo zhong de quanli yuwenhua” 明清法律運作中的權力與文化 104, More on Zhu Yuanzhang’s religious reform and new policy, see von Glahn, Sinister Way, 200-2.
Mongols in the late Yuan dynasty, such as some White Lotus societies and Han Shantong’s 韓山童 rebel force. Surprisingly, though Shen Mingren and the White Cloud sect committed crimes, gathered crowds and abused power in the Jiangnan region, they never turned into a violent group as other movements in the late Yuan did. Scholarship tends to attribute the reason to the timely ban and persecution of the White Cloud sect by the Mongol emperors in the mid and late Yuan period. However, there were the reasons not only the gradual decline of the White Cloud movement in the late Yuan, but also that the movement was always associated with wealthy and elite landowners in the particular region (Hang-Jia-Hu Plain) who had a vested interest in the status quo. So I would also like to argue that it is due to the White Cloud sect’s characteristic of unmovable (i.e. bond to its land/social class foundation). They were not able to move and unwilling to move to other places, because of their bond with local farmland and properties which they collected and managed. As a local commercial interest driven enterprise, they were not able to spread to other regions, throughout their entire history from the Song to the Yuan. The White Cloud movement was a movement of rich landowners in a small region, and the rank-and-file that they mobilized and/or coerced. I will discuss their local and regional networks through canal waterways and market towns, in Chapter 4. We have to admit that in the late Yuan period, the sect’s both local network and tie with the state weakened. For local network, the reasons were the completion of commercial canon printing and loss of monastic farmlands. For the tie with the state, it was mainly related to the official persecution and loss of imperial and Tangut cleric patronage. There are other series of factors in the Jiangnan region in the late Yuan period that could cause the regional economic situation became worse in general - (such as population decline,
migration and relocation, environmental/ecological changes - wetland reclamation, agricultural produces and seasonal corps change – cotton industry, market town growth halted with a certain stage of urbanization completed?, regional center moved from Hangzhou to Suzhou……). By the end of the Yuan dynasty, during the wartime, the Grand Puning Monastery 大普寧寺 (headquarter of the White Cloud sect) was burned down. It was rebuilt in the early Ming dynasty in 1370, but was not as big as before. In the Ming period, it was just a rural chapel. The Puning Monastery never resume its past glory and regional influence.235

Conclusion

In the Yuan period, the White Cloud sect as a commercial-oriented enterprise had three main business fields. They are: monk registration and ordination, making profits through selling monastic certificates and registering members’ properties under the sect; farmland registration and annexation, making profits through sheltering and managing farmland under the sect monasteries; and Buddhist canon printing and selling.236 The sect also conducted illegal deeds and committed crimes, such as enslaving people, robbery, faking official documents, and making fraud legal cases. The Mongol Yuan government had its dilemma on the policies toward the White Cloud movement, in terms of institutional establishment and legal persecutions. Therefore, the government policy kept changing, in the mid-Yuan period. On the one hand, the sect was a problem same as in

235 Kitamura Takashi 北村高 447. Today the site was in ruin, I can hardly trace its later Ming-Qing period building foundations or any architectural remains. See Yuhang wenwu pucha 餘杭文物普查 vol 2.
236 No record of the sect selling usury.
the Song. They were a gang that ran illegal rackets and kept land off the tax rolls. But on
the other hand, it was a powerful and visible part of local society. The government
placated it helped to keep the local society in order. Moreover, the sect had powerful
court patrons. That’s why the sect was repeatedly banned and reinstated, partly due to its
close connection to court politics.

The White Cloud sect mainly had three relations to deal with. With the court and
the Mongol emperor, they mostly received patronage, and found ways to survive after
persecution. They didn’t have a broad constituency of supporters, just a narrow pathway
of particular patrons at court. (Sect leaders such as Dao’an and Shen Mingren had
personal contact with the Mongol emperor and empress dowager. So there were more
direct intervenes from the imperial family and the central court, whether its protection or
persecution.) With religious bureaus, the sect had their own dual offices, and was not
responsible for all religious offices, even Xuanzheng yuan. The sect was self governed,
and independent from local bureaus of both civil and religious affairs. With local lay
people, the sect kept recruiting members and registering common people as monks. They
also harassed people and took advantage of them. They caused local disorder in the mid
and late Yuan period, especially under the leadership of Shen Mingren. Except these
three key relations, the sect’s relation with other religious group or religious community
such as Chan Buddhists, Daoists, and Muslims, were largely unknown. We only know
about the support of Tangut Buddhist monks for the sect and its Buddhist canon printing
projects.

The White Cloud sect was deeply rooted in the local lay society, same as its
predecessors in the Song. Due to the urgency of restoring social order in the Jiangnan
local society after their conquest, the Mongols designated the sect and established clergy offices to take charge of it. The Mongols sought merit for their newborn Empire, and in the meantime to regulate the lay activities in the region to keep order and revenue. The sect in the Yuan period were not so much involved in civil engineering of construction projects as they did in the Song period. It had created the lineage of its leaders, and the general members were diffused all over the region. Their members were still recognized as “monks” or “hairy monks,” both by the government and local people. But they had no restriction on celibacy, and no cult or deity worship taught in the White Cloud sect. The leaders and their close disciples, were recognized as powerful figures 豪民 or powerful monks 豪僧 by the government. More Yuan official reports, were from central court, departments in the capital, or provincials. There were very few local officials in county and prefecture level dared to report and deal with the White Cloud sect. (As one source – the Xu Taiheng 徐泰亨 case stated, local officials were afraid of Shen Mingren in Gui’an county “官吏畏之”). Most official accusations on the White Cloud sect and its leaders during the persecutions, were on illegal farmland accumulation, mass registration of lay people to Buddhist monastic status (selling monastic title) and other illegal deeds. The government’s focal points were on three key components: farmland and houses 田宅, properties 資產, people 子女. For the first and second concerns, they affected government revenue and challenged state authority in the local society. For the third concern, it affected population and labor source, lineage and family structure, and social

237 There might be a Shen family hereditary leadership in the late period, including Shen Mingren 沈明仁, Shen Mingqi 沈明琦, and Shen Chongsheng 沈崇勝. But there are leaders with different surnames other than Shen, such as Qian Rujing 錢如鏡.
order overall. The deep reason behind individual dispute case and punishment on the White Cloud “monks,” were from the government’s wish to suppress the sect. Except individual violence crimes such as Shen Mingren’s, in most cases government revenue loss and fiscal concerns led to persecution, including the Dade 大德 period persecution (1303-1306) and the Yanyou 延祐 period persecution (1316-20). The Zhida 至大 period persecution (1311) was more close to Emperor Renzong’s temporary new policy to suppress all bureaus of religious affairs in the Empire, so not particularly aiming the White Cloud sect. After the last persecution in 1320, local gentries and powerful families who used to attach their farmlands and properties to the White Cloud sect lost such privileges, and could not enjoy exemption of tax and public service duties anymore.

The White Cloud movement was always an “in between” merging phenomenon: self-identity between religion and popular belief, pursued between business and spiritual interests, weighted between regional development and state revenue, served between secular and clergy officials, survived between Chinese and foreign regimes, had between Chinese and foreign participants, developed between urban and rural areas in market towns and suburban areas. In the Yuan sources, there were less accounts on suspicious religious or mass activities such as “night assembly and dawn disband.” We also rarely came across terms including “eating vegetables and serving devils.” Due to the Neo-Confucian influence, local government in the Song concerned about the teachings and activities of such a movement in accordance with orthodox monastic religion. The Southern Song rulers were unfriendly toward lay religious activities, and concerned more on the sociopolitical stability in the local region and eliminate the potential risk of rebellion, rather than simply focusing on ideology. The Yuan government was more
sophisticated and actively supportive on local religious movements, compared to the Song government. Moreover, various activities of the White Cloud followers show the dynamics of local society and lay people in the Song-Yuan period abidingly.
Figure 1: Puning Monastery and Wanshou Monastery
PART II: Networking through the Buddhist Canon

Chapter 3. Monks and Statesmen

The White Cloud sect director Official Monk (Shen) Mingren received, General Commission of Buddhist Affairs approved. Huangqing 1 (1312), Tenth Moon, Twenty-eighth Day. First day of keshig Baiju.

白雲宗宗主臣僧明仁承奉
都功德使司劄付。
皇慶元年(1312)十月二十八日。
拜住怯薛第一日。

In the Jiaxi Hall, (attendants) were seated face to face and were divided: Sü gü rci (Imperial Guard) Noqai, Kelemuci (Official Interpreter) Borucar, and Associate Goolyinliu. There were those who carried the imperial edict, including Minister of Education and Commissioner of Buddhist Affairs Rin-chen-grags-shis, Commissioner of Buddhist Affairs Zhang Lu, and Vice Commissioner of Buddhist Affairs Aliya Tas. “Bhaiṣajyaguru Rituals and Offering Methods” translated by Shalopa, and Chuxue ji by the White Cloud monk, were delivered through the documents of the Jiangzhe Branch Secretariat. The White Cloud sect was ordered to make blocks and print them to include all of them into the Buddhist canon. The edict says ……

嘉禧殿內。有時分對。速古兒赤那懷怯里馬赤孛羅察兒同知觀音奴等。有來本司官大司徒都功德使菨真吃剌思張都功德使副使阿里牙答思特奉聖旨。沙刺巴譯來的藥師儀軌藥師供養法。更白雲和尚初學記。恁行與省部文書。交江浙省。白雲宗開板印了。呵都交大藏經裏入去者麼。道聖旨了也。……

Huangqing 2 (1313), Fourth Moon, Day.
Monk (Shen Mingren) cautiously written. 238

皇慶二年(1313)四月 日
臣 僧 明仁 謹題

This chapter is about the relationship between the state and the sect, through Buddhist canon printing. The textual mission of the White Cloud sect, which made it

---

238 This is the “vow statement” 發願文 of the White Cloud sect leader Shen Mingren 沈明仁, in the colophon attached to Zhengxing ji 正行集 (Puning canon), thus after “The Huangqing 2 (1313) colophon”
possible to access the legacy of this movement after its disappearance from history, is the Buddhist canon printing project. The White Cloud sect was interested in gaining economic and merit-based benefits, and the main approach to achieve such benefits was through printing and circulating sūtras, (in addition to extorting money and avoiding taxes). It was also the main investment of the Yuan state, which supported the sect. Both printing techniques and markets for selling printed Buddhist sūtras were developed in the previous Song period. In East Asia, the tradition of printed Buddhist texts started around the seventh century in China, and became the more popular and longer lasting form of Buddhist textual reproduction than manuscripts. As Lewis Lancaster said, “once a canon of standard texts had been established and carved, handwritten manuscripts would ultimately become the exception next to printed woodblock editions.”

Printed texts were more authoritative than handwritten ones, and the government-supported ones became the standard of monastic possessed Buddhist classics. From the tenth to the thirteenth centuries before the Mongol conquest, Song, Liao, Jin and Xi Xia Empires all had Buddhist sūtra printing projects and received major sponsorship from the government and imperial families. On the other hand, due to commercialization in developed areas and advancement of printing techniques, commercial print became popular during the Song dynasty, especially in the Jiangnan region. Private publishing and printing presses produced different types of printed texts for sale, from Confucian school books to Buddhist sūtras. Printing Press Yinghang 印行 accepted contracts to print texts for

---


240 Also in Jianyang of Fujian, see Lucille Chia, *Printing for Profit: The Commercial Publishers of Jianyang, Fujian (11th-17th Centuries).*
individuals, families, schools, governments, and religious institutions. Another printing press was Sūtra Workshop Jingfang 經坊, usually in an urban neighborhood for commercial Buddhist sūtra prints. Private parties could print and sell Buddhist sūtras, but the mass production of large sets of the Buddhist canon (usually around 6,000 volumes / fascicles) were usually printed by a Tripitaka Office Dazangjing ju 大藏經局 owned by a monastery. In the case of this research, it is the Grand Puning Monastery of the White Cloud sect. Sometimes the Sūtra Workshop could also be a local private one that used print blocks from a monastery for commercial printing. For the Grand Puning Monastery, its Tripitaka Office served as both block maker and storage facility, as well as publisher and seller.

The process of canon printing and selling generally included textual selection, translating, collating and compiling, as well as block carving, printing, storing, and fundraising. Fundraisers included monks and lay people. They often had titles such as General Fundraiser Du Quanyuan 都勸緣, and Fundraiser Quanyuan 勸緣 or Guanyuan 觀緣. In fact, some high level clergy officials such as those in the Supervision Office of Buddhist Affairs in the Jianghuai region also served as fundraisers under these titles, as will be discussed later. The fundraising targeted the government, monasteries, and “retail” to regional lay people for donations. Retail customers usually did not actually possess the purchased sūtras. The small-scale local donation for sponsoring sūtras based on “retail” can be considered as a spiritual transaction where the customer gained merit rather than
physically holding the copy.\textsuperscript{241} The ownership of the sponsored sūtras still belonged to the Tripitaka Office, and the office circulated the sūtras in two ways: the “tribute” of the complete canon set to the court or government, and “wholesale” to Buddhist institutions, mainly temples and monasteries all over the empire. Traditionally, Buddhist institutions usually held the canon as their main collection at the sūtra library 藏經閣, which assured their formal monastic status.

As discussed in Section I (Chaper 1 and 2), inside the White Cloud sect, except during the early Yuan period, lay people led the trend of canon development rather than monks. Local people in the Jiangnan region had experience of commercial print since the Song period, and were able to allocate local resources for long-term printing projects. In the Yuan dynasty, newly arrived Tangut monks played a key role as the mediators between the Yuan state and the White Cloud sect. These monks served in clerical offices and provided financial and policy support for the White Cloud sect leadership as well as the sūtra printing process. Through the introduction by the Tangut monks, the canon printing projects including the Chinese language Puning canon 普寧藏 and Tangut language Hexi canon 河西藏 received direct sponsorship from the emperors and top Buddhist leaders (mainly of Tibetan Buddhism) in the Yuan government. In Jiangnan local society, Chinese lay followers of the White Cloud sect collaborated to print the canon, under the sponsorship of foreign officials, especially Tangut monks in government posts. There was very limited presence of Chinese monks except the sect’s main leaders who served as editors and collators. This chapter offers a detailed introduction to the

\textsuperscript{241} Chapter 4 discusses the “retail” business of local lay donations for sūtra printing. Other types of sūtra sponsorship are the donations for exhibiting sūtra temporarily out of the monastic library and reciting sūtras by monastic monks. These were all spiritual enterprise of the Buddhist monastic economy.
background and cultural context of Buddhist canon printing projects related to the White Cloud movement, and analyzes the communication and negotiation between statehood and locality represented throughout the process of conducting the projects. It also introduces key figures of powerful Tangut monks as the main facilitators, and their influence on the development of the White Cloud sect overall.

I argue that the White Cloud sect used its Buddhist printing project to make close connections with court officials and powerful monks, thus establishing their political networks among the Yuan empire’s top rulers. On the other hand, the state emphasized sponsoring the sect, largely due to its ability to print the Buddhist canon. This state-sect reciprocal relationship through Buddhist printing adds another reason for the changing state policies and gradual decline of the sect in the mid to late Yuan period. Because of the completion of the Puning canon by 1290, the state lost its highest interest/priority of supervising the White Cloud sect. This might have also caused the loss of financial aid from the government in the post-Puning canon era. Although the sect still kept printing copies of the Puning canon based on individual and monastic patronage, the sect remained more active in local affairs and extorted money and resources from local society.

The Puning canon (1277-1290)

As mentioned in the Introduction, the Jiangnan area was a center of culture and textual production in the Song-Yuan period, with Hangzhou as its center. The area not only produced a tremendous amount of intellectual works, but also was home to many
printing workshops and produced many printed materials. These prints included Confucian textbooks, encyclopedia books, compilations of works by poets and Buddhist canons. They were circulated widely all over China, especially during the Yuan period, thanks to newly expanded roads and relay postal systems. Mobility of people in the Yuan Empire and cultural diversity caused a need for literature of different languages.  

Among these printed materials, Buddhist texts were the number one category in terms of the quantity of production. In addition, Hangzhou was also the place where Shen Kuo 沈括 (1031-1095) first introduced movable type block print. This technology helped the mass production of high volume texts, especially the Buddhist canon. On the other hand, Huzhou, the area of most White Cloud activists in the Yuan, previously produced two private Buddhist canons in the early Southern Song. This represents the high level of Buddhist print culture in the area prior to the Yuan. These two canons were both made at the Yuanjue Chan Cloister 圆覺禅院 (later renamed as Zifu Chan Monastery 資福禪寺) in Sixi 思溪 of Songting canton 松亭鄉, Gui’an county 歸安縣, Huzhou prefecture 湖州.  

Two major Chinese language Buddhist canon printing series in the Jiangnan region during the Song-Yuan period were the Qisha canon 磪砂藏 and the Puning canon 普寧藏. The Qisha canon was produced at the Qisha Yansheng Monastery 磪砂延聖寺.

---

242 For example, in spring 1992, archaeologists found a book Wenxian tongkao 文獻通考 (54.5 pages) in Lümiào 綠廟 (modern day in Alxa League of west Inner Mongolia). It was printed in Taiding 4 (1327), at the West Lake Academy 西湖書院 in Hangzhou. Alxa League Museum 阿拉善盟博物館 collection. The unearth site in Lümiào is believed to be a ruin of a school, since there were also other Chinese textbooks and character practice notebook found there.

243 Shen Kuo 沈括, Mengxi bitan 夢溪筆談.

244 Thus they were named the Yuanjue canon 圓覺藏 and Zifu canon 資福藏, or together as the Sixi canon 思溪藏. The binding format/style of the Puning canon was largely influenced by the Sixi canon.
(previously a Chan Cloister 禪院) in Wu county 吳縣 of Pingjiang from the Song to the Yuan period, and had a close connection with the White Lotus movement. The Puning canon was produced at the Grand Puning Monastery 大普寧寺 in suburban Hangzhou, and was completely managed by the White Cloud sect, in a shorter period of time in the Yuan dynasty. These two canons were among the largest organized printing projects in the Yuan dynasty, in terms of printed volumes and involved parties. Another government sponsored Buddhist canon printing project held at Hongfa Monastery 弘法寺 in Dadu, during the Zhiyuan period, was based on existing Jin wood blocks and had no additional engravings.

The Qisha canon, started in the early Southern Song period - early 1230s, lost most of its blocks in 1258 due to fire damage to the monastery. It received financial support from both lay believers and some local officials, but was not a Song state sponsored project. In the Yuan period, it continued producing new engraving blocks and printed new volumes, from the Dade period (1297-1307), to its completion in 1323. The Qisha canon produced a total of 591 boxes han 函, 1532 items bu 部, and 6362 volumes juan 卷. The blocks also survived during the Yuan-Ming crisis, so there were Ming period reprints of the Qisha canon in the 1390s. The Qisha canon, therefore, had Song, Yuan and Ming editions. The frontispiece illustrations of some sūtras in the canon

---

245 Puning Monastery, was originally the cloister of the White Cloud monk Kong Qingjue. It changed name to Chuandeng Cloister 傳燈院 and also Pu'an Monastery 普安寺 in the Shaoxing 紹興 period (), in Chunxi 淳熙 7 (1180). It changed name to Puning 普寧. Jiaqing Yuhang xian zhi 嘉慶余杭縣志, j.15, and Wanli Hangzhou fu zhi 万历杭州府志.

246 Due to the influence from the White Lotus movement in Jianyang, Fujian, there was a small scale Chinese language Buddhist canon printing project called Pilu Canon 毗盧藏 produced in Yanyou 2 (1315), sponsored by the official Ilemisi 亦黑迷失 of Fujian province.

247 For the latest studies on the Qisha canon, see Chia in Jiang Wu, Spreading Buddha’s Words
depicting Buddhist deities were similar to those of the Puning and Hexi canons. Also, many blocks of the Yuan edition shared same engravers *kegong* (or, *kangong* 刻工) with those of the Puning and Hexi canons.\(^{248}\)

The Puning canon, however, was a sole production of the White Cloud sect in the Yuan dynasty only. It was initiated by the White Cloud sect’s first leader in the Yuan period, Gushan Dao’an 古山道安 at Nanshan Grand Puning Monastery 南山大普寧寺 in Yuhang 餘杭 of the Hangzhou route. The Puning canon project received state sponsorship from the Mongol court in the early Yuan following the establishment of an official Tripitaka Office 大藏經局.\(^{249}\) It had all printing blocks newly carved, based on the past models of the Yuanjue and Zifu canons. One complete set of blocks was made from 1277 to 1290, and includes 559 boxes, 1430 items, and 6004 volumes of sūtras.\(^{250}\) The printing process received direct support from the Mongol Yuan emperor, imperial court, high officials and powerful Tangut monks. The engravers and patrons were mostly lay devotees in the Jiangnan local society. The printing techniques of the Puning canon were similar to the Qisha canon, were a mix of wooden block xylography and moveable type xylography. It was the most popular and widest circulated Buddhist canon in the Yuan. It was the best seller in the Yuan Buddhist canon market, as we shall see from the extant canons’ unearthed location and historical records. Locations of buyers of the

\(^{248}\) Examples such as famous engraver 畫工 Chen Sheng 陳昇, publisher 刊工 Chen Ning 陳寧, publisher Yang Dechun 楊德春 and his print press by Zhong’an Bridge in Hangzhou 杭州眾安橋北楊家印行.

\(^{249}\) should notice that usually Tripitaka workshop is private, the White Cloud one received official patronage so it was quite an unique case

\(^{250}\) For the preserved table of content, see *Hangzhou lu Yuhang xian Baiyun zong Nanshan Da Puningsi dazangjing mulu* 杭州路餘杭縣白雲宗南山大普寧寺大藏經目錄, *Showa hoho so mokuroku* 大正新修昭和法寶總目録 (General Tables of Contents of the Buddhist Canon, Compiled in the Showa period) (Tokyo: Taisho Issaikyo Kankokai, 1924) II, 239-71.
whole set of the canon (in other words, customers of the canon wholesale) covered a large range of places in China and Mongolia. The wide spread of the Puning canon does not mean the high popularity of the White Cloud sect all over the empire, nor does the reputation of the sect founder Kong Qingjue’s teachings. However, the Puning canon was the main business focus of the White Cloud sect in the Yuan dynasty, which helped the sect collect economic benefits from selling the canon copies or the canon sponsorship. Moreover, the existing copies of the Puning canon are the major current source for studying the history of the sect.

Dao’an was first an abbot at Miaoyan Monastery 妙嚴寺 in Huzhou in the Southern Song.251 All the canon print blocks in nearby Sixi, including those of the Zifu and Yuanjue canons, were destroyed during the Song-Yuan war in 1275-76 “the canon blocks of Fabao Monastery of Sixi in Huzhou route were destroyed in the war, even no single character remained” 湖州路思溪法寶寺大藏經板泯於兵火隻字不存.252 Dao’an started a new sūtra printing project at Puning Monastery from scratch after he attained abbotship there. The surviving copies of the Yuanjue and Zifu canons became the models of the Puning canon. There was no record of large-scale translation works related to the Puning canon, suggesting that the canon was based on a previous model rather than adding mostly new texts. However, it is clear that all blocks of the Puning canon were newly made in the Yuan dynasty. The early stage of initiation of the Puning canon by

251 Mou Yan 墨巘 and Zhao Mengfu 趙孟頫, “Record of the Miaoyan Monastery” Huzhou Miaoyansi ji 湖州妙嚴寺記, Asian Art Collection, Princeton University.
252 大正新脩大藏經 第十冊 No. 293《大方廣佛華嚴經》CBETA; Puning #193; Overmyer 635-6
Dao’an also received support from his friend Master Jitangsi 寂堂思宗師 of Grand Mingqing Monastery 大明慶寺 in the Hangzhou route 杭州路. 253

The earliest date of existing sūtras of the Puning canon is marked as the fourth month of 1278. 254 In the beginning, the canon project was not sponsored by the Mongolian government. In 1278, Hangzhou was already conquered by the Mongols, as was the Puning monastery, but the Southern Song dynasty still did not collapse due to its resisting forces in South China until 1279. Therefore, the producers of the canon chose not to mark the Song or the Yuan reign name due to political uncertainty. This shows that the early producer of the canon did not recognize the Yuan authority, or at least had not yet made official connections with the new government as early as 1278. (It shows the relationship between the canon production and state recognition.) On the other hand, they may have resisted acceptance of the new foreign conqueror, as many southerners did at that time. In fact, the canon producers were very aware of the political situation as shown in regime changes. Scholars have noticed that in the same sūtra but different volumes, other dates are clearly shown as the first moon of Yimao year (February 1279) 已卯年一月, and the second moon of Zhiyuan 16 (March 1279) 至元十六年二月. 255 This is only one month’s difference, but it marked the Yuan conquest of the Song resistance force in Yashan 厭山 in the second month of that year, so the producers immediately put the reign name Zhiyuan on the sūtra after the Song’s eventual fall.

253 大正新脩大藏經 第十冊 No. 293 《大方廣佛華嚴經》CBETA; Puning #193
254 何梅 210. Large collection of the Puning canon includes 320 volumes at Zojo-ji temple 增上寺 in Japan, 579 volumes in Famen temple 法門寺 in Shaanxi, and over 4,000 volumes (over 490 cases) in Chongshan temple 崇善寺 in Taiyuan of Shanxi (diffused after discovery).
255 ibid.
Dao’an had personally made two trips to the Yuan capital Dadu for the palace audience of Khubilai Khan to seek imperial patronage on the Puning canon project. He was the very first monk from South China who gained the imperial audience of Khubilai. He received an imperial edict 聖旨 that approved the printing project, as well as support from some of the most prominent Buddhist masters, including Longchuan Hangyu 龙川行育, Dampa 胆巴/膽八/檐八 and Yang Lianzhenjia 杨琏真伽. Some famous masters served as General Fundraiser Du Quanyuan 都勸緣 or Fundraiser Quanyuan 勸緣 for the Puning canon, such as these high level clergy officials in the Supervision Office of Buddhist Affairs in the Jianghuai Region 江淮諸路釋教總統所 including Jiawaba 加瓦八, Hang Jixiang 行吉祥 (i.e. Hangyu) and Yang Lianzhenjia 杨琏真伽. (Overall, the Yuan state’s motivation to support the canon printing project, rather than ignore or forbid it, was the monumental character of the canon for the new Mongol regime and the favoring of Buddhism among Mongol rulers. Also, the Mongol court recruited a diverse pool of Buddhist masters and translators of different ethnic backgrounds, and initiated multiple projects of translating and collating Buddhist texts of different languages. The rich intellectual resources and the need for a quickly completed Buddhist canon made the...
Mongol court willing to sponsor the White Cloud’s Puning canon through the connections of non-Chinese foreign monks/Buddhist teachers.)

Dao’an’s connections with the court was made through the introduction of Dampa and officials of the Supervision Office of Buddhist Affairs in Jianghuai including Yang Lianzhenjia and Longchuan Hangyu who offered Dao’an license to officially approve the printing project. A prayer by Dao’an attached as a colophon of a sūtra of the Puning canon in Zhiyuan 16 (1279) made wishes to the imperial family, state officials, and several Buddhist clergy officials including the Imperial Preceptor, the State Preceptor, Master Dampa, Master Hangyu, and Master Yang Lianzhenjia.

Thanks to the protection of the Supervision Office of Buddhist Affairs in the Jianghuai Region, who offered the certificate and introduced for the audience of Master Dampa. The emperor delivered an imperial edict, to protect the (White Cloud) sect’s organization, and accomplish its wonderful deeds. After the project took place, wish the knowledge of all the Bodhisattva, dragon heaven, and kind friends to be granted to me. Wish I will be insisting from the very beginning till the end. (I shall) use this opportunity, avoid any thought of regret, and clear off any barriers. This grand cause is for blessing the emperor’s longevity of ten thousand years peace, the empress same year, the heir apparent and princes thousand years age, and civil and military officials advance to promotion. Also praise the Great Yuan Imperial Preceptor, State Preceptor, Master Dampa, Supervisor of Buddhist Affairs in the Jianghuai Region Master Hongjiao (Longchuan Hangyu), and Supervisor of Buddhist Affairs in the Jianghuai Region Master Yongfu (Yang Lianzhenjia). Great interpretation sectarian vehicles, and spontaneously gain of fortunes. Also wish time and season in harmony, rich property and healthy lives, “four fields of grace and three states of existence” all achieved, and all the sensitive beings transcend to the other shore (i.e. pure land). Imperial endorsed White Cloud sect monk registrar in Zhexi Hangzhou routes, abbot of Nanshan Puning Monastery, Successor of Buddhism, the ninth generation grandson (of the sect founder), Master Huizhao Śramaṇa Dao’an cautiously takes the vow.
Zhiyuan 16 (1279) yimao year, twelfth moon, auspicious date. Respectfully written.

Dao’an had personal relationships with these non-Chinese prominent monks, who were all favorite Buddhists of Khubilai Khan and had significant political power.

Longchuan Hangyu was a Jurchen monk who served as the abbot of the state sponsored Baima ("White Horse") Monastery 白馬寺 in Luoyang, and later moved to Jiangnan for the post overseeing Buddhist affairs there. Yang Lianzhenjia was a Tangut monk who held a similar post in the Jiangnan region, and had great influence on the triumph of Buddhism over Daoism in the court. Dampa was also a Tangut monk, who later served as the state preceptor of the Yuan Empire. He was one of the most eminent monks in Khubilai Khan’s reign. Dao’an was able to make connections with these powerful monks in a short time after the Mongol conquest, likely attributable to the importance of Buddhism in the Jiangnan region since the Song period. In addition, Sun Bojun argued

---

258 大正新脩大藏経 第十冊 No. 293《大方廣佛華嚴經》CBETA; Puning #193
259 For studies on Longchuan Hangyu, see Chikusa, Masaaki 竺沙雅章 Sō Gen Bukkyō bunkashi kenkyū 宋元佛教文化史研究.
261 For studies on Dampa, see Herbert Franke, “Tibetans in Yuan China.”
that Dao’an was a descendent of the Tangut royal house, with which I disagree. Her argument was based on someone who was named Master Huizhao 慧照 (Tangut: 䴣), which appeared in a Tangut text that was preceded with another Tangut imperial title Jieqinzhu 節親主 (Tangut: 節親主). This argument ignores the truth that Huizhao was a popular venerable title for Buddhists in Xi Xia and Yuan. Dao’an, as the director, led the Tripitaka Office 大藏經局 to oversee the printing project. He also held the positions of Monk Registrar, Overseer of the White Cloud sect, and the chief abbot of Puning Monastery. After his death in Dadu in Zhiyuan 18 (1281), the directors of the Tripitaka Office included but were not limited to (Yuetan) Ruyi (月潭) 如一, Ruzhi 如志, Ruxian 如賢, and Ruying 如莹.263

The compilation of the Puning canon was also influenced by the joint collating project of the Sino-Tibetan tripitaka in Dadu from 1285 to 1287, ordered by Khubilai Khan. It was led by Longchuan Hangyu 龍川行育 and Qing Jixiang 慶吉祥, and included monks of different ethnic backgrounds such as Chinese, Tibetan, Tangut, and Jurchen. The project was to compare and correct the traditional tripitaka in China and Tibet. The result was the publication of a ten volume catalog called The General Catalogue of Dharma Treasure Collation in the Zhiyuan period 至元法寶勘同總錄. The catalog was also included in the Puning canon.264

263 大正新脩大藏經 第十冊 No. 293《大方廣佛華嚴經》CBETA; Puning #193
264 For more information on The General Catalogue of Dharma Treasure Collation in the Zhiyuan period 至元法寶勘同總錄, see Li Weiying 李偉穎, Zhiyuan fabao kantong zonglu zhi yanjiu 至元法寶勘同總錄之探究 Taipei: Faguang chubanshe, 2005.
The Puning canon printing project, including the carving of the print blocks, was completed in 1290. After this time, there were occasional reprints of the Puning canon and related sūtras, regardless of the government bans on the White Cloud sect and tribute to the canon. Just as sect leadership shifted from Buddhist monks to lay people (especially those surnamed Shen including Shen Mingren 沈明仁), the supervision of the canon printing project was transferred from monastic monks to lay people. There was a new set of esoteric sūtras 秘密經 in Chinese, 97 items and 315 volumes, added to the Puning canon, printed from 1306 to 1310 under the sponsorship of the Tangut clergy official Guanzhuba 管主八, and monitored by Shen Mingren. In 1310, Shen Mingren received an edict to print three additional Buddhist sūtras of the Puning canon, and in 1313 another four sūtras, including translation of *Bhaiṣajyaguru Rituals and Offering Methods* 藥師儀軌供養法 by the prominent Tangut scholar monk in the Yuan, Master Shalopa 沙剌巴/沙羅巴 (1259-1314), and Kong Qingjue’s 孔清覺 book *Chuxue ji* 初學記. Shen Mingren’s colophon in *Zhengxing ji*, written in Huangqing 2 (1313) included the imperial edict for printing additional texts of the Puning canon.

The 1313 colophon quoted in the beginning of this chapter states that Shen Mingren received a response from the General Commission of Buddhist Affairs 都功德使司, a new institution for religious regulation, in Huangqing 1 (1312). On that day at

---

265 Introduction from Digital Database of Buddhist Tripitaka Catalogues 佛教藏經目錄數位資料庫; these esoteric sūtras were based on the Hongfa canon 弘法藏 printed in Dadu, which was based on the Zhaocheng canon 趙城藏 in the Jin dynasty.

266 Overmyer 638; Ogawa Kan’ichi 小川貫弋, “Gendai Byakuun shumon no katsudo jotai”元代白雲宗門の活動狀態 8.

267 “The Huangqing 2 (1313) colophon.”
Jiaxi Hall 嘉禧殿, Shen met the hall guardian (keshig 怯薛) Baiju 拜住 (1298-1323?), who was an influential figure in the Mongol court. The revival of canon print in 1313 shows the rebirth of the White Cloud sect as well. Back in 1311, one month after the death of Yuan emperor Wuzong, the new emperor Renzong stopped the tribute of printed Buddhist sūtras that were shipped from the Jiangnan region. The new emperor also banned all regional branch offices of the Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs Xing Xuanzheng Yuan 行宣政院 including the Hangzhou one, as well as all Buddhist Supervision offices, monk registrars, and other Buddhist institutions all over the empire, in order to take over the Buddhists’ privileges. The edict specifically states the ban of the White Cloud sect and its office, and the civil registration for the sect’s monks to be changed to commoners. However, two years later in 1313, still under Renzong’s reign, Shen Mingren gained leadership in the surviving sect, and received an imperial edict to print the additional texts of the Puning canon. This is also likely attributed to Shen Mingren’s connection with famous Buddhist monks and clergy officials who managed to survive the purge and retain power. Therefore, throughout its history, the White Cloud sect was always able to maintain connections with powerful Buddhists in the Yuan court, no matter whether the leadership fell to monastic monks or lay people. The Puning canon was the main attracting element for the prominent monks’ attentions.

268 Baiju 拜住 was the seventh generation of Muqari 木華黎. Later during Emperor Yingzong’s reign (1320-1323), he became the emperor’s third keshig leader 怯薛長, and the right chancellor of the Secretariat 中書右丞相.
270 “The Huangqing 2 (1313) colophon” says the location of print was Grand Ciyn Monastery 大慈隱寺. The precise location is unknown, since no other sources available mention this monastery. This might be a mistake of Lingyin Monastery 靈隱寺 in Hangzhou.
Shen Mingren, in his 1313 colophon, includes prayers for the imperial family and all civil officials. He also lists names of prominent people who had contributed to the printing of the Puning canon. Most of them were not Chinese. They were Imperial Guards (Sügürči 速古兒赤, which is one branch of Keshig) Noqai 那懷, Official Interpreters (“Kelemuci / Kelimeci 怯里馬赤”) Borucar 孛羅察兒, Associate 同知 Goolyinliu 觀音奴, and three high officials who carried the imperial edict including Minister of Education 大司徒 and Commissioner of Buddhist Affairs 都功德使 Rin-chen-grags-shis 輶真吃剌思 (ca 1329-1332, Imperial Preceptor 帝師), Commissioner of Buddhist Affairs Zhang Lu 都功德使 張閭 (-), and Vice Commissioner of Buddhist Affairs 都功德副使 Aliya Tas 阿里牙答思 (-, Taiding 2 (1325) Darughachi of Qingyuan route 廣元路達魯花赤). Zhang Lu was involved in the printing project of the Tangut script Hexi canon in Hangzhou as well, to be discussed in the following section.

All these non-Chinese political elites were connected to the making of the Puning canon. Therefore, the audience of the Puning canon was not only limited to Chinese. Though the major texts of the Puning canon are in Chinese, there are some texts in foreign languages. There is a Chinese translation of a Tangut book (1200 CE) of a

---

271 所集洪因。端為祝延皇帝萬萬歲。皇太后壽齊年。皇后同壽萬年。太子諸王千秋。文武官僚常居祿位。更冀國泰民安。雨暘時若。佛日增輝。法輪常轉者。These prayers of Shen Mingren’s 1313 colophon is very similar to the prayers of previous cited Dao’an’s 1279 colophon.
272 “The Huangqing 2 (1313) colophon”; Sun Bojun spells this Rin-chen-grags-shis 輶真吃剌思 as Rin-chen-’phrin-las 輶真吃刺 (means “treasury enterprise” 寶業), and argues that he is in fact Guan Nianzhenchila 管輶真吃剌, son of Guanzhuba 管主八. I disagree with Sun’s claim. Sun 2011 P60. 张闾 (-) also known as 張驴, 章闾, served in the court as 中书平章政事, and in Hangzhou as 行宣政院使, 江南行台御史中丞, 江浙行省平章政事. He was active in building networks with intellectuals/ cultural elite, and had patronage on the Puning canon.
Sanskrit mantra collection called *Mizhou yuanyin wangsheng ji* 密咒圓因往生集
(“Collection of Mantras for Perfect Causes and Rebirth”) in the Puning canon. All of its
mantras are in Phags-pa script transliteration of original Sanskrit pronunciations. 273 There
is also a Uighur script sūtra called *Foshuo tiandi bayang shenzhou jing* 佛說天地八陽神
咒經 (“Mantra Sūtra of Heaven-Earth Eight-Masculine” *Aṣṭa-buddhaka-sūtra*), also
belonging to the Puning canon. This is also a collection of mantras. The sūtra was one of
the most popular among Uighur Buddhists since the Uighur Khaganate period (744-
840). 274

(Figure 2)

Non-Chinese people were not only the sponsors and audience of the canon, and
some of them were also involved in the making of the canon. Among the White Cloud
sect’s monastic clergy officials, they had various titles, including Manager Monk 勾當僧,
Selection Monk 提控僧, Supervision Monk 知事僧, Monk Judge 僧判, Monk Registrar
僧錄, Fundraising Manager 化緣勾當 and Coordinating Manager 提調勾當. There are
two non-Chinese monks who were listed in a colophon. They are Monk Judge 僧判

273 Sun Bojun 孫伯君, “A Study on the Phags-pa Transliteration of Mizhou Yuanyin Wangsheng Ji in the
Tripitaka of Puning” 普寧藏本密咒圓因往生集的八思巴字注音研究, *Zhonghua wenshi luncong 中華
文史論叢* 2009:3 PP163-198. This text is not seen in the table of contents of the Puning canon 白雲宗大藏
經目錄. This is the longest extant text of Phagspa script transliteration of Sanskrit. Excavated in Kara
Khoto, today in St. Petersburg. Image see *Ecang Heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文獻* vol.4, Shanghai:

274 Taisho 大正藏 no.2897, 白雲宗大藏經目錄#286. One extant copy is in the National Library of China
in Beijing. This copy’s frontispiece illustration *Rulai shuo jiao tu 如來說教圖* has a “printers marker”
saying the publisher named Chen Ning 陳寧. Chen Ning (ca. 1308-1336) was a famous publisher in Yuan
Hangzhou, seen for many of his works in both the Puning and Qisha canons in the mid Yuan period. Yang
Fuxue 楊富學, *Huihu wenxian xu Huihu wenhua 回鶻文獻與回鶻文化*, Beijing: Minzu chubanshe, 2003,
41-2; Zhang Xinying 張新鷹, “Chen Ning qiren ji Huihuwen Baiyang jing banke di” 陳寧其人及回鶻文
（八陽經）版刻地, *Shijie zongjiao yanjiu 世界宗教研究* 1988(1), 127-131; Liu Yuanchun 劉元春,
“Foshuo tiandi bayang shenzhou jing bianxi” 〈佛說天地八陽神咒經〉辨析, *Xiyou yanjiu 西域研究*
Naosi jiba 綽思吉八, and Monk Registrar 僧錄 Shoujing 守進. It is not clear about their ethnic backgrounds (either Mongolian or German), but the names do not seem to be Chinese.

The occasional reprint of the canon continued even after the major persecution of the sect in 1319. In Taiding 1 (1324), a colophon shows that a monk named Mingyue 明月 of Puning Monastery had sponsored the reprint of Jingde chuandeng lu 景德傳燈錄 volume 30. This shows the survival of the Puning block prints and their usage, which was not affected by the persecutions of the White Cloud sect in 1311 and 1319 and the official ban of canon tribute in 1311. The blocks remained in the Puning Monastery, and were completely destroyed along with the burning down of the monastery during the Yuan-Ming war.

In conclusion, this section shows that the Puning canon printing received sponsorship from court officials, mostly non-Chinese, as both individual patrons and as representatives of the state. (The Puning canon received both state intervention and investment, based on local interests.) The close relationship between the high level state representatives and the lay White Cloud members, as shown in the prayers of some sūtras in the canon, promised the timely production and successful sale of the canon. (The reason that the state became interested in the sect’s Puning canon in the first place, as previously mentioned, was the need for printed Buddhist texts as a monumental project for state blessings, and the ability of the White Cloud sect and local activists’ skills in...
producing commercial prints.) The White Cloud sect, through making, branding and selling the Puning canon, extended its network with powerful political and religious leaders, and legitimized itself as a Buddhist school which produced Buddhist texts and spread Buddhist material culture.

**The Hexi canon (1293-1321)**

Besides the Puning canon made in the Grand Puning Monastery in suburban Hangzhou, the Tangut script Hexi canon was also made in Hangzhou. These two canons shared some of the same sponsors and block carvers, and were produced in connected time periods. The Tangut people translated and printed a Tangut script Buddhist canon from 1038 to 1090, during the period of the Xi Xia Empire (1038-1227), in its capital Xingqing. The project was sponsored by the Tangut imperial family directly and was led by thirty-two eminent monks of different ethnic backgrounds including the Xi Xia State Preceptor Bai Faxin 白法信 (Tang. phie tsji r dźe) who may have been be a Uighur from Kucha. The whole set includes Buddhist sūtras of 362 boxes, 812 items, and 3579 volumes. This first Tangut script canon was based on contemporary Chinese and Tibetan canons, but had its own structure. Since the Xi Xia Empire was a Buddhist state and its printing technology was among the most advanced in Asia at that time, the making and circulation of Buddhist sūtras were popular there during the Xi Xia Empire period. Duan Yuquan argues that the similarity of styles and structure

---

277 Bai Faxin, and another Xia era famous translator Bai Zhiguang 白智光 both had surname Bai 白. Bai or Bo, was from Sanskrit word *puspa* means “cloud spectacle.” It was a popular surname in Qiuci. Yang Fuxue 楊富學, “Lun Huihu wenhua dui Xixiawenhua de yingxiang” 論回鶻文化對西夏的影響, *Songshi yanjiu luncong* 宋史研究論叢 vol.5, 2003, 279-4.
of the Puning and Hexi canons, and thus Chinese and Tangut canons in the Yuan period, were formed prior to the Yuan. He believes that the Tangut canon in the Xi Xia Empire period was established through the state sponsored sūtra collation during the period of Xi Xia Emperor Renzong (1140-1193), based on Chinese canons, not only the Kaibao canon 開寶藏, but also the Chongning canon 崇寧藏 and the Pilu canon 毘盧藏. Overall, the early Tangut script canon was based on the Tibetan and Chinese script canons, with some collation with the original Sanskrt version of sūtras.

After the Mongol conquest of the Xi Xia Empire in 1227, the stateless Tangut monks continued to produce Buddhist sūtras under the sponsorship of new Mongol rulers. Unlike the gradual dismissal of Jurchen and Khitan scripts after the fall of their states, the Tangut script remained useful until the mid-Ming dynasty in the 16th century, heavily relying on the production and circulation of Buddhist texts, which were used among Tangut diaspora monks and monasteries (though most of them gradually lost the ability to read the Tangut language). In fact, the Tangut script itself was invented partly to translate and transcribe Buddhist texts from Chinese, Tibetan, Uighur and Sanskrit to Tangut. In the post-Xi Xia period after 1227, there were three known locations that produced Tangut script sūtras, including the Hexi region (mainly Xingqing and Helan Mountain 賀蘭山, former Xi Xia territory, not the complete canon but several sūtras), Dadu (Beijing), and Hangzhou. Both Dadu and Hangzhou produced a Tangut script


279 Shi Jinbo in his recent article argues that one newly found sūtra in the National Library of China might be printed in Jinling (today Nanjing). See Shi Jinbo 史金波 and Lin Shitian 林世田, “Lijiu mixin: Guojia tushuguan xinfaxian de Xixiawenxian” 歷久彌新: 國家圖書館新發現的西夏文獻, 2007. Also, Tangut
Buddhist canon, known as the Hexi canon 河西藏 because the Tangut script was called
Hexi script 河西字 in the Yuan. The print studio in Hangzhou 杭州 縱 擊 was located in
the Grand Wanshou Monastery 大萬壽寺. The blocks of the Tangut script canon
printed in Hangzhou were carved in ten years, from Zhiyuan 30 (1293) to Dade 6
(1302). In 1294, the Yuan court banned the usage of the Tangut script Buddhist
canon’s blocks in Dadu, which were carved under the sponsorship of the Commission for
Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs 宣政院. The Hangzhou version of the Tangut canon’s
blocks, therefore, became the only available Tangut canon blocks in the Yuan period
after the official ban.

The Hexi canon in the Yuan succeeded the Tangut canon in the Xi Xia period.

One piece of evidence of the influence of the Tangut canon in the Xi Xia period on the
Yuan version is two similar illustrations of a frontispiece depicting a translating, collating
and printing scene. The first illustration is from the Qisha canon in the Yuan. It depicts
the scene of monks working on sūtras at Wanshou Hall 萬壽 (Wanshou dian 萬壽殿)
script sūtra Jin Guangming zuisheng wangjing 西夏文《金光明最勝王經》juan 10 (National Library of
China 國家圖書館, #B11.037), its colophon says that the blocks from the Xi Xia Empire were lost in the
war (1227), and seventeen lay patrons sponsored the new print from 1245 to 1247.

280 Grand Wanshou Monastery, was converted to be a Buddhist temple from an imperial Daoist abbey after
Yang Lianzhenjia. It is located on the Solitary Hill 孤山 island in West Lake 西湖 of Hangzhou.

281 Vow statement of the Tangut script sūtra Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing 西夏文《過去莊嚴劫千
佛名經》發願文 (National Library of China B11.052); Duan Yuquan, 293.

282 YS j.18. In the fourth month of Zhiyuan 31 (1294), Emperor Chengzong 成宗 succeeded the throne. He
had hostile toward Hexi (i.e. Tangut) monks. This followed the purge of Sengge 桑哥 and Yang
Lianzhenjia’s lost of power in 1291. In the eleventh month of 1294, the new Emperor Chengzong cancelled
all Tangut monks’ privilege of exempting from labor duties so ordered them to serve “令河西僧人依旧助
役,” he also banned all the Tangut script canon blocks made under Xuanzheng yuan “罢宣政院所刻河西
《藏經》板.” YS j.17, 18. As mentioned in Chapter 2, under Emperor Chengzong’s reign, he initiated the
first ban of the White Cloud sect and its offices from 1303 to 1306.
in the Grand Wanshou Monastery in Hangzhou, where the studio of the Hexi canon was located.

(Figures 3 and 4)

The second illustration is from a sūtra – Xianzai xianjie qianfo mingjing 现在賢劫千佛名經 in the Xi Xia period. It depicts a scene of monks working on sūtras with an imperial audience, in front of the Tangut emperor and empress. This illustration is often called the Illustration of Translating Sūtras Yijing tu 譯經圖 by Tangutologists.283

(Figures 5 and 6)

The organization/spatial settings of these two scenes/illustrations are similar, including central figures, two rows of sitting monks with assistants behind them on two sides, and figures in the front on two sides. (The second illustration has inscriptions attached to each figure, whereas the first one has none.)

The central figure of the first illustration is a Daoist deity statue with two entourage deity statues inside a building with a tablet that says “Wanshou Hall” Wanshou dian, which was originally a Daoist abbey in the Song and converted to a monastery by Yang Lianzhenjia in the Yuan. The central figure of the second illustration is the State Preceptor Bai Zhiguang 白智光 譯經師 (Tang. phie sj j bji), who was the chief Buddhist translator. As for the two rows of sitting Buddhist monks, the two illustrations both have tables in front of the monks, and on the tables are pens, inkstones, seals and Buddhist sūtra scrolls. In both illustrations, these monks are either holding, viewing, stamping, writing, collating/comparing, or discussing the sūtras. These are the scenes of

---

283 For the illustration in the Xi Xia period, see Shi Jinbo 史金波, “Xi Xia yijing tu jie” 西夏譯經圖解, Wenxian 文獻 vol.1, Beijing: Wenxian chubanshe, 1979.
translating and collating sūtras. In both illustrations, all the Buddhist monks wear Buddhist garments/robes, and have halos on their heads. In the first illustration, there are five monks sitting on each side of the row and two assistants behind each row of monks. In the second illustration, there are four monks sitting on each side of the row and four assistants behind each row of monks. The first illustration has two standing guards in the front, one on each side. The second illustration has the Tangut emperor and empress on each side in the front, each with three palace attendants/servants behind. In general, the close similarities of these two frontispiece images showing the sūtra translation and collation scenes prove the coherence of the Tangut canon in the Yuan from the Xi Xia ones. Its appearance in the Chinese Qisha canon also shows the connection of sharing studios and workers in the making of Tangut and Chinese canons in the Jiangnan region, including the Hexi, Qisha, and the Puning canons.

There are close inter-relationships between the Hexi, Qisha, and Puning canons. Information about printing the Hexi canon is from frontispiece and colophon notes in the Qisha canon, including Guanzhuba’s patronage, imperial edict approval, and the illustration of the studio scene in Grand Wanshou Monastery. The Puning canon shared same block engravers with the Hexi canon. Both the Puning and Hexi canons were printed in Hangzhou, managed by the White Cloud sect directly and indirectly. The main sponsors/supporters of the Puning canon were Tangut official monks. There were also Tangut monk buyers and distributors. They distributed both the Puning and Hexi canons to Northwest China, mainly the former.

---

Xi Xia territory in the Hexi region. The Qisha canon was not widely distributed to that region.

The Hexi canon in the Yuan dynasty, first printed in Dadu, was directed by the State Preceptor monk Yixing Huijue 行慧覚 (?-1313) (一行國師 一行慧覺) in Zhiyuan 7 (1270). He was a Tangut descendant, also known as Master Zongmi Yuanrong 宗密圓融大師. He translated and edited texts for the Tangut canon in the 1270s, and prepared it for print. The Hexi canon has 3,620 volumes, which is 41 more volumes than the total of 3,579 volumes of the Tangut canon printed in the Xi Xia Empire period. New volumes include the newly translated sūtras by Yixing Huijue, and some of his own works in Chinese such as *Dafang guangfo huayan jing haiyin daochang shichong* 大方廣佛華嚴經海印道場十重行願常遍禮懺儀 and *Dizui liyi yaomen* 滌罪禮懺要門. The translation, collation, and editing work of Yixing Huijue also received the assistance of two other Tangut diaspora monks including Zhiyuan 智圆 and Wumi 乌密.

285 “Gu shiyuan zongzhu Zongmi yuanrong dashi taming” 故釋源宗主宗密圓融大師塔銘, *Luoyang shizhi: Baimasi Longmen shiku zhi* 洛陽市志·白馬寺龍門石窟志 1996. Cui Hongfen 崔紅芬, “Xi Xia yiseng Huijue kaolue” 西夏遺僧慧覺考略, 2009. Yixing Huijue, lay surname Yang 楊, hometown Guzang 姑臧 (today Wuwei, Gansu). Father high official in Xi Xia. Yixing Huijue was ordained as a monk at Ci’en Temple 慈恩寺 in Cloud Cliff Valley 雲巖谷 of Mt. Helan 賀蘭山 after the fall of the Xi Xia. He learned both mahayana and vajrayana Buddhism. His teacher was Longchuan Hangyu 龍川行育 of Baima Temple 白馬寺, where he also help editing *Zhiyuan fabao kantong zonglu* 至元法寶勘同總錄. He also made a mission trip to Liangzhou 涼州 in the former Xi Xia territory. He served as the abbot of Baima Temple till his death in 1313, held the title of Master Shiyuan 釋源宗主. The previous title holders include Longchuan Hangyu 龍川行育 and Wencai 文才.


287 Sun Bojun 2011, Sun also translate one 智 (Tang. tši ĭjwā) as Tangut transliteration name for Zhiyuan 智圓, rather than official title zhiyuan 知院. Wumi 乌密 is a Tangut surname 艋密 (Tang. ʻu mji).
As for the Hexi canon printed in Hangzhou, the decision to carve and print the Hangzhou version was made by the emperor Khubilai directly through an imperial edict in Zhiyuan 30 (1293). Although Dadu was the political center of the Yuan, the Hangzhou version of the Tangut Hexi canon seems more official than the Dadu version. A Buddhist master Huibao 法師慧寶 initiated a petition.²⁸⁸ Xianbei Xiaogoutie 鮮卑小狗鐵 submitted the petition to Khubilai.²⁸⁹ The main organizer for the Hangzhou version was Xianbei Tuqing 鮮卑土情.²⁹⁰ He was assisted by the monk Zhijue Huizhong 知覺慧中. There were over twenty prominent monks who joined the collation of the old Tangut canon (aka. the Dadu version) for making the Hangzhou version. Most detailed information of the history of Tangut script canon printing from the Xi Xia to the Yuan was recorded in a long colophon of Tangut script sūtra Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing 過去莊嚴劫千佛名經 in the National Library of China. Dr. Shi Jinbo had primarily translated and studied it. This colophon first reviews the history of Tangut sūtra translation, collation and printing in the Xi Xia period, and then

---

²⁸⁹ Sun Bojun translates the name as Xianbei chidasha 鮮卑吃答沙. The given name is based on pronunciation rather than meaning. Sun 2011:58.
²⁹⁰ Shi Jinbo “Xixiawen Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing fayuanwen yizheng” 西夏文《過去莊嚴劫千佛名經》發願文譯證, Shi jinbo wenji 史金波文集 2005:312-31, first published in Shijie zongjiao yanjiu 世界宗教学研究 1981(1): 64-76; Xianbei Xiaogoutie and Xianbei Tuqing were descendants of residents from the Xi Xia Empire. But not clear if they were related since they had same last name, Xianbei is the name of descendants of the Tabghach 拓跋 tribe. Sometimes Xianbei 鮮卑 in Chinese can also be translated as Xibi 西壁 or 晉畢.
introduces the printing project by Yixing Huijue in the early Yuan. Eventually it
discusses the background of printing the Hangzhou version.

Buddhist master Huibao, deeply understands Chan dharma and secret vinay, The Emperor intended to fulfill his vow, so ordered Canon Cloister’s Xianbei Xiaogoutie to report. In the name of inevitable merit and sound, (the emperor) announced an imperial decree, that there should be a self made solid blocks in Hangzhou of Jiangnan. The main Monk Manager Xianbei Tuqing implemented the decree, monk Zhijue Huizhong served as the pioneer. Among monastic translators, over twenty people selected old sūtras (for collation). In Zhiyuan 30 (1293), carved blocks and printed in Wanshou Monastery. (The project) used over thousand kinds and over ten thousand items of properties (donations). It was completed in Dade 6 (1302) during the reign of Emperor Chengzong. According to the emperor’s decree, ten sets of the canon were printed.\(^{291}\)

This colophon was a vow statement, which was written by Moshang Huihu 没尚慧護 (Bo šjo žir wejr) in Huangqing 1 (1312) (thus the 1312 Tangut colophon), the year that the last 50 sets of the Hangzhou version were printed.\(^{293}\) The Hangzhou version canon’s patrons were listed at the end of the colophon. They are

---


\(^{292}\) 僧 incorrect font, one more strike needed in left radical.

\(^{293}\) Sun Bojun speculates that Moshang Huihu 没尚慧護 might be Chen Huihu 陳慧護 in Tangut version Jin guangming zaisheng wangjing 金光明最勝王經, National Library of China, Zhongguocang Xi Xia wenxian 中國藏西夏文獻 vol.4: 85; Sun 2011:60.
twelve Tangut officials and monks (who might be Mongols, Tibetans or Chinese),
including: (1) 散大夫 同知杭州路總管府使臣 Grand Master of Palace Leisure and Associate Supervisorate-in-chief in Hangzhou route Commissioner 高材 什吉; (2) 隨龍使額熾總管府副司史 Vice Staff Foreman of the Supervisorate-in-chief 高材 夷屋陳 陈 Ji u tşhji; (3) 李最 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan; (4) 沈使蘭 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan; (5) 沈使蘭 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan; (6) 沈使蘭 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan; (7) 沈使蘭 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan; (8) 沈使蘭 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan; (9) 沈使蘭 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan; (10) 沈使蘭 西北路使司 Commissioner of Xibei route 陳使闇 Tşhji śia lá Chen Shilan.

---

294 Shi 2005, Fuyiwucheng 夫依五陳.
295 Tşhji rari tšji 妻囉葛至 or 齊哩克齊 (Shi Jinbo translation), might be 快烈赤 (Kereci). 大德五年任南臺御史 Yuanren zhuangji ziliao suoyin P2428, or Kelemic (kelimeci) 快里馬赤 which is a job title means “official interpreter”; Shi Jinbo claims that this is a person’s name, he is 快憐赤 from Yuanshi 元史 juan 98, but I cannot find this information. Shi 2005.
296 沈使蘭 陳使闇 妻囉葛至 or 齊哩克齊 (Shi Jinbo translation), might be 快烈赤 (Kereci). 大德五年任南臺御史 Yuanren zhuangji ziliao suoyin P2428, or Kelemic (kelimeci) 快里馬赤 which is a job title means “official interpreter”; Shi Jinbo claims that this is a person’s name, he is 快憐赤 from Yuanshi 元史 juan 98, but I cannot find this information. Shi 2005.
298 Shi Jinbo translates dow dži as Nazheng. Shi, ; Sun 2011:58 note #14.
299 Dade Li 大德李 or Li Dade 李大德, might be Li Huiyue 李慧月 / 李惠月 大德李, a significant Tangut sūtra patron whom will be discussed in section 4 of this chapter.
There were five printings, for a total of 190 sets – of complete copies of the canon, as shown in the following table.

### Table 4: Printing of the Tangut Hexi canon in Hangzhou

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Printing Time</th>
<th>Printed sets 部</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dade 6 (1302) (completion of block carving/engraving)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dade 6 (1302) to Dade 9 (1305) Guanzhuba sponsorship</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dade 11 (1307)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhida 1 (1308) to Zhida 4 (1311)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sun Bojun 2011, P58 note #15. More on Beg Buqa, see YS j.22, he served as Manager of Governmental Affairs 平章政事 in both Central Secretariat 中書省 and Jiangze province 江浙行省. Hu Haifan 胡海帆, “Lushan Basibazi moya tike ji zuochengxiang Biebuhua shengping kaoshu” 廈山八思巴字摩崖題刻暨左丞相別不花生平考述, Dongnan wenhua 東南文化 2007 4: 77-80.


Shi Jinbo translates 都羅尗尗尗尗尗尗 (Duluowulangchitiemu’er) 都羅烏浪吃鐵木爾. 都羅 都羅 is a Tangut surname. Shi 2005.

Duan Yuquan, 292-93; Shi Jinbo, Xi Xia fojiao shilue 西夏佛教史略, 1988: ch.9.
Guanzhuba 管主八 (Tib. bka’-’gyur-pa), also known as Master Guangfu 廣福大師, was a Monk Registrar 僧錄 at Songjiang prefecture 松江府. He sponsored the second printing of 30 sets from 1302 to 1305. He was an enthusiastic donor and influential clergy official that not only sponsored the printing of the Hangzhou version Hexi canon, but also Chinese canons, and other non-canonical Buddhist texts and Tibetan Buddhist texts. He received assistance from his Chinese friends Du Yuan 杜源 and Li Cheng 李成. The main print-implementing monks 干辦印經僧 were Kehai 可海 and Chang Jixiang 昌吉祥, whose names suggest that they were possibly Tanguts. The collators and censors were Śramaṇa Haiyun 沙門海雲 of Qinzhou 秦州, Śramaṇa Yiju 沙門義琚 of Gongchang 龔昌府, and Śramaṇa Keyi 沙門克已 of Bao’en Monastery 報恩寺 of Jizhou 吉州路. In Dade 1 (1297), the carving and printing of the Qisha canon resumed in Suzhou. Guanzhuba, together with the official Zhang Lu (who was also the patron for the Puning canon,) were the main patron for the revival of the Qisha canon. Guanzhuba

---

304 Guanzhuba also sponsored the print of the Puning and Qisha canons for 50 sets. Sun Bojun claims that Guanzhuba was not a person but rather a title in Tibetan bka’-’gyur-pa so which means the master of Tripitaka, that referring to Shen Mingren. See Sun, “Yuankan hexizang kaobu,” 61-3. I disagree on this argument, since Guanzhuba also had a son Guan Nianzhenchila 管輦真吃刺 who also served clergy office in Songjiang after the death of Guanzhuba. Wang Guowei 王國維, “Yuan kanben Xixiawen Huayanjing caijuan ba” 元刊本西夏文華嚴經殘卷跋, Guantang jilin 觀塘集林 4: Shi Jinbo, “Zhongguo cang Xixiawen wenxian xintan” 中国藏西夏文文献新探, Xixiaxue 西夏学 2007(2):1051. Guanzhuba also sponsored the print of esoteric sūtras 秘密經, Chinese sūtras including Huayan jing (Avatamsaka Sūtra) 華嚴經, Lianghuang baochan 梁皇寶懺, Huayan daochang chanyi 華嚴道場懺儀 in total over 100 sets; Yankou shishi yigu 柚口施食儀軌 over 1000 sets, over thirty Tibetan sūtras, and over a thousand Tibetan mantras. Duan Yuquan, 289-91

also served as the director of the Tripitaka Office in Qisha Yansheng Monastery, overseeing the production of the Qisha canon.\(^\text{306}\)

As Guanzhuba stated in his vow statement attached to a colophon, the original goal was to distribute the canon to the Buddhist monasteries in the Hexi region, including routes of Ningxia 宁夏 (today Yinchuan 银川, Ningxia) and Yongchang 永昌 (today Yongchang, Gansu), and Wenshu (“Mañjuśrī”) Relic Pagoda 文殊舍利塔 in Shazhou 沙州 (today Dunhuang, Gansu).\(^\text{307}\) Although major Buddhist leaders and officials of Xi Xia were forced to move to political centers such as Dadu, and regions remote from the former Xi Xia territory, there were still Buddhist monasteries and congregations remaining. Most Tangut script sūtras printed in the Yuan, therefore, were distributed to the former Xi Xia territory. None of the Tangut script sūtras were found in the Jiangnan region, which today includes Hangzhou. The locations in which the Hangzhou version Tangut script sūtras were found, including Dunhuang (North Area of Mogao Grotto 莫高窟北區), Lingwu 靈武 in Ningxia, Kara Khoto 黑水城 in west Inner Mongolia, Famen Temple 法門寺 in Xi’an, and Chongshan Temple 崇善寺 in Taiyuan, were all in Northern China within or close to the former Xi Xia territory. It is noteworthy that all the colophons’ texts or stamps that mentioned Guanzhuba were in Chinese rather than Tangut scripts. Guanzhuba might be illiterate of the Tangut script, so his intentions of sponsoring the Hexi canon in Hangzhou were not for the readership of himself and


\(^{307}\) See colophon to *Dazong dixuan wenben lun* 大宗地玄文本論 of the Qisha Canon 碧砂藏. Other extant Tangut sūtras which contain sponsor name Guan Zhuba, including but not limited to, *Longshu Pusa wei Chantuojia wang shuofa yaojie* 龍樹菩薩為禪陀迦王說法要偈, excavated in Dunhuang north area 敦煌北區, collected at Dunhuang Research Academy 敦煌研究院 (#B159:26) and Tenri Library respectively.
Tangut diasporas in Jiangnan, but to be directly distributed to the Xi Xia territory – the Hexi region. This may reflect the hypothesis that since the mid-Yuan period in the fourteenth century, Tangut descendants mostly already lost skills of reading and writing in Tangut except Tangut monks. The rich local resources and the strong foundation of commercial printing in Hangzhou and its hinterland, which was largely monopolized by the White Cloud sect, determined the production efficiency and affordability of the Hexi canon in Hangzhou, rather than having the canon made in the Hexi region.\textsuperscript{308} Guanzhuba was survived by his son Guan Nianzhenchila (Tib. Rin-chen-grags) 管鞏真吃剌, who was also an enthusiastic patron of Buddhist canons, mainly the newly revived Qisha canon.\textsuperscript{309}

(Figure 10)

The Hangzhou version Tangut Hexi canon was close to the Puning canon in many ways. In terms of the frontispiece pictures, Susan Huang claims the mutual influence of several Chinese canons in the Song-Yuan period with the Tangut canon in the Yuan. This trend of Sino-Tangut visual art in Buddhist books was even shown in the succeeding Buddhist canons in the Ming period.\textsuperscript{310} The Puning and Hexi canons, and some other Confucian texts printed in Hangzhou, shared same engravers 設工 who carved multilingual printing blocks and made profits through commercial print, such as Chen Zheng

\textsuperscript{308} This long distance business model could be compared to the making and trade of blue and white porcelain made in Jingdezhen for Persia?

\textsuperscript{309} Cui Hongfen, 28; Sun 2011:60-1; Li Fuhua 李富華 and He Mei 何梅, Hanwen fojiao dazangjing yanjiu 漢文佛教大藏經研究, 295.

\textsuperscript{310} Susan Shih-shan Huang, “Reassessing Printed Buddhist frontispieces from Xi Xia,” Zhejiang University Journal of Art and Archaeology, 2014(1):129-182.
For the Hangzhou version Tangut canon, there are no Tangut names of engravers appearing in any extant sūtras. This shows the local foundation of block making and connections in the production of the Puning and Hexi canons, which also had all Chinese block engravers. Also, there is speculation that the same group of people or driving force always focused on the production of one canon in Jiangnan at one time, including engravers and local patrons. The carving of the Puning canon and major printing ended in 1290, and the carving of the Hexi canon in Hangzhou started in 1293. Printing of the Qisha canon resumed in 1297. Lucille Chia suggests that the main engravers moved from the carving of the Puning canon to the Hexi and Qisha canons, one project at a time. Both Chia and Barend ter Haar suggests that the majority of local patrons favored the resumed Qisha canon right after the completion of the Puning canon. \(^{312}\) I disagree with this hypothesis, because this argument not only limits the involved people as one certain group, but also ignores the commercial print of other non-Buddhist texts in Hangzhou at the same time. I shall discuss the major local lay patron of the Puning canon, and their relations to those of the Qisha canon, in Chapter 4. (In addition, in terms of commercial printing and its technology, current scholarship agrees that some existing Tangut script sūtras are in fact wooden movable type print 木活字印刷, presumably belonging to the Yuan Hangzhou version. \(^{313}\) In two cases, there are textual records on these Tangut sūtras that clearly indicate the names on movable type

---


\(^{312}\) Lucille Chia 184; ter Haar 2001:140-7.

\(^{313}\) Heijdra and Cao, on the Tangut script Garland Sūtra volume 77 of the Princeton copy
blocks were used for printing, including suizi 碎字 and huozi 活字. The Puning canon has no extant evidence of using the movable type print, but the Tangut canon does. If this is in the Yuan Hangzhou version, it means that the Tangut diaspora brought their printing technology. There is no evidence of Chinese script Buddhist text printed by movable type in the Yuan period. Even if the Hangzhou version Tangut canon used movable type, all block engravers were Chinese. Therefore, different canons including the Puning, Hexi and Qisha canons could still hire the same group of engravers.

Wholesale Buyers of the Puning Canon

The state sponsorship of the Puning canon printing helped it earn its good reputation. The White Cloud sect’s political and social networks helped spread the word of the Puning canon among prominent monks, and established information networks among famous monasteries who wished to acquired new sets of the Buddhist canon. After the Song-Yuan crisis, many newly revived temples and monasteries received state funds or new location donations and expanded their buildings as well as monastic collections, especially Buddhist canons as the main sacred material collection. The Puning canon was fit for the market that both the state, locals, and monasteries urgently needed. Convenient communication and transportation pathways thanks to the new relay

314 Colophon of Shenghui dao bi’an yaoyu xuejin xianqianjie zhuangyan lunxian song 勝慧到彼岸要語學 禁現前解莊嚴論顯前解莊嚴論顯 (National Library of China), ”御前注補印活字都案頭監,” and colophon of Avatamsaka Sūtra 大方廣佛華嚴經 (Kyoto University Library), ”都發願令雕碎字勾管為印者都羅慧性，復共一切發願助隨喜者，皆當共成佛道。” Shi Jinbo and Yasen Wushou’er, 2000. The dating of the sūtra to Xi Xia or the Yuan is still under debate. Dating back to Xi Xia thus eleventh century will challenge the record of the Korean Buddhist text Jikji (1377) as the earliest movable type print in the world. So the debate involved national emotions rather than pure scholarly debate. But the fact that these remaining copies are movable type print is for sure.
station, road and canal networks in the Yuan empire helped spread the Puning canon’s fame, as well as the ordering and shipping of the canon.

The Puning canon was the best-selling Buddhist publication in the Yuan period, due to its low price and efficiency of printing multiple copies in a short time, compared to other canons in the Yuan. In the Yuan dynasty, there were the Hongfa canon printed in Dadu and the Qisha canon printed in the Jiangnan region. Buyers, however, mostly monasteries, still went for the Puning canon. Many of the buyers were famous monasteries in North China. The shipping of large volumes of the canon was made possible through water transportation, especially the newly dredged Grand Canal that connects North and South China from Dadu to Hangzhou. The kind deed of purchasing the whole set of the printed canon over long distance was regarded as “seeking sūtra” 求經, a fine act in gaining of Buddhist merit. Long distance sūtra seeking has been a tradition among East Asian monastic Buddhists, such as the legend of Xuanzang’s journey to India and Japanese monks’ journeys to China. After the completion of the Puning canon’s block carving in 1290, the canon was printed until the end of the Yuan, until the blocks were destroyed in the fire of the Puning Monastery during the Yuan-Ming crisis. In this section, I include all current available records of major canon buyers. These records are from local gazetteers and stone inscriptions in monasteries.

(1) King Chungseon 충선왕 (Ch. Zhongxuan wang 忠宣王, Mong. Iǰirbuqa, 1275–1325, r. 1298 and 1308–1313) of Koryŏ Korea, was an enthusiastic patron of Buddhism in

315 The Hongfa canon 弘法藏 in Dadu was expensive, “Zhengzhou Xingyang xian Donglin Dajue Chansi cangjing ji” 鄭州滎陽縣洞林大覺禪寺藏經記.
Yuan China. In Huangqing 1 (1314), he sponsored the print of 50 sets of the Puning canon, and distributed them to famous monasteries. “屆古杭印造大藏尊經五十藏，施諸名刹。” These sets sponsored by King Chungseon were called the “vassal king print copy” 藩王印本 by Chinese scholarship. 317

(2) In Zhiyuan 26 (1289), Lingyan Chan Monastery 靈岩禪寺 in Changqing 長青 of Shandong purchased twenty sets of the Puning canon. One inscription about the establishment of the Dragon Collection Hall 龍藏殿 at the monastery shows that the transportation was through water 遂購而航致之, and that the boats went through the Yangzi and Huai Rivers 浮江逾淮. These twenty sets were approximately five thousand volumes in over ten thousand boxes 五千余卷滿二十藏，為函一萬有奇. These sets were distributed to ten monasteries affiliated with Lingyan Monastery. These monasteries also received imperial patronage with decrees at the same time 凡所統十大寺, 率以全藏授，仍請衛法璽書，寺給一通. 318 According to three Yuan steles erected at Lingyan Monastery attributed to its abbot Tongxin 同新 (1220-1285), Tongxin personally led dozens of disciples to Hangzhou to purchase the canon and performed pilgrimages to famous monasteries en route 公渡江親干. 319 Tongxin’s trip to the south was described as

316 “Gaoliguo Xiangyuangong zhitian bei” 高麗國相元公置田碑, Li Zhu 李翥, Huiyinsi zhi 慧因寺志, j.7.
318 Zhang Qiyan 張起岩, “Dayuan Taishan Lingyansi chuangjian longzangdian ji” 大元泰山靈岩寺創建龍藏殿記, Beijing tushuguan cang Zhongguo lidai shike taben huibian 北京圖書館藏中國歷代石刻拓本彙編 vol.48: Jingci shizhi 淨慈寺志 j.16.
319 Tongxin 同新 (1220-1285), served abbots at Anshan Monastery in Dadu 大都安山寺, and Lingyan Monastery 靈岩寺 (appointed by Phags-pa). Close friend with a high official in Shandong Yelu Xiyi 耶律
harsh and he “experienced cold and hot” 經寒暑而幸獲焉, and the stele says the trip was as legendary as the story of white horse that carried sūtra to Luoyang from India in the very beginning of Buddhism’s arrival in China. Fortunately, Tongxin received financial support from Mr. Zhang 張公 (son of Minister of State Affairs 尚書子) at the Household Administration of the Heir Apparent 皇太子府詹事院, including good horses and carriages, and over ten thousand guan of money 良駟元寶數萬貫文.\(^\text{320}\)

(3) A stele erected at Daming Monastery 大明寺 of the Kaiyuan sect 開元宗 in Mingyue Mountain 明月山 in Henan in 1293 recorded a group of monks led by Miaqing 妙慶 from the monastery going to the Puning monastery to purchase seven sets of the canon in 1291.\(^\text{321}\)

(4) In 1303, Shengying Monastery 勝因寺 of the Great Dhūta sect 大頭陀教 in Dadu 貝都 purchased the canon from Puning Monastery.\(^\text{322}\) The head of the sect and abbot of the monastery, Xue’an Puguang 雪庵溥光 heard that the canon blocks in west Zhe (referring to the Puning canon) were in good quality, so he dispatched his fellow monks Kong’an 空庵 and Puzhao 普照 and his disciple Ning Daoqian 靈人寧道 to Puning Monastery to

\(^{320}\) There are three steles mentioning the sūtra purchase A. 新公禪師塔銘 in 1285; B. 大都鞍山慧聚寺月泉新公長老塔銘并序 in 1291, P119; C. 普覺禪師廣公提點壽碑 in 1294, 資料『五燈全書』卷四十八.

\(^{321}\) “Mingyueshan Damingsi xinyin zangjing ji” 明月山大明寺新印藏經記, 河內縣志 j.3 Taipei:Chengwen chubanshe, 894-900; Liu Xiao 劉曉, “Yuan Da Kaiyuan yizong chutan” 元大開元一宗初探, 中國史研究, 2008(1):120.

\(^{322}\) Yan Fu 閻復, “Shenyingsi bei” 勝因寺碑 in 1303, 齊天府志 j.7; Su Bai 宿白, 藏傳佛教寺院考古, 230-1.
purchase the canon. “聞藏經板木在浙右，且多良工，遣法弟空庵，普照，門人寧道
遷取經于餘杭普寧寺”

(5) On a stele found in West Liangzhou 西涼州 (today, Wuwei 武威, Gansu), it was also
recorded that a Tangut Buddhist Teacher 講主 named Mr. Min 敏公 went to Hangzhou
to purchase sūtras (5,048 volumes) in 1286. Monk Min also visited the famous Lingyin
Monastery 靈隱寺 and many renowned Buddhist monks in Hangzhou on his trip. It is
also said that his trip for sūtra purchase was ordered by an imperial decree from Khubilai
and a decree from the State Preceptor.

(6) The abbot of Qianming Monastery 乾明寺 (or, Qianming Nunnery 乾明尼寺) on
Miaogao Mountain 妙高峰 in Ruizhou route 瑞州路, nun Miaozhi 尼 妙智, received a
set of the Puning canon of 5481 volumes 《大藏经》五千四百八十一卷, from Branch
Censor-in-chief Zhang Lu 行御史臺中丞 張閭. Zhang at that time was also in charge of
the Branch Office of the Commission for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs Xing Xuanzheng
Yuan in Hangzhou. As mentioned in section 1 of this chapter, according to the 1313
colophon by the sect leader Shen Mingren, Zhang himself was a major patron and

323 “Siguan” 寺觀, Xijinshi jiyi 析津志輯軼.
324 Gao Hui 高輝 and Yu Guangjian 于光建, “Yuan Mingong jiangzhu Jiangnan qiufa gongdebei kaoshi”
元《敏公講主江南求法功德碑》考釋, Xixia yanjiu 西夏研究 2012.3. “Chugong ci Longxingsi
yongyetian ji” 儲宮賜龍興寺永業田記, Yao Sui 姚燧, Mu’an ji 牧庵集 j.9, P18, it mentioned a Buddhist
teacher 講主 named Minggong 明公 who was close to Dampa. Not sure if this Minggong and Mingong
were the same person. Buddhist Teacher 講主 is a special clergy post in the Yuan. In 1288, the Yuan
government established 36 imperial Buddhist teaching studios 佛教御講所 in Jianghuai 江淮 province, so
Buddhist Teachers were appointed to be affiliated to these studios. Many post holders were monks of Ci’en
School 慈恩宗 from North China.
supporter of the Puning canon. At the time Zhang visited Miaozhi, he was about to resume his new post as Left Chancellor at the Central Secretariat 中書左丞, so he gave Miaozhi the canon as a present. The canon was delivered directly from Hangzhou to Qianming Monastery.\(^\text{325}\)

(7) Overseas buyers: Japanese monasteries purchased the Puning canon, such as Zojo-ji in Tokyo. Its collection became the main source for chapter 4. However, there is no direct record of Japanese monks or monastic groups coming to Hangzhou to purchase the Puning canon during the Yuan dynasty.

In conclusion, as the most popular Buddhist canon and best commercial print seller in the Yuan, the Puning canon attracted a wide range of wholesale buyers all over the Yuan empire. Many of them were prominent Buddhist monasteries in North China, or even overseas. The Puning canon marked the legitimate status of the White Cloud sect as a Buddhist sect and raised its reputation, which was distinct from the sect’s other social deeds for local interests. On the other hand, the successful sale business of the Puning canon and the assistance of convenient water transportation in the Yuan empire helped the White Cloud sect built connections with famous state sponsored Buddhist temples

\(^{325}\) Qianming Monastery, sometimes also called Ganming Monastery 干明寺. “Ruizhou lu Bei Ganmingsi ji” 瑞州路北干明寺記, Zhao Mengfu 趙孟頫, Songxuezhai ji 松雪齋集 j.7; “Ruizhou lu Miaogao feng Bei Ganmingsisi ji” 瑞州路妙高峰北干明尼寺記, Ren Shilin 任士林 Songxiang ji 松鄉集 j.1. The abbot Miaozhi’s connection with the Yuan court and officials started after her disciples Fayu 法玉 and Guiheng 貴亨 made a trip to Dadu, for the imperial audience of Empress Dowager and palace courtesans, in order to complain about the abuse of power of local clergy officials on the congregation of Qianming Monastery. The monastery thus received official supports from Zhang Lu 行御史台中丞張閭公, Dalagai 宣政院參議答剌加公 (達爾嘉依公), and Dampa 大護國仁王寺瞻八大師, who also bestowed Miaozhi 妙智 the title Master Yuanjue 圓覺大師.
and monks remotely, in addition to its connections with officials and monks in the court in Dadu. The White Cloud sect, though a regional movement, had nationwide influence through its textual production and network building.

**Li Huiyue: An Enthusiastic Tangut Patron of Chinese Canons in Jiangnan**

Among the buyers of the Puning canon, most were famous monasteries and renowned religious and political elites. They were from many different non-Chinese ethnic groups, and many of them lived before the Mongol conquest. There is a case of a Tangut monastic patron who donated money to print the Puning and Qisha canons, who was unknown in Western scholarship. He was a patron of buying sūtras for public circulation rather than for his own possession. There are only records of his personal donations, but no mention of any canon purchase activities by his home monastery. He provided donations by himself, as shown in his Buddhist vow in extant sūtra colophons to be discussed shortly. (His historical significance:) He represented a unique case of a non-Chinese (Tangut) Buddhist monk with no government background, financially supported/sponsored the print of the Chinese Puning canon, in the Yuan dynasty. This shows that the Puning canon’s market, and the audience of the White Cloud movement, covers non-official non-Chinese Buddhist monks as well. (previous coverage was Chinese monks, Chinese lay activists, and non-Chinese official monks.)

Li Huiyue 李惠月 / 李慧月, secular name Li Liyi 李立義, dharma name Huiyue, was originally from Longxi 隴西 (today Longxi, Gansu) in the former Xi Xia territory. He lived during the Xia-Yuan transitional period. He became a monk at the
Fozu Cloister 佛祖院 of Helan Mountain 賀蘭山 (near the former Xi Xia capital Xingqing), was also known as the Chan Master Bright 光明禅师 of Wanshou Chan Monastery 萬壽禪寺 on Zhongnan Mountain 終南山 in Chang’an 長安. He used to serve as a clergy official in Fujian 福建 and Jiaxing 嘉興, under the Mongol government. He sponsored the print of 12 sets of the canon. The extant copies of the sūtras suggest that most of them belong to the Puning canon. \(^{326}\) The discovery of Li’s identity and his canon patronage was all due to the colophons attached to the remaining sūtras. Scholars including Li Jining 李際寧, Shi Jinbo 史金波 and Ogawa Kan’ichi 小川貫弌 have discussed his case. \(^{327}\)

Li Jining, in his research, spots 14 extant sūtras in China and Japan that have stamps or colophons of Li Huiyue. \(^{328}\) All of these sūtras are in Chinese script, 9 are printed, and 5 are manuscripts of gilded scripts 泥金寫本 on Prussian blue paper 紺青紙. Among 9 printed copies, 6 have been identified as from the Puning canon, and 3 are of unclear canon version. None of them belongs to the Qisha canon.

According my examination of the Chinese script **Bukong juansuo tuoluoni jing** (volume upper, middle) 不空羂索心呪王經 上中 from the Chongshan Monastery 崇善寺 (Taiyuan, Shanxi) collection at the National Library of China, have both stamps and

---

\(^{326}\) Li Jining 李際寧, *Zhongguo banben wenhua congshu: Fojing banben* 中國版本文化叢書:佛經版本, 2002. According to Li, the 12 sets include both the Puning and Qisha canons. I question this argument, because all 14 extant sūtras (including printed and gilded manuscript) that Li listed in the paper, none of them had been clearly identified by him as from the Qisha canon.

\(^{327}\) Shi Jinbo, 1988; Li Jining, “Guanyu Xi Xia kan hanwenban dazangjing” 閱於“西夏刊漢文版大藏經,” *Wenxiàn* 文獻, 2000(1); Ogawa Kan’ichi 小川貫弌, 光明禅师施入经典とその扉絵--元白云宗版大藏経の一考察, 龍谷史論, 1943(30).

\(^{328}\) Li Jining 2000.
The first stamp appears on the first page of the sūtra, right next to the sūtra title, “Abbot śramaṇa Fuzhen marked, Shifang Pujiu Chan Monastery” 十方普救禪寺常住住持嗣祖沙門福真紀. The second stamp appears on the last page of the sūtra, saying “Chan Master Bright Li ‘great merit’” 李光明禪師. Some other extant sūtras also have the same two stamps, such as Śāriputrā Abhidharma 舍利佛阿毗曇論 volume 12 of the Puning canon, also from the Chongshan Monastery collection.

The colophon of the sūtra Bukong juansuo tuoluoni jing 包空羂索心咒王經 includes a framed Chinese inscription, and framed Tangut inscription with a lotus decoration. The Chinese inscription says,

Li Liyi of Hexi, Chan Master Bright “Huiyue,” donated his own fortune, printed twelve sets of Buddhist canon, and distributed to all directions. General audience can see and hear these (canons), (wish) all the lives can see the Buddha and all the generations can hear (the recitation) of the canon.

河西李立义光明禪師惠月，捨體己財，印造一十二大藏經，散施諸方，普願見聞，生生見佛 世世聞經者□□.

(Figures 11 and 12)

(Figures 15, 16, and 17)

329 Bukong juansuo xinzhou wangjing 包空羂索心咒王經, 3 volumes, National Library of China rare book collection #SB17968; I have examined the sūtra in person, with Dr. Shi Jinbo together, and obtained images, in August 2016.

330 Pujiu Chan Monastery is located in Taijian Mountain 太尖山 in Quwo county 曲沃縣 in south Shanxi. It is likely that the sūtra was purchased by Fuzhen at Pujiu Chan Monastery, and later it was moved to the higher ranked Chongshan Monastery in Taiyuan, where the sūtra was found in the early twentieth century.

331 Former scholarship all mistakenly see 白 as Tangut scripts of Huiyue. However, they mean “great merit” 大德, a normal meritorious phrase for a Buddhist monk, such as “eminent monk, great merit” 高僧大德. Former scholarship all mistakenly see 白 as Tangut scripts of Huiyue. However, they mean “great merit” 大德, a normal meritorious phrase for a Buddhist monk, such as “eminent monk, great merit” 高僧大德.

332 Ogawa Kan’ichi 1943.

333 Notice that 义 is the simplified character for 義. The first appearance of the simplified 义 was in the Yuan period manuscript book 元抄本 Jingben tongsu xiaoshuo 京本通俗小說. This proves the dating of the sūtra and stamp to the Yuan period. 普 is not clear, might be 善. □□ might be 也.

192
The Tangut inscription says,

The Tangut Kingdom Helan Mountain Fozu Cloister supervising former Chan monk of congregation, Li Huiyue, a disciple of Pingshang Chongzhao Chan Master.

Because of paying the four gratitude, print twelve sets of Buddhist canon and fifty-four sets of Garland Sūtra.

Also one set of Garland Sūtra in gold and silver scripts, Sūtra of Perfect Enlightenment, Lotus Sūtra, Heart Sūtra, Sūtra of Bodhisattva Injunctions, and Awakening of Faith, then field.

The frontispiece of the same sūtra was an illustration of the teaching of Buddha with an audience consisting of celestial beings and earthly beings including emperor, prince, officials and monks. Among them, there is a sole inscription attached to one monk, reading “Supervisor Master Yongfu” 總統永福大師. This title refers to Yang Lianzhenjia 楊璉真伽. The solo appearance of Yang’s title on the image but no other

---

335 faded character 聖僧 could be 聖順, 聖僧 昔僧 “congregation,” here it refers to monk; 原 is the transliteration of Chinese character yuan, it can mean 圓 “garden” or 原 “formal.”
336 faded character 因 could be 錄 緣.
337 Shi Jinbo’s translation add chaoxie 抄寫 “hand copying” for the gold and silver script Huayan one set, but I cannot find it in the Tangut text. 花凈 means “lotus” 蓮花, refers to the Lotus Sūtra. 福田, (auxiliary word) field, may refers to Futian 福田 (Jp. fukuden Sk. punya ksāra) “the field of good fortune”, which is a common concept in Buddhism. Here it might reflect Li Huiyue’s wish to advance to that field through the good merit of printing Buddhist canons. Sūtra of Bodhisattva Injunctions 菩薩戒經 is the lower juan 下卷 of Brahmajala Sūtra 梵網經.
higher rank persons’ names shows his close ties with the printing project of the Puning canon and the White Cloud sect. Yang’s image with his title printed in the Buddha’s teaching illustration became one of the standard frontispieces of the Puning canon. It shows Yang’s key role of supervising the making of the canon. It is unclear whether Li Huiyue’s sponsorship connected to Yang. In addition, in the image, Yang and his follower on the left do not have halos. Three officials with Song (Xi Xia?) period crowns have no halos either, but the emperor, prince and the main monk bowing in front of the Buddha all have halos. They could be deceased people. The monk might be state preceptor Dampa or imperial preceptor Phags-pa (more likely Dampa due to his Tangut background). However, the emperor and prince do not look like Mongols. They might be the rulers of the former Xi Xia Empire due to their Chinese / Xi Xia style crowns, and thus the illustration is possibly an anachronism showing the Xia and Yuan era people in one scene together. If this assumption is proven, it indicates that the Tangut sponsors including Yang Lianzhenjia made efforts in both visual and textual ways to mark their national identity and culture, based on the nostalgia of the past prosperous Buddhist state Xi Xia and the rulers who were passionate about Buddhism. Overall, the frontispiece illustration shows the influence from Tangut Buddhist art in the visual art of the Puning canon.

(Figures 13 and 14)

A colophon in Chinese of a sūtra in the Qisha canon includes the brief biography of Li Huiyue.

Sūtra printing śramaṇa Chan Master Bright, surname Li, is a native of Longxi. He was kidnapped at the age of seven, and “left home” (took
Buddhist vow) at the age of nine. He formally acknowledged Chan Master Cangming (or, Zangming) in Helan Mountain as his teacher. (Li) served as an official in Fuzhou route. He donated his own fund, raised great vow of compassion, in order to print twelve sets of Buddhist canon, demonstrate the twelve vows of Bhaisajyaguru, tonsure sixteen monks, and propose sixteen contemplations of Amitābha. The accumulated merit, up (to heaven) repays four heavy graces, and down (on earth) saves three evil miseries. For those who highly chanted rejoice, all shall receive the supreme fruit. Gengyin Year, Zhiyuan 27 (1290), First Moon,  Day. Sūtra printing śramaṇa Chan Master Bright marked. Coordinator and śramaṇa of succeeding ancestry Miaojing, sūtra and treatise Lecturer śramaṇa Zuchang, sūtra examiner and monastic supervisor Yunwu, and also sūtra examiner śramaṇa Zhengyou.338

Another colophon of a gilded manuscript 泥金寫本 sūtra, records more details of Li’s biography.

Abbot of Wanshou Chan Monastery in Zhongnan Mountain of Chang’an, Chan Master Bright Huiyue, is a native of Longxi. He was tonsured and wore dark garment at the age of nine. He once lived in a monastery in Helan Mountain, and acknowledged the great Chan elder Daoming [different from Cangming/Zangming in the previous colophon] as his initial teacher. (Huiyue) consulted (his teacher) day and night, and received the permission to disburse (the teaching). At first he travelled to Saibei (North China), and later he visited Jiangnan. He served as a clergy official in Fujian route, and also a head Monk Registrar in Jiaxing prefecture. He concerned about the polluted quality of dark garment (i.e. monks), and worries about the difficulty of encountering dharma for commoners. So he donated his own fund, kindly made offerings, in order to print twelve sets of Buddhist canon, tonsure twenty-eight monks, donate 108 dharma garments, and hand copy 81 volumes of gold and silver Sūtra of Perfect Enlightenment and Awakening of Faith. (He) wrote 28 copies of Lotus Sūtra, and several sets of Brahmajala Sūtra and Diamond Sūtra.

338 Ru lengqie jing 入楞伽經 j.1, Yingyin Qisha zang 影印禪砂藏, Shanghai:1935. I doubt this sūtra might actually belong to the Puning canon, since in Zhiyuan 27 (1290) the Qisha canon has not yet been resumed.
From these (he) accumulated auspice and kindness, and widely connected with good causes. Repaying endlessly for the graces of the emperor and the Buddha, and demonstrating correct principles for the ancestors’ willing and doctrinal meaning. Teachers, seniors and parents, all together board the boat of compassion of Pratītā. All the lives under the realm of dharma, and all sail on the ocean of truth of Vairocana. Zhiyuan 28 (1291), Xinmao Year, fourth moon, eighth day, Chan Master Bright Huiyue cautiously written.

These two biographies provide background information of Li Huiyue. He witnessed the fall of his homeland the Xi Xia Empire, and the rise of the Mongol Empire. He had wide travel experience in both North and South China. He served office first in Fuzhou and then Jiaxing. Jiaxing is close to Hangzhou and the Puning Monastery, so Li should have been able to make connections with local Tangut clergy officials in the Jiangnan area such as Guanzhuba and Yang Lianzhenjia. After his office services, Li worried about the situation of the overpopulation of Buddhist monks and their disobedience of vinaya, and ironically the difficulty for people to encounter real dharma teachings. Therefore, he spent his own money to donate for canon printing, sūtra hand copying, and tonsuring (converting) monks.

339 Collection of Moriya Kōzō 守屋孝藏, there are 4 gilded manuscript sūtras of the Yuan dynasty 元代泥金寫本佛經. 3 of them have this same colophon of Li Huiyue, Kokyō zuroku: Moriya Kōzō-shi shūshū 古経圖録: 守屋孝蔵氏蒐集. Kyōto: Kokuritsu Hakubutsukan, 1964; Kanda Kiichirō 神田喜一郎, Kanda Kiichirō zenshū 神田喜一郎全集 no.3. Kyōto: Dōhōsha, 1984.
Although his title was the abbot of Wanshou Chan Monastery on Zhongnan Mountain of Chang’an, his physical residence by the time of donation might have been elsewhere, possibly in Jiangnan, perhaps Jiaxing or Hangzhou. If estimating that the time Li was kidnapped at the age of 7 as year 1227 during the Mongols’ conquest of Xi Xia, then in 1290 and 1291 when he made the donations he was already over age 70. He was not known in other primary sources, except these sūtra colophons, so he was not prominent among early Yuan Buddhist monks in terms of teachings, disciples or political influence. Also, his home monastery, Wanshou Monastery in Zhongnan Mountain, was more a mountain hermitage outside of Chang’an than a formal monastery. So as an ordinary but highly passionate monk, Li might have donated all his life savings at an old age for these good deeds of making sūtras and converting qualified monks. His donations and wishes might have also recalled his nostalgia of the golden age of Buddhism under the Buddhist patron state of Xi Xia. However, his sponsored canons were not in Tangut script, but Chinese. By Zhiyuan 30 (1293) the year the Hangzhou version Hexi canon started, Li might already have passed away or left the Jiangnan region, since his last surviving colophon is in Zhiyuan 28 (1291), so the newly started Tangut script canon could never reach the generous Tangut donor Li Huiyue.

Conclusion

During the life of the White Cloud sect in the Yuan, the printing business of the Puning canon was one of its major enterprises, in addition to other sect activities of Chinese lay adherents in the local society. The canon printing business helped build the
sect’s networks with the upper class, including officials, monks and state leaders, as shown in this chapter, and with the lower class, including local donors and lay patrons in rural towns, as shown in the next chapter. The White Cloud sect, as an official publisher, earned its reputation as a legitimate Buddhist sect, while maintaining its local activism, since the majority of the canon producers were local laborers. The leader of the White Cloud sect was also the director of the Tripitaka Office in Puning Monastery. The canon printing project was first initiated by monks, especially abbot Dao’an, but later it was transferred to the leadership of lay people, especially Shen Mingren. Regardless of the leadership change, the sect and its printing cohort always kept close connections with the emperor and the court, based on the official policy and financial support received. The project itself was a privately initiated project, but it received permission from the emperor and support from high rank officials and monks. Non-Chinese elites were the major patrons of the Chinese Puning canon. This shows the popularity of printed Buddhist texts as cultural and spiritual capital in the Yuan period, which attracted attention and investments from powerful political elites.

Among these powerful non-Chinese elites who favored the canon and assisted its making, Tangut diaspora monks played a significant role. There was even a new Tangut script made in Hangzhou, called the Hexi canon, right after the completion of the Puning canon blocks. As for the most important Tangut patrons of the Puning and Hexi canon printing projects, there were Tangut clergy officials such as Dampa in the court, Yang Lianzhenjia in the Jiangnan regional office, and Guanzhuba in the Songjiang prefectural office. There were also Tangut monks who sponsored and purchased the completed canon sets, such as Mr. Min and Li Huiyue. The Tangut canon and the copies of the
Puning and Qisha canons sponsored or purchased by these Tangut diaspora activists were mostly distributed to the territory of the former Xi Xia Empire. This demonstrates the continuous growth of Buddhism in the region, and the advancement of commercial printing in Hangzhou as well as the convenience of cross-regional transportation in the Yuan Empire.

When talking about transportation, most long-distance buyers of the Puning canon chose waterways, especially the Grand canal. These buyers were mostly from North China, except one case in Jiangxi, and overseas Korean and Japanese buyers. The Northern Chinese buyers were large monasteries who purchased one or multiple copies of the canon, from Puning Monastery’s canon wholesale. The trips to purchase canons in Hangzhou were often led by a monastery’s chief abbot, who in general venerated the new collection of the canon as a significant stock for elevating the monastery’s status. The canon purchasing trip was in fact a pilgrimage, in that monks from afar went to the most popular Buddhist text production center in Hangzhou and purchased the sacred object – the Buddhist canon - for their home monastery. The Puning canon had good sales records, and received a high reputation from its buyers. It became the most printed and most widely circulated Buddhist canon in the Yuan. The accomplishment of the successful selling of the Puning canon twisted the negative views toward the White Cloud sect, which was shown in Chapter 2. Canon printing and circulation were merit gaining and transferring practices, in which canon itself was a medium, and therefore the sect produced the promoted good merit.

The White Cloud sect retained its local connections during its canon making and marketing processes. This chapter talks about the relationship between the Tangut and
court aspects. The next chapter talks about the local aspect. The making of the Puning canon and its contents were largely based on the models of the previous Zifu and Yuanjue canons in Huzhou and the Qisha canon in Suzhou. The Hangzhou version of the Tangut Hexi canon was also connected to the Puning and Qisha canons, in terms of using Chinese engravers, canon structure and contents, and textual and visual features such as the similar frontispiece illustrations. The Hexi canon also used the movable type printing technology of wood blocks. These phenomena of the canons’ mutual influence can be attributed to the major workers for the canon production, who were local artisans, artists, and craftsmen in the Jiangnan region centering around Hangzhou. There are overlapping names, suggesting that individuals worked for different canon printing projects including the Puning, Qisha, and Hexi canons. As for the other side of the local connection, local lay people and monks of private Buddhist institutions became small-scale patrons for individual sūtras of the Puning canon. I will discuss this in the next chapter.
Figure 2: Phags-pa transliteration of Sanskrit mantras in the Puning canon

Mizhou yuanyin wangsheng ji 密咒圓因往生集, Puning canon 普寧藏本
From Sun, Bojun 孫伯君, “Puning zang ben Mizhou yuanyin wangsheng ji de basiba (Phags-pa) zi zhuyin yanjiu” 普寧藏本《密咒圓因往生集》的八思巴字注音研究, Zhonghua wenshi luncong 中華文史論叢 2009.3:163-198.
Figure 3: Collating scene at the Wanshou Monastery
Collating scene at the Wanshou Monastery
Inscription on the left “都功德主江淮諸路釋教都總統永福大師楊璉真佳”
Inscription on the temple plaque “萬壽殿”
Avatamsaka Sūtra 大方廣佛華嚴經卷第七十三 臣三 Frontispiece; Qisha canon 磴砂藏
Figure 4: Collating scene at the Wanshou Monastery (part)
Collating scene at the Wanshou Monastery (part)
Inscription on the left “都功德主江淮諸路釋教都總統永福大師楊 煌真佳”
Inscription on the temple plaque “萬壽殿”
Avatamsaka Sūtra 大方廣佛華嚴經卷第七十三 臣三 Frontispiece; Qisha canon 磚砂藏
Figure 5: Translating scene in Xi Xia 西夏譯經圖
Translating scene in Xi Xia 西夏譯經圖
Xianzai xianjie qianfo mingjing 現在賢劫千佛名經, National Library of China
Figure 6: Translating scene in Xi Xia 西夏譯經圖 (part)
Translating scene in Xi Xia 西夏譯經圖 (part)
Xianzai xianjie qianfo mingjing 現在賢劫千佛名經, National Library of China
Figure 7: *Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing* (hereafter *Guoqu*), vow statement "發願文 (Part 1)"

*Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing* 過去莊嚴劫千佛名經, National Library of China (B11.052)

Figure 8: Guoqu, vow statement 發願文 (Part 2)
Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing 過去莊嚴劫千佛名經, National Library of China (B11.052)
Figure 9: *Guoqu*, vow statement 發願文 (Part 2), last Page

*Guoqu zhuangyanjie qianfo mingjing* 過去莊嚴劫千佛名經, National Library of China (B11.052)

Figure 10: Stamp of Guanzhuba on a Tangut sūtra fragment
Inscription “宣授松江府僧錄管主八謹施”
Stamp of Zhang Daqian 張大千 (1899-1983), inscription “三千大千”
G.155 Peald_6qR
Figure 11: *Bukong juansuo xinzhou wangjing* 不空羂索心呪王經 卷上中 (hereafter *Bukong*) cover, frontispiece, and first Page\textsuperscript{340}


\textsuperscript{340} The cover is wrong. It says that the sūtra name is *Chengjiu gongde jing* 成就功德經.
Figure 12: Stamp of monk Fuzhen, *Bukong* first page (part)

Inscription “十方普救禪寺常住住持嗣祖沙門 福真 記”

Figure 13: *Bukong, frontispiece (part)*

*Bukong juansuo xinzhou wangjing* 不空覇索心呪王經 [善本]: 三卷 National Library of China, (SB17968)
Figure 14: Image of Yang Lianzhenjia, *Bukong* frontispiece (part)
Inscription “Supervisor Master Yongfu” “總統永福大師”
Figure 15: *Bukong*, last Page, colophon

*Bukong juansuo xinzhou wangjing* 不空獶索心呪王經 [善本]: 三卷 National Library of China, (SB17968)
Figure 16: Stamp of Li Huiyue, *Bukong* last page (part)
Inscription “李徽 聃 光明禅师”
Stamp of Beijing Library (today National Library of China), inscription “北京圖書館藏”
Figure 17: Stamp of Li Huiyue, *Bukong colophon (part)*

Inscription “河西李立义光明禪師惠月捨體己財印造一十二大藏經散施諸方普願見聞生生見佛世世聞經者□□”

Figure 18: Stamp of Li Huiyue, *Bukong* colophon (part)

Inscription “不空羂索心呪王經 [善本] : 三卷 国家图书馆 China, (SB17968)
Chapter 4. Local Canon Patrons

Two donation colophons quote here:

“The Tripitaka Office of the Grand Puning Monastery of Nanshan in Hangzhou Route received, Bhikkhu Jingguan of Pujing Monastery of Wu Town of Yifeng Canton of Wucheng County in Huzhou Route, and cousin sister Quan Ershi daogu donated money to print, one volume of tripitaka. Merit repay for, deceased father Kao Tanyi chengshi, deceased mother Quan San niangzi, deceased father Quan Wusi daogong, deceased mother Zhong Shiwu niangzi, all accomplish the Buddhist fruition. -- Zhiyuan 19 (1282), fourth month, abbot Shi Ruyi signed.”

杭州路南山大普寧寺大藏經局伏承 湖州路烏程縣移風鄉烏鎮普靜寺 比丘淨觀 同表妹全二十道姑捐財刊開 大藏尊經一卷 功德報薦 考談一承事妣全氏三娘子 考全五四道公 姊鍾氏十五娘子 同登佛果 至元十九年四月 日 住山釋如一

“The Tripitaka Office received, Puguang Chan Chapel of Cishi creek of No. 39 du of Fengxian Canton of Jiaxing County in Jiaxing Route in the name of, the “disciple of three jewels” Cao Daoxun, donated rice 20 shuo to print, Mahāprajñāpāramitā Sūtra 2 volumes. All the collected good causes, repay for, “four fields of grace and three states of existence,” assisting the completion of the way and the fruition. -- Zhiyuan 16 (1279), fifth month, abbot Shi Dao’an, Nanshan Puning Monastery.”

This chapter studies the relationship between the White Cloud sect and local patrons of the Puning canon print project. Most of the canon patrons were not members of the sect. Many of them are from rich households, but none have high official posts.

They donated considerably little amount of property or cash to print few volumes of sūtras and print blocks, from half up to ten volumes. This is the retail business of the

---


342 Puning #149.
Puning Canon, besides its wholesale to big monasteries and tribute to the state and government. Based on the analysis of this large pool of local patrons, my research traces the White Cloud social network *bottom up*, showing the social foundation of the sect in the Hang-Jia-Hu region. The information of patron’s names and donations we have today are from the colophon or appendix attached to the sūtra that they sponsored to print. There are information about sūtra donor’s name, occupation, year of donation, family structure, native place, and sometimes affiliated monastery. We do not have biographical data of each individual. Geographically speaking, information about places are as detailed as below county level, including villages and towns, or even particular monasteries and cloisters. For the ethnic background of the donors, all lay donors are Chinese, so there is no Tangut. We also see large groups of female participants in the movement and sūtra printing projects.

Patronage as a social activity, is an exchange of meriteous or financial capital. Patronage are usually for merit or financial benefits, thus receive different consequences. Different kinds of lay patronage include those on Buddhist temple building, Buddhist canon printing, local property acquisition, local infrastructure building, etc. These lay patronage in the local society are different from state sponsored ones – they were locally driven and self-managed, so government support and management were not fundamental factors. My research of the canon’s lay patrons shows the role cultural and religious identities, as well as social and financial statuses, played in determining the cause and consequences of patronage. The karmic merit *gongde* 功德 is the general goal of canon

---

This chapter establishes a relational database of the canon patrons. I will investigate the data by applying the social network perspective. In the historiography of China’s “Song-Yuan transitional period,” the social network theory challenges the traditional approach of social history which heavily focused on the elite classes, gentries and big clans, based on the models of Hartwell (1982) and Hymes (1986). Many scholarly works of Song-Yuan regional studies focuses on the decentralization of the state in local society due to elite activism and localism, including those of literati and civil officials, but few of them touched the lay community (Smith and von Glahn, 2003).

This chapter deals with the issue of localization that is demonstrated on the level of the laity. The purpose of adopting social network theory is to avoid the classification of social hierarchies into elite and non-elite. One person is not identical to just one social class, but different connections with different entities, thus belong to multiple social networks and statuses. There are multiple systems of relations, and the correlation of people overcomes spatial boundary.

I am interested in the population of the canon patrons and their social backgrounds. Who were these donors? Were they mostly individuals or families? What were their marriage statuses? Were most female donors widows or nuns? Had they taken Buddhist vows? Were they affiliated to Buddhist institutions such as cloisters or monasteries? If yes, private or government approved institutions? Some donors were not monastic Buddhist monks and nuns since they did not carry sangha names, but they were connected with monasteries. Were these monastic clergy still connected to their original
families and clans? What were their donation items and amounts? How did the expense of donations compare to their daily life costs and entire family properties? Also, what were the donating purposes of these lay patrons? How similar or different were these recorded wishes? Were the wishes influenced by only Buddhist teachings, or other ideology conceived by the contemporary socio-religious trend? In general, these lay patrons made the White Cloud sect’s social print business as a social enterprise that lay patrons found a common ground to financially sponsor sūtras and share mutual interests on gaining Buddhist karmic merit and blessings for family members. Where were the reasons behind the creation and popularization of this enterprise by the local laity?

Regarding geography, the distribution of canon donors changes our view of the core-periphery model which situates the metropolis and its suburban areas. The market towns were more independent from the core city. These towns kept growing in the Yuan dynasty, especially the early Yuan dynasty. In the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion of the Jiangnan region, market towns were not only the agricultural hinterland of major administrative centers, but more grew as independent commercial producers and consumers. Well developed market towns had multiple ways to sell their agricultural produces and also had several links to import supplements in addition to efficient self-sufficiency. It is similar that Buddhist canon printing business in the White Cloud’s Puning Monastery were able to attract sponsors and consumers from these market towns rather than big urban centers. Market towns were able to form many of their own networks, including religious, cultural, financial and kin, without the necessary connections with the regional city, and therefore were self-sufficient and mutually assisting. The case of the White Cloud canon printing project is one example of these intercrossed independent social
networks built by common people of market towns with mutual interests and collective devotions.

Religious devotions of the White Cloud followers and favorers in Hang-Jia-Hu subregion, were about the transfer of Buddhist karmic merit and the redemption of karmic debt, as shown in the Buddhist canon printing project. However, these lay people’s socio-religious devotions transcended the boundary of Buddhism. They also donated for other local projects, including those of the White Cloud sect, Buddhism, Daoism, and popular religions. For example, in the fourth month of Yanyou 1 year (1314), the magistrate of Changxing 長興州 sponsored a reconstruction project of the Eastern Peak Mobile Palace 東岳行宮. A former White Cloud sect monk Zhengming 正明 served as the contractor, who collected donations and implemented the project. The lay donors list and affiliations are listed in the recto of the inscription. It includes many female donors whose names end with character xiú 秀.

Barend ter Haar’s pioneering work on the local lay religious donations and related activities in the Jiangnan region during the Song-Yuan period (1100-1340) remains the only work on this topic in Western scholarship so far. He argues that the lay people chose from a variety of options to devote to the religious desire to gain merit, no matter their status of Buddhist ordination and vows. Their motivations are Buddhist-inspired but not limited to Buddhist teachings. He also studies the donors’ lists of both the Qisha and Puning Canons. He summarizes that even though donors had stated concrete wishes, the

344 “Changxingzhou chongxiu Dongyue xinggong ji” 長興州重修東岳行宮記, Wuxing xinshi ji 吳興金石記 j.13, mentioned in Chapter 2.
prayers fell into the premade formula of typical Buddhist doctrinal terms. Common religious-inspired practice such as the restriction of the consumption of meat and liquor, recitation of Buddhist text or Amitabha’s name, almsgiving and communal festivals, as well as donations to print Buddhist texts, all became trendy in the Jiangnan area, for people who did not necessarily chose the formal Buddhist lifestyle, but sought good merit for self and family members. As mentioned in previous chapters, these people consist of “vegetarians,” “people of the way,” were mostly commoners. They initiated unorthodox religious activities, and organized independent religious organizations such as the White Cloud sect and many private monasteries *si’an* 私庵 attached to it. This trend of local religious independence has increased in the Yuan period, as the continuous step from the Song period.

The source for this chapter - the donor’s list of the Puning canon, was from the colophons of the Punin canon collections at Zojo-ji in Tokyo. Though it does not include all extant copies of the Puning canon sūtras, the Zojo-ji collection has over 300 entries of donors’ information from the colophons. Thus it is sufficient to build a general picture of the donors’ relationships, and their spatial distribution. These donors’ information are the main data for my database, which include the donor’s name, location, year, home monastery, donation amount, and specific wishes, often drafted in a formula and signed by the chief abbot of the Nanshan Puning Monastery who was also the chief supervisor of the canon printing project. As for the total numbers of the people who involved in the Puning Canon project, some scholars claimed to have the concrete

---

346 ter Haar 2001:141. Ogawa Kan’ichi and Chikusa Masaaki introduced the source, and had preliminary analyses on it, Ogawa 1969.
numbers of more than 1000 people editing, block cutting, and printing; almost 600 people
donating 75000 to 90000 catties of rice, 100000 strings of cash, and 70000 ounces of
silver.\footnote{I am not able to trace these numbers. Therefore, this chapter is a case study of
some canon patrons and their relations to the local development. Most colophons dated to
the period of Zhiyuan 16 (1279) to Zhiyuan 26 (1289). They were signed by the
succeeding chief abbots of the White Cloud sect’s Puning Monastery in order, Dao’an 道安,
Ruyi 如一, Ruzhi 如志, and Ruxian 如賢.}

**Donor and temple**

Giving the fact that the Puning Canon was completed in only about 13 years from
1277 to 1289, it was the fastest completion of Buddhist canon printing in pre-modern
Chinese history. Besides the Yuan government’s permission, this is mainly relying on the
efficiency of local collaborations of canon printing and financial patronage. The
production of the completed canon copies were distributed in three ways: donation to the
court and religious affairs offices, wholesale to official monasteries and non-local group
buyers, and most importantly the local buyers. These local buyers often donated small
amount of cash or properties, to sponsor the print of one or two volumes *juan* of sūtras or
wood blocks of sūtras. They were in fact patrons who paid for the cost of printing the
sūtra or block, but did not possess the copy. They had their names on the colophon. The
named copy of the sūtra usually went for monastic collection, and the block was used
multiple times for further printing.

\footnote{Overmyer “Gendai Byakuun shumon no katsudo jotai” 元代白雲宗門の活動狀態, 1958:635.}
Barend ter Haar’s research has divided the donors into three categories: monastic monks, activist donor, and ordinary donors.\(^{348}\) The difference between an activist donor and an ordinary donors is that the former had taken a formal vow. I disagree with this categorization because in many cases the titles such as the “faithful gentleman” \(xinshi\) 信士, the “disciple of Buddha” \(fodizi\) 佛弟子, and the “female disciple of Buddha” \(nu\ fodizi\) 女佛弟子 were only symbolic to be included in the formula of the donor’s colophon. It did not necessarily refer to the fact whether the person has taken a vow or not. Plus these people cannot be generalized as “activist donors,” since the donation to a Buddhist sūtra cannot be a sign of their regular activeness in their socio-religious lives in the local society. In any case, this does not affect however the conclusion that there are more lay people than monks in the donors’ list. According to ter Haar, the percentage of monk donors is only 22% in the Puning Canon project, and 40% in the Qisha Canon project. In fact, monks often received donations from local people and had the choice to list their names on the colophon. Sometimes we see the entry of monks received \(huadao\) 化到 donations from a lay person or groups of lay people.\(^{349}\) So most of the donors were lay people, with only few monks who actually donated their belongings.

As ter Haar noticed, there is the title \(upasaka\) (\(youposai\) 優婆塞) appeared in front of many donors’ names. This title is more specifically referring to the people who had taken the Buddhist vow and kept the basic Buddhist teachings such as the Five Injunctions \(wujie\) 五戒. Ter Haar argues that though it had been used widely in the

\(^{348}\) ter Haar 2001:142 Monks usually have the title \(Bhikkhu\ biqiu\) 比丘 or \(seng\) 僧 in front of their two character dharma names.

\(^{349}\) \(huadao\) 化到, see the example of Puning #122, 124, 130, 132.
Jiangnan region during the Song-Yuan period, an *upasaka* associated with a cloister in the Puning Canon donors’ list is usually a White Cloud sect adherent. This claim is doubtful because in many cases there is no direct mention of the cloister’s affiliation to the White Cloud sect. The person and institution that donated money to the White Cloud sect’s canon printing project did not necessarily have to be a member of the sect. However, including those *upasakas*, they were the main active driven force of the donations for printing. These people are the same group of local activists that were labeled as “people of the way” *daomin* in the Song, or the “powerful local people of west Zhe region” 浙西地方豪民 called by Chikusa Masaaki. Indeed, many donors’ names have the character the “way” *dao* 道, which indicates their name for religious identity rather than real given name. It is the same phenomenon of these people’s names in the Southern Song period. Based on my criticism on Ter Haar’s problematic categorization, these names were symbolic to be included in the formula of the donor’s colophon.” So it was not really obvious that these people were religious.

As for people’s names in the donors’ list, besides the obvious character *dao*, we notice that majority of people’s given names are numbers. This is the special phenomenon of Chinese lay peoples’ name, from the Song to the Ming period, with the Yuan as its peak time. This tradition is mostly popular in the Yuan Jiangnan region. None of the Western scholarship has studied this. According to the interpretation of Chinese scholarship, in the Yuan period, the Mongol government did not allow people from Chinese common households with common Chinese people below counties to hold formal names, so people adopted the Song tradition from the countryside that named their
children in numbers. Sometimes the number is the sum of parents’ ages together, the generation of the child in the family, or just a random number the parents picked. The majority of the donors have number names, shows their lay background and not high social status in the Mongol ruled society. But this does not necessarily mean that these people of lower social status had limited influence exerted in the local society, especially small market towns and villages.

Some people have a Buddhist institution attached in their colophon, mostly temples *si* 寺 and chapels *an* 廟 or *antan* 安堂. Because there is no administrative records of these institutions about how it was built and managed. We do not know the information about their establishment and internal structure including members and beneficial affiliates. However, some colophons give the wishes to the deceased founding person of the institution, whose names appear to be those of lay people. We can see that these institutions were privately built and ran by private parties, sometimes owned by one family that the successors had the same family name. These institutions had social economic functions such as storing and trading grains, registering and managing farm land, collecting and banking cashes, and storage for other private properties. They often held land and population, as natural and labor resources. Once they built the connections with the White Cloud sect, they could enjoy tax exemption and became the shelter for those who tried to escape the corvée duties.

---

351 There is one special case of members of a Daoist abbey made donations, and wished their deceased masters and family members to have a good treatment in the realm of Buddha. Puning #255. Not sure if this is a private abbey or an official one.
There are other reasons why these private local Buddhist institutions became popular in the region. Firstly, private religious institutions were more accessible than official ones since they were located in market towns and close to the worshippers’ homes. So in terms of the distance, time and cost of travel, local private institutions were much easier to visit than the official ones. People could drop by during the break time of daily works and agricultural seasons. Secondly, the official monasteries might offer more complicated teachings of the doctrines, and practiced numerous rituals harder to understand. Thirdly, official institutions might have required higher amount of donations than did the small private ones which did not set limitation on the size of donations. Fourthly, local temples and cloisters provided more public space for local people to socialize and form a closed worship community. Finally, women had more freedom and room for religious activities in private institutions. They did not have to be segregated for worship and donations, unlike the orthodox rules in the official institutions.

In terms of women’s status in the canon printing project as well as in the local society, the data from our donors’ colophons show the high participation and mixture with female devotees in religious lives. They had devoted titles such as “female disciple of Buddha” 女佛弟子. Many of these lay women’s given name is number add the word “lady” niangzi 娘子. There were both married and divorced women as the main donors. The more striking fact is that many female donors were the main donor rather than attached to male donors. We also see many cases of widows who donated and listed names of their children. This shows the financial independence of lay women in the region, and the high level of participation of women in religious activities. These women either practiced Buddhism at home, or attended local Buddhist institutions.
practice of a household that dealing with monetary expenses was often entrusted to women rather than men.

In general, besides the people who had attached Buddhist institutions, some other donors were religious devotees who had Buddhist practice at home. In the donors’ list, there is the term “stay and worship” *jufeng* 居奉, *zhufeng* 住奉, or *juzhufeng* 居住奉, added after their residence such as neighborhood and village. They were the *upasakas* who were identified as home Buddhist practitioners. These people were more family oriented, as reflected in their donation wishes that many of them wished good health and longevity for family members. In terms of family group or household structure, we see donors’ names and their relatives of many generations. Some donor’s statement included members of a Buddhist institution, and some were about their family. A layman’s family members often were all lay people, with all number given names. No high official titles were included in these lay families. We could see clearly big families that many members of one family donated for different sutras independently. One example is the big household of the Ding family 丁府 from the water town Wuzhen 烏鎮 of Wucheng county 烏程縣. Ding’s title was the “disciple of Three Jewels” *sanbao dizi* 三寶弟子, shows his devotion to Buddhism. The family members who donated include 28 different names including Ding Bochun. Besides Ding, there are 12 different surnames. Most of them belong to the female family members. Three generations’ names were all included, though some grandchildren were not particularly named but attached to the main donor.\(^{352}\) Among the donors of the Ding family, we see Buddhist names including two character dharma names, names containing the character *dao*, and even a name contain

\(^{352}\) Puning, #7-24
the character Buddha 佛 named Ding Folang 丁佛郎. Therefore, the wide range of family members’ donations show the size of the Ding household, and its involvement in the canon printing project. As von Glahn pointed out, in the Jiangnan region during the Song-Yuan period, there emerged many big lay families who did not necessarily hold official positions but were successful in business and achieved influence in the local society by maintaining their big clans. Even some market towns and villages were named after the surnames of prominent families, such as Puyuan 濮院 the “yard of Pu” in Jiaxing prefecture.\(^{353}\)

In summary, the composition of the donors indicates that the donors were mostly local lay people. Though ter Haar found in the list that there are also some high officials and people with jinshi degree, they were by no means the majority of the donation cohort.\(^ {354}\) The lay donors were more independent in religious practice and social life even within a big family. Women also enjoyed high status in religious practice and had equal right to donate and sponsor the print same as the male activists, no matter they were married or widows. These people including the lay donors, and those monastic donors which many of them were from private Buddhist institutions, were the foundation of the printing project based in the local society. However, we cannot claim whether they had built a closed internal social network, until investigated their financial status, spatial distribution and relationships connected through wishes and prayers.

\(^{353}\) see von Glahn, 2003:203.
\(^{354}\) ter Haar 2001:144; there are also few official donors of religious affairs bureaus.
Donation

Usually people donated for printing half, one or two volumes *jingjuan* 經卷 of a sūtra, sometimes for making one or two print blocks *jingban* 經板 instead. Some frugal and financially challenging individuals would donate to print only 1 page of a sūtra. The largest amount of lay patroned sūtras was one donation made by Ding Bochun of the Ding family who paid for 20 copies.\(^\text{355}\) The donation amount varies depending on the financial situation of the donor. A rich family’s head usually donated more. A monk might donate slightly more, but the amounts were sometimes from the temple followers’ donations not the monk themselves. In such case the followers’ names were often mentioned after the monks. On the other hand, patronage on printing Buddhist sūtra is just one option of the lay activists’ religious life. For example, they could pay for printing other Buddhist canons, or any local building projects. They could also pay for having some Buddhist monks to recite sūtras 誦經 or read sūtras 看經. Sometimes the merit accumulated through one time recitation could be equal to the sponsorship of printing one volume of a sūtra. We had limited information about the price charge of private Buddhist monks on sponsored sūtra recitation services ordered by lay people so it is hard to compare it with the cost of printing a sūtra copy.\(^\text{356}\)

\(^\text{355}\) Puning, #16.
\(^\text{356}\) One example of sponsored sūtra reading and recitation would be in 1316, an Uighur official Yihei Mishi (Illemisi, Yihei Mishi, Ike Mese) 亦黑迷失 donated money for one hundred monasteries all over the Yuan empire to have monks recite sūtras once a month, for 100 *ding* of paper money per monastery. Jiang Wu. *Spreading Buddha’s Word in East Asia*, 2016. P62. 亦黑迷失, “Yibai dasi kanjing ji” 一百大寺看經記. *Minzhong jinshi lue* 閩中金石略 j.17:13030. Yihei Mishi was also a fund raiser for the Qisha canon, Qisha P57.
The donation items and their amounts are often cash (paper currency *chao* 銑), silver, or sometimes rice and silk 絹, or even clothes. As for the value of these items, one copy of a sūtra or a block costs about 10 to 25 *guan* 貫 of cash, or 10 *dan* 石 (or *shuo* 碩) of rice.\(^{357}\) Usually 1 *mu* 畝 of farm field produced 3 *dan* 石 of rice.\(^{358}\) Therefore, 10 *dan* of rice need at least 3 *mu* of fields. However, according to the early Yuan Huzhou census data (will be introduced in “location” section), normally one household had average only 1 *mu* of farm field 水田 with few exceptions that some households had up to 20 *mu*.\(^{359}\)

Therefore, the cost for printing one volume of Buddhist sūtra was actually relatively high. Donation for sūtra printing even for only one volume, was quite an expensive conduct for the search of good merit, similar to the expense for lay sponsored local infrastructure building projects and religious holidays.

Sometimes people did not donate money directly to the Puning Monastery. Instead, they would make the offerings to the dealership, either a monk or a lay person, then in the latter’s name, the donation was transferred to the printing bureau of Puning Monastery 大藏經局. For example, a “people of the way” named Shen Daocong 沈道聰 appeared in three colophons, with the title Alms Collector *huazhu* 化主, had successfully collected donations for three volumes of sūtras in the sixth month of Zhiyuan 20 (1283). The donors were from eight different villages in Huzhou and Hangzhou.\(^{360}\) These lay donors donated for the printing of two, three or four pieces of paper, as well as half of a volume. Similar case can be found where monastic monks serve as sūtra dealers that

---

\(^{357}\) About the paper currency *baochao* 寶鈔 and *jiaochao* 交鈔, and their standard value, see *YS*:242-4.

\(^{358}\) *Shiba* 379.

\(^{359}\) *Wang Xiaoxin* 196.

\(^{360}\) Puning #206, 207, 208, 214
recruited people’s donations. In four colophons, an abbot named Mao Daoxin 茅道信 from a chapel in Changxing county 長興縣 of Huzhou, received mainly rice donations from lay donors.\footnote{Puning # 122, 124, 130, 132} The low donation amount and the large pool of donors attracted by the dealers show their ability active in the region as the mediator of religious enterprise for collecting resources and building connection to match the needs of both lay people and the printing press.

Some exceptions include donations from clergy officials of religious affairs in the Jiangnan region and the White Cloud Sect General Overseer Office. For example, head of the Supervision Office for Buddhist Techings Master Yongfu 永福大師 Yang Lianzhenjia had sponsored the printing of sixty volumes, in Zhiyuan 16 (1279).\footnote{Puning #268} The Secretary to the Supervision Office’s Commissioner 總統使所知書 Dong Jixiang 董吉祥 sponsored the printing of twenty volumes in Zhiyuan 25 (1288).\footnote{Puning #280, 281} The fact that most of the Puning canon’s donations were small amounts is very different from those of the Qisha canon. The Qisha canon constantly received high amount of donations from both civil and clergy officials, and local monks. For example, monks at the Qisha Yansheng Monastery where the printing press was, donated rice from 24, 76, 96, to 116 dan per person.\footnote{Qisha #328, 329, For colophons of the Qisha canon (hereafter as “Qisha canon”), see “Eiin So sekisha zokyo bibatsu shu” 影印宋礦砂藏經尾跋集, Nikka bukkyo kenkyukai nenpo 1 日華佛教研究會年報 1936, PP48-166.} The abbot of the Qisha Monastery Zonghai 宗海 donated 20 ding 定/鎊 of paper currency in Dade 10 (1306).\footnote{Qisha #343} Another monk Zhigai 志垓 donated 70 ding that
year. The Monastic Registrar of Songjiang prefecture Guanzhuba 管主八 donated 200 ding in 1306. The amount of sūtra produced from one time donation in the Qisha canon was also much higher. For example, a Monastic Registrar of Pingjiang Route Zhou Shanxiang 周善祥 donated for the print of 1,000 pieces of blocks in Dade 10 (1306). The heavy amount donation from official support in the Qisha canon contradicts the lay foundation and smaller donations made in the Puning canon. We know that only 1/5 of the donation to the Puning were recorded in the colophons. It could be because these amounts were remarkably bigger than the other 4/5, therefore more justified to be record.

Wish

Ter Haar has divided the wish types to four categories: 1. Petitionary of healing and fortune; 2. Filial piety (often use the term “four fields of grace and three states of existence” 四恩三有); 3. Rebirth in the pure land; 4. Others (mostly Buddhist, sometimes also political). This categorization has many problems. It does not care about the objects of a wish (or, the beneficiaries), whether it was for self, relatives, monastic individual and community, deceased ones, or the state and the emperor. Also, healing and hope for health is distinct from the wishes for fortune.

---

366 Qisha #344
367 Qisha #344, 562
368 Qisha #358
369 In Qisha canon colophons, there are also donations of farm land, see Qisha #69, 70.
370 There are very few exceptional cases of donations by clergy officials for the foundation and prosper of the state and the health of the emperor and religious leaders, are not discussed in this session. They were included in chapter 3.
371 ter Haar 2001:145.
372 ter Haar also argues that the White Cloud sect lay donors are closer to the monks, in comparing to the Qisha donors. Because it shows that there are fewer lay donors of the Puning canon have wishes of category #1 than those of the Qisha canon. Since this category is the least favorable one for monks, it
"Si’en sanyou" is not necessarily a term for respecting the seniors or filial piety. "Others" is very vague without any definition. In any case, surprisingly, the highest percentage is the wish that the deceased to be transcend and rebirth in the pure land 淨土 or the lotus realm 蓮界. Wishes for the donor self’s health and longevity is much less. This raises the question that whether the donation for sūtra printing is primarily for memorization of the deceased, or to be used in memorial services. The figures of the deceased include family members, and the past members of the home Buddhist institution that some were former abbots and religious teachers. Only very few of the wishes are for the living family members, and among them a small portion is for non-parents relatives such as siblings and children. Therefore, I argue that these sponsored sūtras of the Puning canon were intended to be used as a textual tool for the salvation 超度 of the dead through either used in the ritual at a temple or simply accomplishing the goal by storing the sūtra in the temple.

Ter Haar argues that the “social visibility” of canon printing donation as a charitable act was much lower than other acts such as bridge and monastery sponsorship, or involvement in rituals and festivals. Therefore, only the most involved local activists

---

373 Some deceased male family members’ names followed 承事 and 將仕 which were lowest rank local official titles.
374 Ter Haar argues that the reason why there were none wishes for self’s future rebirth in the pure land and few wishes for family members’ rebirth, are because it is considered inappropriate for the former, one could not openly ask for rebirth but had to gain merit through self devotion, and for the latter usually good merit could not be passed to others who were alive so as the living family members. There was no evidence supporting this argument. Ter Haar 2001:147.
would donate for this option of printing sponsorship. However, according to the fast completion of printing one copy of a sūtra, the donation for sūtra printing is the most efficient and approachable way to make good merit. There was no system of measurement to differentiate the merit or karma collected from printing sūtra and other kinds of religious activities. He also argues that there is no correlation between the donor’s social background and the wishes, and between the intensity of the donor’s personal attachment to Buddhism and the wishes. As for the second part argument, it is impossible to evaluate the intensity of someone’s beliefs in Buddhism, even with all the information of his/her involved Buddhist activities. So it is of course hard to find out one’s level of personal attachment to Buddhism just from one activity – sūtra donation. I support the first argument regarding the disconnection between the donor’s social status and their wishes. Because these wishes listed in the colophons are casted to fit into certain formulas, so the wishes are basically similar except different personal names. However, these listed wishes are not the absolute purpose of the donation. In other words, the wishes do not necessarily show the purpose or the driving reason of the donation. For example, the colophons for donations from Wu town 烏鎮 of Wucheng County 烏程縣 in Huzhou, show simply the wishes as a Buddhist jargon phrase si ’en sanyou but lack of any single wishes for deceased ones. So it is most likely that the colophon’s formula made for Wu town’s buyers is the same, or even the engraver of these colophons’ blocks selling to the village are the same person.

376 ter Haar 2001:144.
377 Puning #25-34, 36-38.
As ter Haar noticed, monks and nuns were also enthusiastic about donating on behalf of their parents, whether alive or deceased.\(^{378}\) This phenomenon shows that these “monastic” devotees still maintained connections with their original families and served as a part of their kinship networks, sometimes even the most socially influential member of their family. For example, in Zhiyuan 26 (1289), a monk at the Puning Monastery named Chongli 崇禮 (might be a lay people too – 崇 appeared at others, surname missed) made wishes for his parents and relatives, and a “people of the way” affiliated to the monastery Xu Mingliang 本寺小道 徐明亮 made the wishes for his deceased mother and current family.\(^{379}\) This again shows that many White Cloud monks were in fact lay people who remained former kin identity and local status, and still attached to family affairs. Self designated monks and “people of the way” who took monastic vows were still part time monk and part time local activists. On the other hand, the popular ethic teachings borrowed from Confucian doctrines influenced the Buddhist monks’ responsibly of “filial piety” and its importance in Buddhist meritocratic system. For example, in a donation made by a “people of the way” Zhao Chongmeng 小道趙崇孟 who was printing the canon in Puning Monastery and the wishes addressed by a monk who worked in the monastery’s printing office Mingjian 僧 明堅, for the deceased family members of Zhao, saying that “born in China, … (mostly likely ‘learned’) the holy religion (Confucianism), also in memory of the parents, who worked extremely hard to have me born, so (I) wish to repay the deep debts.” 生處中華, 。。。聖教, 又念父母,

\(^{378}\) ter Haar 2001:144-5.
\(^{379}\) Puning #287, 288. More examples of monks made wishes for family members, especially parents in 1289, see Puning #291, 292, 293. Not sure about the difference between 小道 and 僧, but they might be also related to lay Buddhists, or “people of the way.”
生我劬勞，欲報深恩。\textsuperscript{380} This sentence borrowed terms from Confucianism, and looks purely like a Confucian moral teaching if one views it without the context that it was actually in a Buddhist sûtra and written by a Buddhist monk (of the White Cloud’s monastery).

All the wishes of the Puning canon donors are lack of any specific stories or background’s about one’s motivations, unlike some shown in the precise impressions from the donation colophons of the Qisha canon.\textsuperscript{381} In Qisha canon, some donors would include the detailed story why he/she donated, and special personal needs such as answers from certain deities. Many of these wishes also were for the donor himself/herself, unlike those wishes for others shown in the Puning Canon. From this case, we can conclude that the Puning canon was more a commercial project than the Qisha canon. The Puning canon in the form of retail was the best sellers of private printed Buddhist canons in the Yuan period. The large scale of printed volumes and efficiency of production, determined that the blocks of printing were more certainly engraved as the premade formulas so it was less changeable. Larger population of donors and buyers also made the change of blocks to express more specific prayers in the paper more difficult, unless the donor agreed to pay higher amount of donation to have the special version made. Besides this, the much shorter period of the Puning printing project comparing to the Qisha project means faster mass production rather than producing special editions based on different requests of the sûtra orders.

\textsuperscript{380} Puning #278.
\textsuperscript{381} ter Haar 2001:146.
There is no particular connection between the content of the sūtra they sponsored, with their wishes. Which means, the sūtra names do not indicate the wishes. The printed sūtras with donor’s colophons included those of the Mahayana classic texts such as *Mahāprajñāpāramitā Sūtra* 大般若波羅蜜多經, sūtras of Chan and Huayan schools, some of the Yogacara school, mantras such as Sound-Contemplator Petitioning Sūtra 佛說六字神呪王經, and some unusual Chinese sūtras such as Sūtra on Bathing Monks in the Bathhouse 佛說溫室洗浴眾僧經 and Sūtra on the Dragon King of the Sea 佛說海龍王經。 Though not showing in the list, there should also have sūtras of medicine, and eminent monks’ biographies, according to the index of contents of the Puning canon preserved in Japan. The option for printing which volume of sūtra was rather random, and the lay donors did not really care about the title and content of the sūtra they donated for whether the donors were literate. The canon press just picked sūtras to print in the order of the canon index, unless the donor had specific requirement for the choice of the sponsored sūtra. For example, all the donors’ colophons from number 1 to number 170, were from 170 volumes of *Mahāprajñāpāramitā Sūtra* (600 volumes total) in numeric order. Donors and their donations for this sūtra had no difference with those of other sūtras.

---

382 Puning #225.
383 Puning #229.
384 Puning #239-42.
385 Index of the Puning Canon 杭州路餘杭縣白雲宗南山大普寧寺大藏經目錄, *Showa hoho so mokuroku* 大正新修昭和法寶總目録 II, PP239-71.
386 Puning #1 is *Mahāprajñāpāramitā Sūtra* volume 5, #170 is volume 596.
Location

All 320 donor’s colophons include location information. They are the hometown (native place) of the donor, or affiliated religious institutions (monasteries or chapels), and in some cases also include their sojourning places. Some colophons are joint donation that include separate donor parties (unlike one donor with several associated usually family members), or different parties from several institutions or locations. So I separate these joint colophons, and eventually it comes up with a list of 337 location names, with many of them include religious institution names. Many location data are detailed to the level under county xian 縣, including village cun 村, (neighborhood) du 都, ward fang 坊, (court) li 里, town zhen 鎮, canton xiang 鄉, mansion fu 府, house zhai 宅, bridge qiao 橋, harbor wu 塢, and swamp ze 澤. As for the religious institutions listed, they are mostly monastery 寺 and chapel 庵, with few cloisters 院 and one Daoist palace / abbey 宮. As I mentioned, though they were not mentioned explicitly, many of these institutions were private. We can see from the names of abbots and deceased abbots that they were lay people. Even if the abbots have monastic names, they could be lay people who took monastic vow and remained connections with their lay family, as shown in their listed relatives from the wishes of donations.

From these locational data, a preliminary calculation of the numbers of donations on the county level shown as the follows:

Table 5: Distribution of the Puning canon local donors

---

387 One example of sojourning. Puning #151, a female devotee from Qiantang county of Hangzhou route lived in Jiaxing county of Jiaxing route. Two locations both listed in the colophon.
388 Many of them appeared in village names, as discussed later.
1. Hangzhou route, Puning Monastery, Hangzhou county

2. Hangzhou route, Qiantang county, Hangzhou route

3. Hangzhou route, Renhe county, Hangzhou route

4. Hangzhou route, Yanguan county, Hangzhou route

5. Hangzhou route, Yuhang county, Hangzhou route

6. Hangzhou route, Huzhou prefecture, Huzhou route

7. Hangzhou route, Anji county, Huzhou route

8. Hangzhou route, Changxing county, Huzhou route

9. Hangzhou route, Deqing county, Huzhou route

10. Hangzhou route, Gui’an county, Huzhou route

11. Hangzhou route, Wucheng county, Huzhou route

12. Hangzhou route, Wukang county, Huzhou route

13. Hangzhou route, Jiaxing prefecture, Jiaxing route

14. Hangzhou route, Jiaxing county, Jiaxing route

15. Hangzhou route, Chongde county, Jiaxing route

16. Hangzhou route, Haiyan county, Jiaxing route

17. Hangzhou route, Huating county, Jiaxing route

18. Hangzhou route, Wuxi county, Changzhou route

19. Hangzhou route, Wu county, Pingjiang route

20. Hangzhou route, Wujiang county, Pingjiang route

21. Hangzhou route, Changzhou prefecture, Shaanxi East route

Total 335, plus location unclear 2

(Figure 19)

From the table, it shows that donations mainly concentrated in four routes of the Jiangnan region: Hangzhou, Huzhou, Jiaxing, and Pingjiang. There are two other single cases of donations from Shaanxi and Pingyang routes which were faraway locations. Among the four routes, Huzhou and Jiaxing had more donors than

---

389 1 in Jiulisong of Tianzhu 天竺九里松, other 3 unclear.
390 Same as Changxing sub-prefecture 長興州.
391 Include 2 from Qing town 青鎮 in Jiaxing 嘉興.
Hangzhou and Pingjiang. Hangzhou actually had lowest donation rates, if we exclude the 19 donations from the monks who worked for the canon printing project. Other few donors in Hangzhou route were monks from Qiantang and Renhe counties. None of the donors were from the city of Hangzhou 杭州府. Pingjiang was the second lowest, plus one donation from Wuxi county 無錫縣 of the neighboring Changzhou route 常州路.

Also, for the most densely donor-concentrated Huzhou and Jiaxing routes, we can see strikingly the highest numbers of donations come from two counties - Wucheng county 烏程縣 in Huzhou and Jiaxing county 嘉興縣 in Jiaxing. They have almost same numbers of donations (there are 2 donations from Qing village 青鎮 in Jiaxing. Since it is the twin village with Wu town 烏鎮 only divided by a river, it can also be considered in Wu town in Huzhou), which are much higher than any other counties in the table.

Donations from Huzhou and Jiaxing were spread out throughout the Hang(zhou)-Jia(xing)-Hu(zhou) subregion, which is the plain area south of Lake Tai, north of Hangzhou city, west to the Tianmu mountain 天目山 range, and east to the alluvial plain of modern day Shanghai with the Grand Canal and Haiyan canal 海鹽塘 as its border. The subregion includes modern day east Huzhou, Jiaxing, and northeast Hangzhou. Therefore, spatially speaking the area is more enclosed with natural boundaries. It was more independently developed in spite of a part of Jiangan. It was also the south most region that the Grand Canal runs till it reaches its destination in Hangzhou. This area is featured as populous, water rich, canal networks, agriculturally advanced (rice fields concentrated), economic type diverse, thus the most developed region in the Jiangnan area / lower Yangzi delta during the Song-Yuan period. Comparing to the wetland plain
east of Lake Tai in Pingjiang route which has many lakes and swamps, the Hang-Jia-Hu plain area has solid soil for farming and building towns.\(^{392}\) The Qisha canon received donations from powerful families of maritime trade 濱海豪族, including Zhu Qing 朱清 and Zhang Xuan 張瑄.\(^{393}\) However, the Puning canon was not able to attract any of these big maritime families, even for those based in Jiaxing and Huzhou.\(^{394}\) This suggests that the print project of the Puning canon was more local based, short-term, supported by inland canal networks. The Qisha canon not only has attracted higher rank elites as donors, but also became popular as a long-term project thanks to the continuous maritime trade and ocean transportation routes for state tribute including grains and local products and produces that were shipped to capital Dadu (Beijing) through the canal.

As early as the Northern Song, several revolutionary changes took place in the Hang-Jia-Hu area, including immigration, farmland reclamation, and building canals based to handle floods and use water resource from Lake Tai and existing rivers and swamps.\(^{395}\) The network of waterway made it easy for the transportation of essential materials for printing industry, including timber, paper, and ink. Benefiting from the abundance of natural resources, and the urban development from Hangzhou with the Qiantang River system in the south and Suzhou and Yangzhou with Yangzi River system

---

\(^{392}\) There are over hundred of lakes in Pingjiang route, the largest ones are Lake Dianshan 淀山湖, Lake Cheng 澄湖, and Lake Yangcheng 陽澄湖. It is saying that today there is 319 lakes in Suzhou area, besides Lake Tai.

\(^{393}\) Qisha P134. They were also government sponsored merchants ortoq 於脱. Many of them were salt merchants in Pingjiang route.

\(^{394}\) More information on maritime magnate families in Jiangnan, see Chen Bo 陳波, “Yuandai haiyun yu binghai haozu” 元代海運與濱海豪族, Qinghua yuanshi 清華元史 2011:217. These magnate families are ruled under seven Chiliarchy Offices 千戶所 in southeast China under Ocean Route General Tranportation Myriarchy Office 海道都漕運萬戶府, and Ocean Route Incense and Rice Chiliarchy Office 海道香莎糯米 千戶所 in Pingjiang route 平江路.

in the north, the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion emerged as an agricultural hinterland. New lifestyles and social structure developed new culture and belief systems. In this hinterland, the knots of social network and sharing local resources are the newly developed market towns, and most of them were adjacent to canals. Shiba Yoshinobu and Richard von Glahn support the hypothesis that some market towns in Jiangnan emerged because of periodical religious fairs known as “temple markets” miaoshi 廟市. These temples and religious activities appeared prior to the formation of urbanized market towns.

(Figure 20)

The Hang-Jia-Hu plain subregion already emerged in the Song period, with socially active rich locals 地方豪民 and rich farmers 田地豪農 who were heavily involved in local projects, and many of who were religions related. Also, the subregion is the area that had higher concentration of religious devotees “people of the way” 道民 and activists including those who were labeled as “vegetarian devil worshippers” 吃菜事魔. This subregion covers the most territories that the White Cloud spread out and remained in the same spatial realm in the Song and Yuan periods. The boundaries remained stable but the intensity of religious devotee population and temple numbers of the White Cloud sect increased significantly. This brings us to the question why the sect did not spread out of this area or lose any area but remain in the same territory? Some possible reasons would be: 1. spatial competition with other religious groups and societies such as the White Lotus in Pingjiang route in the east of Lake Tai, and popular religions and deity

---

397 In spite of the lack of the Song sources, we can see particular market towns which did not have many temples in the region have growing number of temples built in the Yuan dynasty, even those of the White Cloud sect. See von Glahn 2003:188-99.
worships in the south of Hangzhou; 2. rich culture of Buddhism in the region, especially different schools and prominent religious figures in the region, so as the clergy officials in the Yuan, were active in the neighboring metropolises; 3. devotees and members highly rely on the waterways in this region, for transportation, agriculture and canon print project; 4. high concentration of artisans and craftsmen in the region for temple building and canon printing; 5. close distance – water route accessible to nearby Nanshan Puning Monastery in north suburban Hangzhou.

In the case of Huzhou, commercial revolution and formation of new towns and villages in the Song caused needs for new forms of religious activities for spiritual attachments. Huzhou was the area that the White Cloud sect developed and became the most popularized, and also the first White Cloud abbot and canon print director in the Yuan dynasty Dao’an was from Huzhou so was the predecessor of the Puning canon - the Sixi canon previously printed there in the Song. Buddhism had come to Huzhou very early compared to the rest of Jiangnan. Huzhou’s first temple was built in Gui’an county in 251 CE. There were several temples were built in the fourth and fifth centuries.398 Throughout the Tang, local magnate families already had the tradition of donating money, land and real estate property for monasteries.

Geographically, Huzhou is featured distinctly by two parts - east and west. The east part is lower plain with dense water resources thus more human inhabitation. The west part is terrain and part of the Tianmu Mountain range. The main water source in Huzhou is Tiao Creek苕溪, which is also the source for Lake Tai. Two branches of Tiao Creek both originated for Tianmu mountain, and they merged around the city of Huzhou.

---

and together run into Lake Tai nearby in the north. The east branch 東苕溪 is in lowland that the section from Deqing county in the south to Huzhou city in the north became the natural border to divide the lowland of canals and water towns in the east and hilly area in the west. The lowland has much higher rate of land and water usage for agricultural farming and human settlements. The East Tiao Creek basin itself helped form the urbanization of Huzhou city and its four major counties near the creek: Wucheng 烏程, Gui’an 歸安, Deqing 德清, and Wukang 武康.

In the Yuan dynasty, Huzhou changed jurisdiction to be a route in Zhiyuan 13 (1276) soon following the Mongol conquest of Jiangnan. Under the route, there are six counties - Wucheng 烏程縣, Gui’an 歸安縣, Anji 安吉縣, Deqing 德清縣, Wukang 武康縣, and Changxing 長興縣. We see that donors of the Puning canon were from all six counties in Huzhou. Recently Chinese scholarship discovered in the recto of a set of Yuan printed books in Shanghai Library that there are the records of census in Yuan Huzhou route, including over 300 pages and contain information about 700 to 800 households in Huzhou. The information about the first 155 households in the first out of six volumes has been published. This census was likely conducted in Zhiyuan 26 year (1289) but many data might be borrowed from the previous Song census in Xianchun 2 year (1266).

---

399 Shiba 2012:378.
400 In the Yuan Jiangnan area, lower levels administrations under county 縣 were xiang 鄉, guan 管, cun 村, du 都, li 里, and bao 保. They mainly succeeded the Song system, with some merging and splitting such as li 里 combined to du 都.
401 Wang Xiaoxin 王曉欣, and Zheng Xudong 鄭旭東, 2015(1) 103-97. The books are 5 scrolls juan 卷 and 6 volumes ce 冊. National Social Science Foundation project no. 13BZS033 “元公文紙印本《增修互注禮部韻略》紙背所存元代戶籍文書的整理與研究.”
Anji 縣 - Fuyu 浮玉鄉, Fengting 凤亭鄉, Yifeng 移風鄉, and Tongshan 銅山鄉, and one
canton – Qianqiu 千秋鄉 of Deqing county 德清縣. Census data shows that all the
households were non-elite lay people who did not hold official posts. They were divided
to two categories: commoners minhu 民戶 and artisans jianghu 匠戸. These titles were
same from the Song period. They had different types of occupations 營生, showing the
variety of craftsmen and artisans in different fields of production. We cannot find one
single match of an individual from the published 1/5 of the Huzhou census data with a
donor in the Puning canon colophons. Because few donors came from Anji and Deqing
counties. I have confidence that once the rest 4/5 of the census data are published, we can
find matches of the household and donors in other counties that appear on the colophons.
If that works out, we will be able to see the donor’s personal and family properties, and
evaluate the ratio of donation cost versus property.

Valerie Hansen and Shiba Yoshinobu have studied the case of Huzhou. In
Hansen’s Changing God, she studies deity worship and belief system of lay people in
Song Huzhou, through the comparison of the east lowland area and the west hilly area.
The west area was less developed in terms of agriculture and commerce, so lay people
there still worship traditional deities in their temples. The east area that bounded with the
canal networks was more developed in the Song period, in terms of population,
transportation and regional economy. So people there worship new deities, some of who
were deceased people who came from lower social status but carried divine power for
blessing commercial activities. Thus, her research claims that the commercial revolution

---

403 Valerie Hansen 1990. Shiba Yoshinobu “The Development of the Satellite Towns in Huchow of the
and environmental changes in the Song period accelerated and transformed the religious system and activities in the Jiangnan area. My data of the canon patrons confirms this trend. There are much less donors from west Huzhou terrain areas, such as Anji county and Changxing county, which were also the two exclusive counties out of six that were not in the East Tiao Creek branch basin. Lower per capital, weaker transportation system and natural disadvantages in the area blocks the development of local economy comparing to the east. So as for religious activities and lay people’s capacity of financial supports for such religious projects became less feasible.

As mentioned above, Wucheng county has the highest rate of donations in Huzhou route. In Shiba Yoshinobu’s study, he noticed some special phenomena of Wucheng county. For example, though Wucheng was very well developed in the region in terms of agriculture, economy, and urbanization, they had a surprisingly low rate of jinshi degree holders, comparing to Gui’an even to Wuxing and Deqing counties. This might refer to the high rate of illiteracy in Wucheng county. Also, local big clansmen’s donations were concentrated on market towns and small villages rather than urbanized county seats. According to my theory of lay religious development in the area during the Song-Yuan period and the highest rate of canon donors was in Wucheng county, the main reason for the high religious devotion but low education and civil service devotion in Wucheng was due to the large rich lay population and their higher devotion in religion (Buddhism and popular religions), and thus higher popularity and density of religious institutions than education institutions and other civil organizations.

---

404 Hansen 1990.
405 Shiba 2012:387.
Comparing to Wucheng, not surprisingly Anji county had no single donations. The reason matches Hansen’s study of less developed deity worships there, that is, underdeveloped local economy and less usable and accessible topographical conditions due to hilly terrain. I may add on that analysis that lack of usable water resources and ways to use the water caused the difficulty of shipping materials for commerce so as the commercial printing business of the Puning canon. There is the west branch of Tiao Creek, but the curvy routes, forest surrounded shores, elevation from the foothill, and distance to human settlements all created the least condition of water use and canal building as tributary from the creek.

The Yuan period witnessed the growth of market towns 市镇, actually natural villages 自然村 in the region. The Song dynasty had enforced the system of du 都 and li 里 for local jurisdiction. We still found lots of location names in the donors’ list contain du and li, which means that the names remained but the system of regulation decayed. In the Yuan dynasty, the government reestablished the system of cantons xiang 乡 under county and organized the system of she 社 and zhen 镇 under cantons. However, we see few location names including she and zhen which means that the de facto local governing system remained unchanged in the early Yuan, though the new jurisdiction had been enforced. The growth of market towns was an urban phenomenon.\textsuperscript{406} Many market towns could already be considered as small cities without walls.\textsuperscript{407}

\textsuperscript{406} von Glahn 2003:196.
\textsuperscript{407} Shiba 2012:386, examples of market towns were actually size and function as cities, include Wudun 烏墩, Xinshi 新市, and Nanxun 南浔.
For the increased number of market towns, aka market villages, many of them have different names besides *cun* 村, including *xu* 墟, *pu* 浦, and *lin* 林.\textsuperscript{408} Some places which had names including *zhen* such as Wu town *Wuzhen* 烏鎮 were actually a newly emerged village, which was a market town as well. We can take Wucheng county as an example. In the Jiatai 嘉泰 period (1201-1204) of the Southern Song dynasty, there were 72 villages. By the late Ming dynasty in the Chongzhen 崇禎 period (1628-1644), there were 109 villages.\textsuperscript{409} So there were definitely an increase in the number of villages, so as the size of villages in the Yuan period. Looking at the donors list, the total of 82 donations in Wucheng county were concentrated on 6 cantons, Yifeng 移風, Zhenze 震澤, Changye 長樂, Chongxiao 崇孝, Dezheng 德政, and Yongxin 永新, and 15 villages.\textsuperscript{410}

There are cases that a canton or a village could fall under more than one county’s jurisdiction spatially during the Song-Yuan transition, such as Wu town 烏鎮, Yifeng canton 移風鄉, Zhenze canton 震澤鄉, and Yongxin canton 永新鄉.\textsuperscript{411} Here I have a brief analysis on the case of Wu town 烏鎮. The town was extremely rich in water resource for canals and irrigation, and the Grand Canal ran through nearby in the south.

Wu town was located in the crossroads of three routes, including Huzhou, Jiaxing and

\textsuperscript{408} Shiba 2012:391.
\textsuperscript{409} Shiba 2012:375-9. Chart 4 (Song village number) and 5 (Yuan village number). Also chart 6 shows the population growth in Huzhou during the Yuan period.
\textsuperscript{410} Yongxin 永新 is a new canton in the Yuan.
\textsuperscript{411} Wu town 烏鎮 and Qing town 青鎮 belong to both Wucheng county, Huzhou route 潍州路烏程縣 and Jiaxing county, Jiaxing route 嘉興路嘉興縣; Yifeng Canton 移風鄉 belongs to both Wucheng county, Huzhou route 潍州路烏程縣 and Jiaxing county, Jiaxing route 嘉興路嘉興縣; Zhengze canton 震澤鄉 belongs to both Wucheng county, Huzhou route 潍州路烏程縣 and Wujiang county, Pingjiang route 平江路吳江縣; Yongxin canton 永新鄉 belongs to both Chongde county, Jiaxing route 嘉興路崇德縣 and Wucheng county, Huzhou route 潍州路烏程縣.
Pingjiang, and two counties Wucheng and Jiaxing. The town was in fact a twin city, which was divided by a river. The east part is Qingdun 青墩 belong to Jiaxing route, and the west part is Wudun 烏墩 belong to Huzhou route. Sometimes they together were called town of Wuqing 烏青. Wudun is more developed and populous, so sometimes Wu town only refers to the town of Wudun. Its strategically important location and adequacy of agricultural and water resources accelerated its development as a newly emerged market town in the Song-Yuan period. In the donors’ list, Wu town had one of the highest local level donation rate, and there were 9 temples mentioned as the donors’ affiliated Buddhist institutions.\footnote{9 temples are Pujing Monastery 普靜寺, Guangfu Monastery 廣福寺, Futian Monastery 福田寺, Ciyun Monastery 慈雲寺, Tongji Chapel 通濟庵, Zhucheng Chapel 祝成庵, Shi? Chapel 施□庵, Puji Chapel 溥濟庵, and You? Chapel 佑□庵. Richard von Glahn studies Pujing Monastery 普靜寺, also named Yongfu Monastery 永福寺, which was the largest monastery in Wu town. von Glahn 2003:196-7.} As Richard von Glahn had studied before, Wu town’s status raised as a local prominent village, was after the building of temples. It marked the level of civil cooperation and closed ties with neighboring towns.\footnote{von Glahn 2003:196.} These temples were not limited to those of the three religions, but also shrines and temples of local deities and traditional gods such as earth god 土地公 and city god 城隍. Overall, economic advancement and urban growth in Wu town during the Song-Yuan period due to its rich environmental resources and location, influenced mutually with its religious popularization and diversity. Thus, Wu town homed one of the largest congregations of religious activists who had both devotional desire and financial capacity to sponsor the sūtra prints.

(Figure 21)
Conclusion

My research shows the social background and spatial distribution of local lay people in Puning Buddhist canon printing sponsorship. Their participation desires and donation amounts were closely connected with the growth of economy and religions in the local Jiangnan society during the Song and Yuan periods. Local activism of the laity on religious affairs was prospering before and after the White Cloud was designated as an official religious sect, in the early Yuan period. The White Cloud sect received government support as shown in Chapter 3, but its lay foundation based on the existing regional social networks was self sufficient, mutual aided, and local driven. The social network of the Puning canon donors included middle and lower classes, and covers entirely and exclusively the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion. The donors include both gender, all marriage status, different family size, and with and without monastic devotion. Donation wishes vary but highly concentrate on memorial for the deceased and their rebirth, which were influenced by both Confucian and Buddhist teachings especially filial piety and pure land. The cost of sponsoring the sūtra print was affordable and moderate, and the speedy completion feature promised the higher preference of this canon print project in comparison to other religious merit gaining projects in the local society. Overall, the connections between the Puning canon’s retail business and the local society of the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion shows the collaborative closeness and mutual benefits of the White Cloud sect and its Puning canon print press to the local lay people’s daily lives and spiritual needs.

Overall, the connections between the Puning canon’s retail business and the local society of the Hang-Jia-Hu subregion shows the collaborative closeness and mutual
benefits of the White Cloud sect and its Puning canon print press to the local lay people’s daily lives and spiritual needs. As Song historians suggested, the accessibility to the sacredness and spiritual benefits, unmediated by religious specialists, by ordinary people had remarkably increased since the Song dynasty. In other words, local lay population became more independent in the pursuit of religious advantages that apart from the official regulations and monastic restrictions. The enterprise of the Puning canon printing through lay donation was a way for the White Cloud to compete with other sects and religions, who were also trying to offer people efficient ways to access the sacred world such as the White Lotus sect’s doctrinal promotion of Maitreyist and millenarian teachings. In Hang-Jia-Hu plain subregion, though lay people were not necessarily members of the White Cloud sect, the sect itself became a monopoly in the business of money for salvation, at least shown in the data from these donation to the White Cloud-administered Puning canon printing project. This adds on the sect’s successful business of money for protection and duty exemption, as demonstrated in Chapter 2.

---

Figure 19: Distribution of the Puning canon local donors
Figure 20: The Hang-Jia-Hu Subregion
Figure 21: Wu town Wuzhen 烏鎮
PART III: The Mix of the “Three Teachings”

Chapter 5. Being a Gentleman of the Three Teachings: The Writings of the “White Cloud Monk”

The Theory of the Three Teachings, their meanings are the same. Confucian teaching is about benevolence, loyalty, ceremony, wisdom, and honesty. It is for faith and piety to emperor and father. Buddhist teaching is about compassion and saving those who are suffering. It is for educating people who are trapped. Daoist teaching is about peace and quiet. It is for forgoing greed and avarice.

Kong Qingjue, Zhengxing ji. 415

Also being a gentleman is no different from being Buddhist and is similar to the Daoist way. In eliminating evil and following the good, (they are) all as one.

Kong Qingjue, Zhengxing ji. 416

The alleged founder of the White Cloud movement, Kong Qingjue, or the so-called “White Cloud monk” 白雲和尚, has written several short essays some of which are extant. Analysis of these texts reinforces the argument that the White Cloud movement was not a Buddhist school. The White Cloud monk’s teaching was a mix of concepts borrowed from Buddhism, Daoism and Confucianism. The so-called mix of the “Three Teachings” was a popular trend in local lay belief system in the Song-Yuan

---

415 Zhengxing ji 正行集, Chinese version, Xuzang jign 繼藏經, 112: 444b. 1.7-2.1; CBETA 63, No.1254.
period. In his writings, Kong praises the good ethics of being a gentleman and provides simple path for people to follow in order to become morally superior. In this chapter, I introduce all the extant texts authored Kong Qingjue, the White Cloud monk, or the White Cloud Buddhist, both in Chinese and Tangut. I hope to reconstruct the essential teachings of Kong, and the central philosophy of the White Cloud sect. I argue that the White Cloud sect had no overriding philosophical motives, as shown in Kong’s scattered doctrines.

The Puning canon includes two works of Kong Qingjue. They are Zhengxing ji 正行集 “Collection of Virtuous Acts” and Chuxue ji 初學記 “Record for Apprentice.”

Zhengxing ji is a short guidebook that uses simple language and aphorisms (in poetic forms) to educate laymen to become better people according to the three teachings of Buddhism, Confucianism and Daoism. Chuxue ji is a short guidebook for Buddhist beginners to achieve enlightenment and advance through different stages. Although current versions of these two books are from the Puning canon. They were added into the canon in Huangqing 1 (1312) based on an imperial edict which took place over 150 years after the death of Kong Qingjue. Overmyer argues that they are authentic works of Kong. I agree on their authenticity, based on their contents and commentary and on their official sanction in the Puning canon.

Today in the Kara Khoto collection at the Institute of Oriental Manuscripts (IOM) in St. Petersburg, there is a Tangut script manuscript which is a translation of Zhengxing

---

417 Overmyer translated the titles as Zhengxing ji “Collected Teachings on Right Conduct” and Chuxue ji “A Record of Buddhist Teachings for Those Beginning Their Studies,” Overmyer 1982:625.
418 The “vow statement” 發願文 of Shen Mingren 沈明仁 in Huangqing 2 (1313), in the colophon attached to Zhengxing ji (Puning canon). Part of it was also quoted in the beginning of Chapter 3.
419 Overmyer 1982:625.
It has been deciphered recently by Sun Bojun. Since the last page of this copy is missing a large portion where acolophon containing information on the original Chinese copy might have been, we do not know whether the text should be dated to Xi Xia or Yuan. This manuscript is a part of the Tangut script collection at IOM that was found in Kara Khoto by Russian explorer Pyotr Kozlov (1863-1935 CE) from 1908 to 1914. Manuscripts therein have been dated to both Xi Xia and Yuan periods, from the late twelfth century on. My research suggests that this Tangut script Zhengxing ji was printed around the mid Yuan period, after Zhengxing ji and Chuxue ji were included in the Puning canon. It was during the same time that Guanzhuba sponsored the printing of Tangut script Hexi Canon in Hangzhou. So it was at the peak of new Tangut literature production in the Yuan dynasty. This Zhengxing ji may have been included in the Hangzhou version of the Hexi canon. We do not have the table of contents of the Hexi canon, but it would not be surprising if it were closely related to the Puning canon. The Hexi canon was meant to be distributed to the former Xi Xia territory, including Kara Khoto. This it explains why the manuscript was found in Kara Khoto. My argument thus suggests that the White Cloud movement in the Southern Song dynasty never spread to Xi Xia (in fact never left Jiangnan) and so too Kong Qingjue’s teaching for the development of Tangut Buddhism. It confronts Kirill Solonin’s recent hypothesis that the White Cloud sect had profound influence on Buddhism in Xi Xia. The Tanguts became interested in the White Cloud sect, only after their diaspora monks relocated to the Jiangnan region and made connections with the sect’s local activists. (The Mongols

became interested in the White Cloud sect, was first from the sect leader Dao’an’s petition in imperial audience with Khubilai Khan.)

According to the biographic information of Kong Qingjue, there are some other works written by him. But these essays were all lost, including “Discourse on Verifying the Fundamentals” Zhengzong lun 證宗論, “Compilation of Three Teachings” Sanjiao bian 三教編, and “Song of Ten Stages” Shidi ge 十地歌.421 From these titles, we can speculate that: Zhengzong lun might be the discussion (lun) about legitimizing the White Cloud sect’s teaching and practice, while criticizing the Chan School.422 Sanjiao bian might be a collective compendium of the “Three Teachings” - Confucianism, Daoism and Buddhism. Shidi ge might be a poetic song that reciting key concepts of the ten stages of Huayan Buddhism, which had been borrowed by Kong Qingjue in his teachings, as shown in Chuxue ji.

In extant Tangut documents, we find that four Tangut documents, including three religious texts and one image, are authored or contain information about a White Cloud Buddhist (Baiyun shizi 白雲釋子, 白雲大師), or a White Cloud Master (Baiyun dashi 白雲大師). These texts are “Compiled Essay on Reflective Words of Three Generations” (Sandai shuming yanwen ji 三代相照言文集, 三教敎化文集) by Monks Huizhao 慧照 and Daohui 道慧, “Key Essay on Three Reflections

421 Overmyer translated the titles as “Discourse on Verifying the Fundamentals,” “A Compilation of the Three Teachings,” and “Songs of the Ten Stages of Bodhisattvic Attainment.” “Song of Ten Stages” Shidi ge 十地歌, might be another title of Chuxue ji. Because the main content of the latter talks about the ten stages. Overmyer 1982:625.
422 One might suspect that zong might refer to Zong Mi (784-841), a Buddhist master in Northern China, whose idea has influenced Buddhist theoretical development in the Song, Liao, Jin, and Xia, and afterwards the Yuan as well. Solonin 1998; Mario Poceski, Ordinary Mind as the Way: the Hongzhou School and the Growth of Chan Buddhism, 2007.
and Nine Entries” (Sanguan jiumen xiansuo wen 三觀九門旋鎖文) by the White Cloud Buddhist, and “Treatise of Dharmic Essentials of Pure Land Rebirth” (Qiusheng jingtu fayao lun 求生淨土法要論) by State Preceptor Jizhao 寂照國師. There is also an image mentioned by the White Cloud Buddhist in the illustration of the “Chart of the Master-Disciple Succession of the Chan Gate that Transmits the Mind Ground in China” (Zhonghua chuanxindi chanmen shizi chengxi tu 中華傳心地禪門師資承襲圖) by Guifeng Zongmi 圭峰宗密 (780-841). In the third section of this chapter, I will discuss the features of these works. I argue that these Tangut texts are not related to Kong Qingjue at all, but it is possible that they are connected to or from the Hexi canon and the printing business of the White Cloud sect in the Yuan. Sun Bojun not only claims that these works were translated and printed into the Hexi canon in Yuan Hangzhou, but also that the White Cloud Buddhist and White Cloud Master was none other than Kong Qingjue. 

Kirilll Solonin completely disagrees with this argument and goes further to claim that these works belong to the Xi Xia period. He also argues for the inevitable influence of Liao Buddhism on these Tangut texts, especially the Huayan and Chan schools. 

Overall, in this chapter, I shall follow up the current academic debate, translate these texts from Tangut to English, and decipher them as to trace their meanings and provenance.

---

“Collection of Virtuous Acts” 龍凖集 Zhengxing ji 正行集

The text in question in the Russian IOM collection ИНВ. No.146, 龍凖集 (Tangut: tʃʰja dʒiŋ ʃiŋ) is the Tangut translation of Kong Qingjue’s “Collection of Virtuous Acts” Zhengxing ji 正行集. It is movable type print and butterfly-style binding, which suggest the possible connection with Buddhist canons printed in Yuan Hangzhou. Overmyer, who has made a preliminary study of the Chinese version, claims that Zhengxing ji is “devoted entirely to an ethical exhortation along Confucian lines” with few Buddhist terms. It discusses the correct conduct of a gentleman junzi 君子 and how one should pursue becoming a gentleman. It mixes the “three teachings,” and quotes many terms from Confucian classics. Solonin suggests that Zhengxing ji can be in the category of “kindness persuasion” 劝善 aphoristic literature from the Song to Yuan period, including Liao, Jin, and Xi Xia. Here I compare the Tangut and Chinese version. The Chinese version is from the Puning canon, as mentioned in Chapter 3. The Tangut version is shorter and more abbreviated. It is unclear whether the Tangut author made the text brief when translating it or if he translated the text based on a different Chinese version shorter than the one in the Puning canon. Sun

---

425 There are two different texts that have the same Tangut name 龍凖集. Each one has several extant versions. The first one is Kong Qingjue’s Zhengxing ji; for this there are ИНВ. No.146 (乙本 Nishida, movable type print) and ИНВ. No. 7579 (丙本 Nishida). The second is by a Xi Xia period Tangut court scholar 曹道樂’s Dexing ji 德行集; for this there are ИНВ. No.799 (甲本 Nishida, movable type print), ИНВ. No.4930 (甲本 Nishida, movable type print, exactly same as ИНВ. No.799) and ИНВ. No.3947 (甲本 Nishida). Nishida Tatsuo 西田龍雄, Seika Ōkoku no gengo to bunka 西夏王国の言語と文化, 1997, P375-6; Nie Hongyin 聶鴻音, Xixiawen Dexing ji yanjiu 西夏文德行集研究, PP2-4; Shi Jinbo and Yasen Wushou’er, 2000 PP42-3; Sun Bojun, 2011:206.  
Bojun first discovered the Tangut version and translated it to Chinese. But her translation contains errors, and she has mistakenly read some Tangut characters which led to misunderstanding. Here I offer a more precise text transcription from the original document’s image, and provide a more coherent and detailed translation on the Tangut version. I give an English translation to the Tangut version but not to the Chinese version. The text follows the order of the Tangut version. As for Chinese, the italic texts are the duplicate of displaced text. Without the italic duplicates, the Chinese text is in its original order.

(Figures 22-28)

Collection of Virtuous Acts

凡君子者。不在乎貴。不在乎賤。不在乎貧。不在乎富。唯在乎行也。

君子之體。德行以成之。孝敬以加之。故其廣固貞淨。世莫得焉。其廣也如海。其固也如山。其貞也如松。其淨也如水。

When it declines…… pure, also be able to hide treasury pearls.

如海之廣者。深不可量。闊不可測。減之不降。添之不盈。渾之不能使其濁。穢之不能改其清。亦乃隱於珠懷其寶。

428 Overmyer translation: “The superior man is not concerned with social position or wealth, but only with his conduct.” Overmyer 1982:629.


431 unclear.
No edge and no territory (limit), all included.
浩渺廓落。無不納焉。

(Tangut version see later.)
如山之固者。高而不危。久而不朽。移之不動。搖之不傾。(displacement 1)

(No Tangut text)
幽靜不能使其絕。塵埃不能合其有。亦乃隱於賢藏於仙。崎嶇曠邈。無不產焉。

(Tangut version see later.)
如松之貞者。榮枯莫知。蒼翠長在。霜雪不能令其凋。(displacement 2)

(Tangut version see later.)
冬夏不能變其色。如水之淨者。濟渭各色。平澹自然。鑑物不能遁其形。潤澤不能踰其利。
(displacement 3)

Gentleman, magnanimous with great intelligence, does not cherish wealth.
凡君子者。寬宏大量。高識遠見。

When prosper no disaster, righteous character and pure act. Harm and defamation cannot provoke, humble and not stubborn.
(No original Chinese text.)

In the dirty world but not polluted by dirt, in desire but not driven by it. Heart has no evil deeds, and receive intelligent people assistance.
(No original Chinese text.)

Do not deliberately display self-serving acts, do not pursue fame. Act in seclusion, do not declare power and calm, heart does not release beyond limit.

432 In Sun’s paper, 鯨 is a wrong character 鯨.
433 Overmyer translation: “The superior man is generous and liberal in great measure, with high wisdom and a long-range view.” Overmyer 1982:629.
434 In Sun Bojun’s paper, 魚 is a wrong character 魚, and 魚 is a wrong character 魚.
435 Overmyer translation: “He controls his nature, quiets his spirit, cultivate his virtue, and accumulates (good) conduct.” Overmyer 1982:629.
Neither arrogant nor conceited, neither defame nor praise. This is the righteousness of a gentleman.

Someone as firm as a mountain, act according to virtuous art, no move no shake/sway.

Someone as strong as a pine, while in trouble still not change his aspiration, therefore he is as strong as pine.

Someone as pure as water, there is no wealth that is not proliferating, no identity that is not clear, no flaw that is not dismissed, and no tarnish that is not cleaned.

A Gentleman, none of his politenesses are not respectful and none of his words are not kept.

There is no loss of filial piety, no loss of loyalty and righteousness. (He can) understand the manifestation of intelligence and foolish, and distinguish justice and evilness.

The pursuit of abundance should not lead to the disorganization of hears??, the pursuit of beneficiary should not lead to committing crimes.


437 Overmyer translation: “He is neither disgraced nor arrogant. He has no regard for slander or praise. He neither amplifies the faults of others, nor acts on his own mistakes. He harmonizes with the bright spots of others, and shares their lot in the world. He promotes them when they are worthy, and gives rein to their virtue.” Overmyer 1982:629.
(He will) not change his heart because of defamation and praise, and not remember any hatred. (He is) magnanimous and hold righteousness, firms his inspirational heart. Therefore, (his character is) as pure as water.

(Tangut version see earlier.)

禮無不恭。事無不從。(displacement 4)

(No Tangut translation.)

孝無不順。義無不忠。智察智慧。審別賢愚。不以多求而亂心。不以貪暴而害己。不以塗炭而樂禍。不以忘舊而逐新。故任道而含弘。常堅心而守志。

These four kinds, are the body of a gentleman.

此四者。大人君子之要道也。

Also gentleman, (his) acts match the sun and the moon, intelligence same as mountain and valley. They followed four seasons, and keep harmony with the earth.

又須行同日月。量比山川。順四時。合萬物。

(He is) like the sun and the moon that do not shine exclusively heavy, like winter and summer that produce and accumulate equality. (He) includes all mountains, valleys, and ten thousand things.

行同日月者。使之無偏照。量比山川者。使之無遷改。順四時者。使之有期信。合萬物者。使之知動靜。

When gentleman has virtue his praises are sung in the four directions. When magistrate has virtue, family heads respect and promote (him).

故曰。君子有德。四方美之。郡守有德。百姓欽之。

(Layman ?) has virtue, relatives and others all respect him. Big household has virtue, the family prospers.
鄉閭有德。眾人仰之。家尊有德。門風顯之。

Heaven does not have a relative; it has virtue as its assistance.
皇天無親。惟德是輔。  

(He is) like a fragrant grass, not similar to ten thousand grasses. Everyone likes (him).
如蓬生於麻中。不扶而自直。如蘭雜於叢芳。不待薰而自馨。

Also gentleman, benefits himself (but) not enrage others.
不以利己而損人。

If not others do not enforce self command, humble to others and not self boast.
不以非他而自是。不以卑人而自尊。

When others defamed do not praise, should not make factions with others, do not seek repay for others' built hatred.
不以輕人而自重。不以非道而交友。不以結怨而讎人。

Also gentleman, do not seek repay for performing grace to others.
施恩而不望報。 (displacement 5)

Do not require property that are not necessary, and do not accept reward if no accomplishment is deserved.
不窺無義之財。不受無功之賞。

(Tangut version see earlier.)
施恩而不望報。 (displacement 5)

(No Tangut translation.)
The acts of ancestors, were only according to virtue and loyalty.
(No original Chinese text.)

Now people’s acts have many frauds and fakeness.
(No original Chinese text.)

All kind acts, (if) not perform one of few of them, how it likely belong to a (kind act)?
(No original Chinese text.)

Often generating two hearts, kind and evil mix, and bad and good follow each other.
(No original Chinese text.)

Purity turns out turbid, and bad turns out good.
(No original Chinese text.)

These are all foolish people, and also (their acts) established the roots for their crimes.
(No original Chinese text.)

(No Tangut translation.)

Overmyer translation: “and when he repays kindness he regrets that he has not done enough.” Overmyer 1982:630.

Overmyer concludes this section as “moral testing” which borrows concepts from Daoist sources including Laozi and Zhuangzi, Overmyer 1982:629-30, footnote 17.

40 positive kinds 等 and 8 negative kinds of people. In Tangut version, there are total of 25 kinds, all positive.

四十八等。
The sagely man captures the ritual of the heaven and earth.
The wisdom man hard to calculate his deep knowledge.
聖人則天法地。賢人杳冥難測。

(No Tangut translation.)
道人心無滯礙。覺人知其本性。捨人知無便與。戒人察其罪福。忍人口無過失。進人修無懈怠。定人心無散亂。

The smart man knows all stratagems.
The righteous man humble on virtue and yield at accomplishments.
智人遠於機變。義人推功讓德。

The cautious man investigates things without error.
The upright man keeps principle without inclined.
審人視聽不非。政人公道不私。

The pure man does not accept unexpected wealth.
The solid man does not move his heart differently.
省人非財不納。安人心無異動。

The reclusive man hides from the world and cultivate his virtue.
The reverent man does not give up on rituals and rites.
隱人遁世育德。恭人禮度不虧。

The respected man promotes seniors and loves juniors.
The trusted man does not go back on his word.
敬人尊上愛下。信人言無反覆。

The humble man does not violate the law.
The magnanimous man does not act meanly to others.
謹人不越禮度。寬人臨下不危。

449 In Sun Bojun’s paper, 藪 is a wrong character 穩.
The deep man does not declare his previous views.
深人遠見未萌。

(No Tangut translation.)
善人內行不嗔

The merciful man loves to do good things.
行人好述善事。

The able man knows deeply and sees widely.
The loyal man has righteous heart to the king.
謀人深知遠見。忠人事君盡節。

The modest man praises the intelligent and promotes the ingenious.
The prepared man does not destroy or abandon things.
讓人薦賢任能。儉人節用不費。

The charitable man immediately gives when he sees the poor.
(No original Chinese text.)

(No Tangut translation.)
孝人奉侍不闕。

The intelligent man demonstrates everything clearly.
明人不處暗事

The eloquent man’s words have right meaning.
辯人不納閑詞。

The known man’s heart has no barrier.
(No original Chinese text.)

The enlightened man obviously understands the essential character.
(No original Chinese text.)
學人親近知識。慈人心無殺害。富人濟貧惠物。貴人敬佛重僧。達人不貪五慾。清人不染俗塵。靜人覺意知空。大人心包天地。好人舉善薦賢。愚人不知慚耻。癡人不鑑名賢。頑人不懼公法。惡人常好殺生。濁人不分明白。俗人貪財戀色。逆人不孝父母。小人不識尊卑。{450}

These twenty-five acts, are the ways that a gentleman should carry [himself?].

凡君子立身為人。無逾此四十八等。但以大道合其體。則是聖人賢人之倫。{451}

A gentleman. {452}

(No original Chinese text.)

does not accumulate his filial piety to parents; does not accumulate his kindness to children;

若孝不行於家。慈不行於己。

does not accumulate his endowment to relatives; does not accumulate to bestow people;

恩不行於親。惠不及於人。

does not accumulate donations to the rich.

(No original Chinese text.)

義不施於友。忠不施於國。勇不救於危。謀不信於善。寬不臨於下。明不審於事。

Also calling someone a relative but not a kinsfolk, it is flatter,
not seeing the closest relative who is poor, it is rebel.
見非親而親者。謟也。見親貧而疎者。逆也。

(No Tangut translation.)
背善向惡。謀陷忠良。親附小人。不近君子者。此乃上天不容之物。何足言之。

The wise man admires virtue, the foolish man loves wealth.
賢者欽於德。愚者重於財。

People who dress magnificently, should know others who are experiencing hardship.
綺羅華飾者，須知有布素之衣。

People who eat sweet food, should know others who are eating bran.
珍飱玉食者，須知有糟糠之餈。

People who live in beautiful houses, should think about others who still live in grass tents.
雕墻峻宇者，須知有茅茨之室。

People who have an abundance of grain should take care of others who do not have but a few bushel.
積粟千鍾者，須知有斗筲之儲。

People who wear satin and brocade should know the people with brown clothes.
(No original Chinese text.)

(No Tangut translation.)
榮官大爵者。須知有冤屈之害。

People who bear stability and peace should think about other’s toils.
安居樂處者。須知有驅役之勞。

"brown clothes" often refer to the special garment 绯衣 bestowed to a monk from the Tangut emperor in Xi Xia period. If it does not refer to monks, then it repeat the same meaning of a previous sentence 綺羅華飾者，須知有布素之衣。
People who ride horses and sit on carriages should think about the people who walk or hold the carriages.
躍馬揮鞭者，須知有負擔之苦。

Also humans should know others have bitterness. If one does not know others’ bitterness one is not human.
(No original Chinese text.)

Do not know others’ insufficiency based on self sufficiency, thus not human. Hating others and generating hatred, thus not human.
(No original Chinese text.)

One who sees someone in pain without saving him is not human.
見危不救者，非人也。

(No Tangut translation.)

One who sees someone in pain without saving him is not human.
見危不救者。非人也。

454

One who sees someone in pain without saving him is not human.

Do not give when seeing people in poor, thus not a human. Thinking of repaying back when making offerings, thus not a human.

Do not repent when knowing the fault, thus not a human. Do not respect elders when in lower position, thus not a human.

Spreading rumors to hurt others, thus not a human.

The following texts mentioning “Not a human” 非人也, as Overmyer noticed, are borrowed from Mencius. Overmyer 1982:630.
Seeking private interest when serving in public office, thus not a human.
在公納私者。非人也。

Forgetting the bitterness after becoming rich, thus not a human. Remembering the past resentment after becoming important, thus not a human.
(No original Chinese text.)

(No Tangut translation.)
不孝父母者。非人也。不友兄弟者。非人也。不和六親者。非人也。不樂好事者。非人也。

If a gentleman, knows three capabilities. The three capabilities, are the heave, the earth, and the human.
夫人須通三才。

Learned six skills. The six skills, are rite, music, archery, chess, writing, and calculation.
懷六藝。

Respecting five wonders. The five wonders, are not wasting when sending grace, not complaining when doing things, not being avarice after becoming prosperous, no fearing when self is weak, do not being wicked when in higher position.
具五美。

Breaking off four evilness. Not giving teachings then harming and killing, thus is the first evilness.
斷四惡。
Not giving warning then blaming failed accomplishment, thus is the second evilness.

Not keeping the words and punishing those who cannot meet the standard, thus is the third evilness.

Holding wealth but stingy without offering or giving up, thus is the fourth evilness.

Eliminating three traps. Three traps, are alcohol, lust, and fortune.

Raising nine thoughts. Nine thoughts, are the thought of clear when seeing, the thought of intelligence when hearing, the thought of happiness when reviewing, the thought of humbleness when gesturing, the thought of loyalty when speaking, the thought of diligence when working, the thought of inquiry when doubting, the thought of repent when angering, and the thought of appreciation when receiving.

Fearing four knowings. Four knowings, are the heaven knows, the earth knows, you know, and I know.

（No Tangut translation.）

莫睡眠。演胎息。慎言語。節飲食。此乃謹身節用之本也。
Examining three mirrors. Three mirrors, are the mirrors of face/self, the ancestors’ words, and the wisdom men.
(No original Chinese text.)

Also human, should establish four doors.

Also there are four righteousness, to the king, teachers, relatives and friends, and wives and concubines.
(No original Chinese text.)

---

466 三鏡  The “three mirrors” or the “three examinations” 三鑑/三鑒, from Xintangshu 新唐書 j.97. In Sun’s paper, 鑑 is a wrong character 鏉.
467 错误 Tangut font 宗 (#1526).
468 ibid.
469 ibid.
470 Serving friends 朋友 for the “door of righteousness” 義門 has been changed to serving brothers for the “door of righteousness” 義門; Serving teacher 師長 for 謹門 the “door of respect” has been changed to raising relatives for the “door of grace” 恩門.
The righteousness to the king, is to risk life for the sake of state affairs.
(No original Chinese text.)

The righteousness to teachers, is to serve and respect.
(No original Chinese text.)

The righteousness to relatives and friends, is to talk to each other and not disobey.
(No original Chinese text.)

The righteousness to wives and concubines, is to love each other and hold polite manner.
(No original Chinese text.)

Also gentleman, should act filial piety and loyalty.
(No original Chinese text.)

Should establish trust and righteousness, should establish love and reverence.
(No original Chinese text.)

Heart and plan are broad and wide, kindness and compassion are magnanimous and big.
(No original Chinese text.)

Also human, promotes others and humbles himself, thus people also respect and promote him.
(No original Chinese text.)

Acting grace and loving people, thus people also love, think, and close to him.
(No original Chinese text.)

People are not higher or lower, should establish virtuous and equal heart.
(No original Chinese text.)

471 Wrong Tangut font 饏 (#1526).
472 ibid.
473 In Sun’s paper, 饏 is a wrong character 饕.
Giving clothes when seeing (people) cold, handing out food when seeing (people) hungry.
(No original Chinese text.)

Saving (people) and searching for medicine when seeing (people) sick, making peace and stability when seeing the elders.
(No original Chinese text.)

Acting gracefully when seeing the young, love accordingly when seeing the good, persuading when seeing the bad.
(No original Chinese text.)

Moving close to them when seeing wisdom men, following them when seeing virtuous men.
(No original Chinese text.)

Respecting them when seeing the people who understand the manners, reverencing and promoting them when seeing people who have righteousness.
(No original Chinese text.)

Also gentleman, has no different from Buddhists, and is similar to the way of Daoists. Eliminating the evil and following the good, (they are) all same as one.
(No original Chinese text.)

三教之說。其義一同。儒教。則仁義禮智信。歸於忠孝君父焉。釋教。則慈悲救苦。歸於化誘羣迷焉。道教。則寂默恬澹。歸於無貪無愛焉。有故三教之言。可守而尊之。尋而究之。既洞其微。達其原。自然得聖人賢人之道。善人君子之行也。475

474 無 is a wrong font, minus one stroke.
475 My translation is in the quote in the beginning of this chapter. Overmyer translation: “As for the doctrines of the three teachings, their meaning is the same. Confucianism (advocates) co-humanity, righteousness, propriety, wisdom, and trustworthiness, which result in loyalty to the ruler and filial respect toward fathers. Buddhism (advocates) compassion, pity, and the relief of suffering, which result in the conversion of the lost. Taoism (advocates) stillness, quietness, and calm, which result in the absence of desire and emotional detachment. Thus for good reason the doctrines of the three teachings should be preserved and honored, followed and studied. When one understands their subtitles and thoroughly comprehends their origins, then one naturally attains to the Way of the sages and worthies and the proper conduct of gentlemen and good persons.” Overmyer 1982:630-1.
Also gentleman, cannot be polluted by color, and does not generate fury when meeting anger. (He has) no angry heart when others denouncing (him), and not express happiness together when (others) praise (him).
(No original Chinese text.)

Also watching heart that has no eternity, and examining dharma that has no appearance. Being good or evil just following heart, and changing cause and consequence.
(No original Chinese text.)

Praying for Buddha in all directions, better than one prays in self heart.
(No original Chinese text.)

Self heart is Buddha, and Buddha is self heart. Heart and Buddha interacts, thus self becomes Buddha’s heart.
(No original Chinese text.)

If heart knows the essence, why need to search afar?
(No original Chinese text.)

The one who is awaken of the way, is also treated same as to others. Understanding profoundly the words’ meaning, thus you have no difference in essence.
(No original Chinese text.)

…basic… in vulgar writings, do not say the uniqueness of filial piety and loyalty. In twelve Buddhist sūtras, they begin to talk about eliminating a personality because of an ego.479

---

476 is a wrong font, missing one stroke.
477 In Sun’s paper, is a wrong character .
478 The right part of the character is missing, Sun thinks it is . I disagree because apparently there is a right radical missing.
Compassion and loving to give, are not different from what the Buddhist teachings and king’s laws say.

All people except self, are all treated in one simple manner.

Intelligent people research and speculate, then they understand the difference of before and after.

This brief is telling my words. It is the essence of establishing a body.

不敢深其意飾其詞。所貴匡導盲俗。所貴匡導盲俗。垂于後世。言之不足。故為贊以申之。

美哉君子 惟善則履 存忠存孝 不識其嗜
行不逾經 言不逾史 靖默端莊 高導深旨
向善背惡 披心求理 貧則自樂 富亦好義
嗟乎斯人 實不容易

479 avasthā 四相: an ego 我相 惡 項, a personality 人相 惡 項, a being 眾生相, and a life 慾相. The Diamond sūtra.

480 Overmyer translation: “When the state is supported by such principles as these, why should one worry that yin and yang will not be in harmony, that wind and rain will not be timely, or the common people not secure.” P631

481 Overmyer translation: “In composing this collection, I have not presumed to deal with the meanings of these things in a profound way nor to embroider their phrasing. What I value is providing correct guidance for deluded ordinary folk.” P631
After comparing the two versions, as there are no major differences, we can conclude that they are similar in structure. The Tangut version is an abridged version of the Chinese original. It omits many phrases and sometimes changes the order of sentences. Zhengxing ji hardly quotes Buddhist texts, and only mentions Buddhist terms at the very end; these include 佛, 佛心 and 佛法. In contrast, it borrows quite a few concepts from Confucian classics, mostly Analects, including 三才, 六藝, 五美, and 四惡. Kong Qingjue’s teachings of how to become a gentleman 君子 are established based on Confucian ideology mixed with ideas from Buddhism and Daoism. He harshly criticizes those who demonstrate immoral conduct as being inhuman 非人, and does not offer of the hope of salvation often available in Buddhist doctrine. The tone of the text is as addressing the general lay audience, who could be illiterate to understand the simple teaching. It highlights the rightful acts of a gentleman to his related parties, including the emperor, parents, friends, etc. The text offers step-by-step instruction that one can take actions to achieve a gentleman’s moral standards. The text also uses six character poems to simply categorize people into 48 kinds (25 kinds in the Tangut version). The briefness of the teaching demonstrates that Zhengxing ji is not a religious text, but one of the Song-Yuan vernacular literature. There
is neither mention of the White Cloud sect nor of the life of Kong Qingjue. The purpose of Kong writing this short essay is not to establish the sect based on these rather hackneyed ideas, but to reach a large lay audience to keep good ethics in an orderly society and remain aware of self and others.

“Record for Apprentice” *Chuxue ji* 初學記

Like *Zhengxing ji*, *Chuxue ji* is for a general audience – the lay community. *Chuxue ji* is particularly for the beginners of Buddhist learning. The text promotes the “Three Teachings,” including ideas from Buddhism, especially the Huayan school. Kong claims this is the true Buddhist teaching, and it must be studied. He explains some key Buddhist concepts, including “four fruitions” (aka. “four stages” of enlightenment) and “ten stages.” So *Chuxue ji* might just be the lost “Song of Ten Stages” *Shidi ge* 十地歌 which attributed to be among Kong’s works as well.\(^{482}\) The Buddhist concepts in *Chuxue ji* are not included in *Zhengxing ji*. The current available version of *Chuxue ji* is from the Puning canon, which contains a detailed commentary by the Puning Monastery abbot Dao’an. The entire text of Kong’s original *Chuxue ji*, is a collection of six character poems. Here I include Overmyer’s translation of some parts of the text (marked as Overmyer), and my translation of the rest text (marked as Kaiqi).\(^{483}\) I also refer to Dao’an’s commentary, in order to illuminate key Buddhist terms appearing in the text.

\(^{482}\) The “Ten Stages” are the “Ten Bodhisattva Bhūmi,” they are ten paths of bodhisattva’s awakening.

\(^{483}\) For Overmyer’s translation, I change Chinese transcription from Wade-Giles to Peiyin.
The Buddhist way must be studied, birth and death must be a cause for concern. As one busily twists and turns through this fleeting life, wisdom and intelligence turn into stupidity. Do not wonder that study of the Way does not succeed, when people all throw themselves into pits of heresy. If you wish to avoid being cheated and deceived, do not depart from the Ten Stages and the Three Vehicles. If one does not rely on orthodox teaching (one’s quest) is just like climbing a tree to catch fish, or groping for the moon in a well.

佛道不可不學 生死不可不憂 兒區枉過浮生 智慧翻成愚拙 莫怪學道不成 時人盡投邪窟 欲得不遭欺詐 莫離十地三乘 若是非依正法 恰如登樹捉魚 又似井中摸月

The sudden teaching of the marvelous enlightenment of Buddha-vehicle, calls Buddha’s name in ten stages. The fifth fruition, leads through Pratyekabuddhayāna to Pratyekabuddha. The fourth fruition leads to the Arhat of six abhijñā (“supernormal knowledge”). The third, second and first fruitions, each of them has śikṣā (“Threefold Training”) that does not have abhijñā. Prajñā enlightens heart and sees true character. The item names are called “inner worldlings.”

頓教妙覺佛乘 十地稱呼菩薩 五果緣覺辟支 四果六通羅漢 三果二果一果 諸漏未有神通 般若悟心見性 名目稱呼內凡

If one’s cultivation of the stages of fruition does not succeed, then one is attached to emptiness or attached to being. If you wish to understand the foundations of the scriptures, I will now explain them to you. I will not say too much, but to begin one’s study one needs accurate understanding.

若修果位不成 總是著空著有 要知經藏根源 余今為君解說 非是貧道多言 初學要知子細

It is like a bright mirror in the front, which reflects ancient and contemporary, evil and good. All Bodhisattvas appeared out of dust and sand; this is inevitably unchangeable.

猶如明鏡當前 照見古今邪正 塵沙諸佛出來 此事終無移改

484 Chuxue ji 初學記, CBETA 電子佛典 V1.9 (Big5) 普及版, Xuzangjing 續藏經 vol.63, No. 1253.
485 Overmyer 1982:626.
486 Liutong 六通 means Liu shentong 六神通, six abhijñā (“supernormal knowledge”).
487 Overmyer 1982:626.
If studying the Way, first seek for the cause (of salvation). The stages of attainment are only a matter of religious cultivation. If one’s attainment and accomplishment are not complete, then no matter how glib and quick one’s speech, it has no relationship at all with true teaching.

學道先求因地 果位直是修行 若非果滿功圓 雖是口快舌端 決定非干正法

The principle and event of the Huayan dharma realm, the one substance and three bodies of True Thusness, are divided into the dharma nature and dharma marks. When united they form the Buddha nature and Buddha mind. Beings both sentient and nonsentient are all included in the marvelous working of complete enlightenment.

華嚴法界理事 真如一體三身 分開法性法相 合成佛性佛心 勿論有情無情 攝屬圓覺妙用

---

488 Overmyer 1982:626.
489 Dharmadhatu 法界 “dharma realm,” includes shifang 十方 “ten directions.”
490 Overmyer 1982:626.
491 Overmyer 1982:627.
Daoist priests give it another title, “emptiness and non-being.” Spirits and immortals call it the primordial vital force. In creative transformation the tiger and dragon intertwine, the cosmic female and male of the universe. (The Daoists) urgently cultivate the nature and nourish the spirit, before one enters the fire one must first refine the self. For Confucius, the Great Ultimate and the Great Simplicity. For Mercius, nourishing the vital force to achieve reality. For Zhuangzi, participating in solitude and silence. For Laozi, the myriad things returning to the root. There are many more names than these, (but) principle and events have neither form nor name. The Great Way must be arranged in ten stages. When it is divided equally it forms three vehicles. Buddhism, Daoism, and Confucianism are divided into three teachings, their scriptures are as limitless as the mountain and seas. If one can but subsume (all) under dao and de, then one is wasting one’s time distinguishing all the schools. Count with your fingers written words as numerous as the sands of the Ganges. Still, they all come down to the Three Vehicles and Ten Stages.

道士別號虗無
神仙謂之元氣
造化虎龍交遘
乾坤離女坎男
急急修性養神
進火先須煉己
孔子太極太素
孟子養浩為真
莊子參寥宴默
老子萬物歸根
更有多般名目
理實無形無名
大道須排十地
均攤乃作三乘
釋道儒分三教
經書山海無窮
若能収屬道德
徒勞萬戶千門
文字屈指數沙
統屬三乘十地

(Kaiqi)
The first stage is Srotāpanna. Advanced one fruit and one path. Attained one category of sambhogakāya. One circle of body halo appears. One category of dust gets cleaned.

第一須陀洹果
進修一果一向
證得一分報身
一重身光出現
一分塵垢去除

(Overmyer) One overleaps the six heavens of the realm of desire, and obtains the small fruition of the first dhyāna. One does not seek worldly fame and profit, and is not stained by passion and defilement. For the whole day through one is united with enlightenment while rejecting impurity.

便超欲界六天
己得初禪小果
世間名利不求
煩惱客塵不染
終日持塵合覺

(Kaiqi)
In sūtra it is established as srotāpanna, and predicts the srota (“stream”) of the saint. Śikṣā is not completely eliminated. So it is also necessary to return to deva seven times, in order to gradually enter into soppadhiśeṣa-nirvāṇa (“nirvāṇa with residue remaining”). It is afraid that small vessel is easy to be filled up. Do not boast the (Buddhist) way in front of people. Swear to seek anuttarā-samyak-sambodhi (“highest perfect awakening”). The early arrival of āsravaksaya-jñāna to anāgāmi, is the shore of life and death. After death the appearance is auspicious, and straightly pointing one figure to show people.

492 Overmyer 1982:628.
The corpse is neither smelly nor decayed. From the beginning the manifestation of dharma is like nature, as a wish the body was born in this way. The road of the way is tortuous and long. Careful advancement and training assist the way.

第二斯陀含果

便與發光相對
便生色界二禪
或生欲界天上
勿令俗事雜牽
又知無我無人
已成無相福田

進修二果二向
證得二分報身
兩重身光出現

《Kaiqi》

The second stage is Sakridāgāmi. Advanced the second fruit and second path. Attained two categories of sambhogakāya. Two circles of body halo appear. So it faces the shining light. One should only keep self-discipline and self-awareness, and do not judge or assert boast to others. One already raise brahmakāyikā and brahmapurohītā, so born the second dhyāna of rūpadhātu. At this stage, sīkṣā is not completely eliminated. The habits of vulgar are not abandoned, so it especially needs one goes and returns. Alternatively, born above the sky of kāmadhātu. The Sanskrit name Sakridāgāmi, also means one round trip of one going the returning (between deva loka “divine world” and loka “earth world”). One must settle down body and be quiet, and not be bothered by secular matters. One should carefully advance pāramī through daily practice. It is already ordered to separate gold and mine; already seen no birth no death; already know no self and no other. It is good for hard cultivation, to repay four fields of grace and three states of existence, which is to consume the offerings of the patrons. When the no-form punya-ksetra is generated, not only the earth world celebrates, but also attracts gods and demons’ awe.

第三阿那含果

進修三果三向
證得三分報身
三重身光出現

《Kaiqi》

The third stage is Anāgāmi. Advanced the third fruit and third path. Attained three categories of sambhogakāya. Three circles of body halo appear. The stage is equivalent to arcishtati-bhūmi (“the stage of glowing wisdom”). Already left the first and second dhyāna, also saw the realm of the third dhyāna. At this stage, sīkṣā is completely eliminated. Life and death will never be corrupted. The Sanskrit name Anāgāmi, means there is no going and returning. The cicada becomes peaceful quiet after molting. Jump out of the fire pit of worries. First, the age is equal to the Grand Void Taixu. Second, enjoy extreme happiness and no worries. Third, do not disappoint dana-pati. Fourth, do not regret pravrajyā (“leaving home”).
You are an auspicious manifestation of the religion, who causes others to bow their heads and take refuge in Buddhism. Before achieving anuttarā-samyak-sambodhi, you are already a rare creature among men. I hope that you will develop right practice with courageous effort, arhartship possessed of six magical powers (Kaiqi: abhijñā “supernormal knowledge”) is near at hand.

汝是教門祥瑞 令人稽首歸依 未成無上菩提 早是人間希罕
願君勇力修行 六通羅漢在近

(Kaiqi)
The fourth stage is Arhat. Advanced the fourth fruit and fourth path. Attained four categories of sambhogakāya. Four circles of body halo appear. It is the moment that śikṣā is complete, and becomes śrāvaka. The Sanskrit name Arhat, means should be made offerings. Therefore there are tisrovidyā (“three insights”) and six abhijñā (“supernormal knowledge”). First is the vidyā (“clarity”) of language that does not confuse. Second is the vidyā of form that eyes can recognize. Third is the vidyā of thought that leaves no doubt. Also there are six abhijñā to witness. It is so there is divyacakṣus no barrier. It is divyaśrotra so can hear throughout. It is paracitta-jñāna that understands the mind and wish. It is pūrvanivāsānusmṛti-jñāna that remembers the previous life. It is āsravakṣaya-jñāna that reaches selflessness. It is rddhividhi that gains freedom. It is truly “gradual teaching” of the small vehicle, which fits the self salvation. It is like expelling sheep or dragging vehicle, pulling out of a house on fire alone. It is affiliated to the thirteenth brahmā, and is called Arhat of six abhijñā.

(Kaiqi)
The fifth stage is Pratyekabuddha. Advanced the fifth fruit and fifth path. Attained five categories of sambhogakāya. Five circles of body halo appear. Five stages are shown in the front. The Gradual Teaching’s two vehicles completed. Till then the enlightenment through reasoning is the most revered. It is affiliated to the eighteenth brahmā. This is the

494 Bianhua tong 变化通 also called Ruyi tong 如意通.
half way stop of the great vehicle. The individual enlightenment is self-awareness and understanding. It is not eligible to become someone’s teacher, like using a deer to drag a vehicle, independently leaving trailokya. Then becoming the master of the three vehicles, straightly needs ten stages to settle down. Temporarily dwelling in the grass hut outside of the door. Do not live in the imaginary city of small fruition. In the past five thousand (people) left the meeting, all due to śrāvaka’s enlightenment through reasoning. For example, poor people and beggars, get satisfied easily when receiving a little. It is those crowds like rotten grains and chaffs, who see the Buddha but all walk away. Those who do not accept his great dharma, are exactly arrogant monks. It is like rhino and ni (mythical animal) born fox and rabbit, or phoenix born crow and magpie. So here suggest the later kind and ethical people, do not study the small vessel of Pratyekabuddha.

(Kaiqi)
The sixth stage is Dūrangamā-bhūmi (“the stage of afar practice”). If cultivated to this stage, one has attained six categories of sambhogakāya. Giving up śrāvaka’s enlightenment through reasoning. Seeking anuttarā-samyak-sambodhi afar. The Sanskrit name avinivartanīya, means no withdraw for the heart of the way. It is swore like a boat down to water, flowing without adding more power. Trained to accomplish the skills of meditation and wisdom, so the force and power speed up like flying. It is always cultivated like this. Why worrying about no one practice dharma. First followed receiving mental body. Now it exceeds five stages. If there is no interruption of devil’s disasters, the ten stages like viewing (self) hand palm.

(Kaiqi)
Already left rūpadhātu and deva loka of dhyāna. Witnessing and dwelling in empty ākāśānantyāyatana (“Sphere of Infinite Space”). All the fabricated forms, now are proven in the front, like dream or illusion in shadow or flash. Therefore learned that Buddha’s words are not fabricated. Water shadow and mirror reflection are attractive. Trailokya are all absorbed. Why choose two emperors or five kings. Who care about Jin, Song, Qi, or Liang. Since ancient time heroes went for war, had to count revered and kind
people from scratch. If knows earlier that no self and no other, why fight for superficial titles or interests?

(Kaiqi)
The seventh stage is *Acalā-bhūmi* (“the unshakeable stage”). At this stage attained seven categories of *sambhogakāya*. Arrived in the recognized *ākāśānantyāyatana*. The *dharmakāya* (“dharma body”) is empty and equal (“has height up to shoulder”). *Sambhogakāya* is equally distributed to ten stages. Nirāmaṇakāya changes in numerous ways. It is the skilled labor of the people of the way. At this stage, names and titles are not changed. Quoting Śūraṅgama Sūtra saying, *sambhogakāya*, *nirāmaṇakāya*, and *dharmakāya*. Āśrama is firstly a rare king. Eliminating my myriads of *kalpas* in opposite ways, so not just being monks but *dharmakāya*. My heart has an autumn moon, the shadow appears in the green pond purely and clearly. There is nothing in the world can be compared, how can I advocate and speak of this? It is called a spot in an autumn river, or distantly the ocean tide calms down. Absently (it is like) a snowy treasure in an icy bottle. Both are clear without any spot inside out. It is the sympathy of unrestrained heart.

(Kaiqi)
Sighing about the noise of city, watching six dusts rolling in worries. The Buddha bestowed the Lotus Sea and the universe. The fight confuses people that cannot be seen. An insect inside wood does not know outside of the wood. A fish in a well does not trust the outside of the well. All limited between sound and form, deeply inside an egg. (It is like) pulling a sheet to the market, or fishing a fish to be placed on cutting board. Today thanks to the three vehicles granted by the Buddha, suddenly to be born in the land of ultimate bliss.

---

495 Miaozhan 妙湛 means Baoshen 報身; Zongchi 總持 means Yingshen 应身/Huashen 化身; Budong 不動 means Fashen 法身.
第八善慧地 到此八分報身 己至二十七天 呼為無所有處
喻如大牛之車 灌頂法王子位 名為受職菩薩 理合說法度人
見有六根功德 普偏三千大千 眼有八百功德 十方普現眼前
耳有千二功德 聽聲遠徹遐迹 鼻有八百功德 能饒百億界香
舌有千二功德 說法力在舌根 身有八百功德 造化隱現身中
意有千二功德 六根智慧主宰 得是六根清淨 紹佛說法傳燈
法華第十九品 留與法師看詳 法華第二十品 不輕菩薩化人

(Overmyer) 498

When the periods of the true teaching and the counterfeit teaching end, then those of overweening pride act in perverse ways. They do not rely on the true path of bodhisattvahood, but in their deliberate adherence to heretical teachings confuse others. In this time ritual reverence is not ignored, but (people) reverence heretical and arrogant monks. Pray carry out the true way of the ten stages, do not entrap others with what is not the dharma. Heresy and pride have great might, slander and abusive speech are not to be taken lightly. Do not predict the salvation of others without cause. You are ignorant monks, surely the worst of the four classes of men. If you do not believe in the three vehicles and ten stages, you shall be in purgatory for two hundred myriads of kalpas.

邪慢有大勢力 惡口罵詈不輕 不用虗妄授記 汝是無智比丘
當是四部惡人 不信三乘十地 二百億劫地獄

(Kaiqi)
Heretical and arrogant (attitudes) cannot be unheard. Those who is not light even got beaten. Of course for the old and poor people, they are silent about being denounced and humiliated.
邪慢豈可不聞 不輕尚遭打擲 况復老身孤寒 甘伏被邪毀辱

(Kaiqi)
The ninth stage is Dharmameghā-bhūmi ("the stage of cloud dharma"). Attained nine categories of sambhogakāya. Rising up to the peak of trailokya. Already left twenty-eight brahmā. It is named the great vehicle of the equivalent enlightenment. It is the correct position of dharma master. Driving a vehicle of white bull on bare ground. The twenty-eight generations of sukhavati ("the western paradise"). The seed of Buddha transmits lamp in this way. Everyone is called bodhisattva. Their abhiññā ("supernormal knowledge") is equal to the Buddha’s. It is really the mind seal of the Buddha. The stages are clearly divided. Before elimination it rises up to the ākāśa ("vacuity sky"). It appears eighteen variations. The heart fire of samādhi self-immolated. Śarīra falling like rain in the sky. Mahākāśyapa collected tripiṭaka, which all belong to the great and small vehicles. First complete half of Pratyekabuddha. Then speak about the full heart of the ten stages. Only the marvelous enlightenment belongs to the same tradition. The high or low positions of a stage depend on that. The saints’ teaching should all be heard without doubt. Waking up the drunk people for cultivation. If all the teaching to be heard not correctly, that will make sattva ("all sentient beings") dizzy. There is only the correct cultivation through the ten stages. Other ways cannot be counted. The long time training of the three vehicles will be successful. Do not compete for time or be in hurry. People love to learn that which is easy to be learned. It is like drawing a picture of bread but it cannot feed people. It is sad that lives through the ancient path, cannot be avoid to manipulate the ten stages.

第九法雲地 到此九分報身 上至三界之頂 已出二十八天
名為等覺大乘 乃是法師正位 露地車駕白牛 西天二十八代
佛種此處傳燈 筚築稱呼菩薩 神通比佛一般 真是釋迦心印
果位照著分明 臨滅上升虛空 出現一十八變 三昧心火自焚
空中舍利如雨 畣葉結集經藏 統屬大乘小乘 先了辟支一半
次言十地滿心 惟有妙覺同宗 果位看他高下 聽說凡聽無疑
呚囑醉醒修行 凡說凡聽乖訛 轉使眾生瞌睡 惟有十地正修
其餘那堪屈指 三乘久煉成功 爭那時流性急 人愛易學易成
恰似畫餅不飽 袈裟古道艱生 不免編排十地

(Kaiqi)
The tenth stage is the stage of the marvelous enlightenment. Attained nine categories of sambhogakāya. The name exceeds trailokya. First luring by the three vehicles, in fact save people by using the Buddha’s vehicle. Only this is named the sudden teaching.
Below this is all gradual cultivation. Pramuditā-bhūmi, Vimalā-bhūmi, Prabhākarī-bhūmi, Arcishmati-bhūmi, Sudurjayā-bhūmi, Abhimukhī-bhūmi, Dūrangamā-bhūmi, Acalā-bhūmi, Sādhumati-bhūmi, Dharnameghā-bhūmi, with the marvelous enlightenment till the end. The ten abodes, ten actions, ten goals, ten stages, and the completion of merit including ten (stages) plus one (enlightenment). Prajñā Māṇjuśrī full of wisdom.

Nirvāṇa Samantabhadra completed actions. Succeeding the Buddha to plant wisdom, till then Maitreya is born.

第十妙覺地 到此十分報身 是名超出三界 初以三乘誘引
實以佛乘度脫 獨此名為頓教 向下總是漸修 歡喜離垢發光
焰慧難勝現前 遠行不動善慧 法雲妙覺已終 十住十行十向
十地十一功圓500 般若文殊智滿 涅槃普賢行成 繼紹釋迦種智
到此彌勒下生

(Overmyer)501

You will rest in peace in the “Treasury of the Lotus Sea,” live forever in the land of Utmost Bliss. On the throne of the Great Precious Lotus King, as an all-powerful lion you shall roar. The Buddha is the one great cause (of liberation), today (you have) awakened to the perception of the Buddhas, ad have already entered Nirvāṇa without remainder. You have defeated all devils and unbelievers, and distinguished the three bodies (of the Buddha) and the four forms of wisdom.

華海藏裏安身 極樂國中永壽 大寶華王座上 自在師子哮吼
佛為一大因緣 今日悟佛知見 已入無餘涅槃 降伏群魔外道
三身四智己辨

(Kaiqi)

The eight liberations and six abhijñā (“supernormal knowledge”) take long to achieve. No action, no form, for salvation. The fathomless ocean of enlightenment neither comes nor goes. Dharma body and Dharmadhātu (“dharma realm”) are equal. The heart covers numberless lands.

八解六通久成502 無為無相解脫 覺海無來無去 法身法界齊平503
心包塵塵剎剎504

(Overmyer)505

You have transcended the six paths of being and the four forms of birth. Within and without the whole universe. In heaven and on earth, all are children of the Buddha.

化出六道四生 六合乾坤内外 天地是佛子孫

---

499 Shixiang 十向 means Shi huixiang 十回向 “ten goals.”
500 Shiyi 十一 means 十一位, is the “ten stages” 十地 plus the equivalent enlightenment 等覺.
502 Bajie 八解 means Ba jietuo 八解脫 “eight liberations.”
503 Dharmadhātu 法界 “dharma realm,” includes shifang 十方 “ten directions.”
504 Chenchen chacha 墜塵剎剎 means Chenchen chatu 墜塵剎土 (Sans. ksetra) “realm.”
(Kaiqi)
Briefly citing the Lotus sūtra as an evidence. At that time all kings of brahmā, and together with all divine emperors. The protective Caturmahārājakayikas (“four heavenly kings”), and Maheśvara. The affiliated members numbered hundreds to ten thousands. Folding palms and making obeisance to me by prostration. Inviting me to turn dharmacakra (“the wheel of dharma”). If only praising the Buddha and the great vehicle, all the lives suffer in hardness. This cannot be believed as the correct dharma. Broken dharma cannot be believed. Again stating the Lotus sūtra as an evidence. Today trailokya belongs to me. Inside it there are all my sons. But they have forms and names, which cannot be equal to the Buddha. The most revered in trailokya, are the hidden leaders, enlightened sages, and compassionate fathers.

略舉法華作證 爾時諸梵天王 并及諸天帝釋 護世四大天王
及大自在天主眷屬百千萬數 合掌稽首禮我 請我轉正法輪
若但讚佛大乘 罹生沒在於苦 不能信是正法 破法不肯信故
再舉法華作證 今此三界我有 其中悉是吾子 但係有形有名
不可與佛比肩 三界獨稱最尊 隱頭聖凡慈父

(Overmyer)506
The three vehicles and ten stages have been explained, this is the orthodox tradition of Buddhist teaching. I hope that all sentient beings in the dharma realm will together enter the sea of the Omniscient.

三乘十地說已 是為佛法正宗 普願法界眾生 同入薩婆若海

Chuxue ji (The end)

初學記(終)

Chuxue ji is a text of Buddhist teaching. As Overmyer has argued, Kong Qingjue’s teaching intends to instruct disciples in personal salvation through “moral effort” and “spiritual development,” not just teachings and words.507 The heavy use of Buddhist jargon makes the text hard to be understand without Dao’an’s commentary. The text organization follows a detailed explanation of the “ten stages” in sequence. Kong Qingjue aims to provide a clear roadmap to enable Buddhist learners to leave the secular world, transcend the dharma body, and eventually to be reborn in the pure land. He suggests slow and patient practice, in order to attain salvation and enlightenment.

507 Overmyer 1982:627.
Although he encourages monastic life, he had several times criticizes arrogant monks unable to complete the ten stages and achieve bodhisattvahood. However, there is no evidence of attacking the Chan school, as the contemporary Song-Yuan Buddhist chronicles state. *Chuxue ji* is mainly based on the teachings of the Huayan school, and borrows terms from Buddhist classics such as the Lotus Sūtra, Avatāṃsaka Sūtra and Mahāprajñāpāramitā Sūtra. There is nothing unique or new. Kong did not create any new terms or ideas. In his writing, speaking in the first person, Kong persuades Buddhist practitioners to follow the correct path to cultivate great wisdom and avoid falling into any delusional shortcut or troubled situation that cannot be rectified. Since there is no shortcut or simple way of practice, as Overmyer argues, Kong’s teaching leaves less room for disciples to expand on his thoughts and practices. This inflexibility is in contrast to the more flexible and simple teachings of Mao Ziyuan 茅子元 (1096?-1166) of the White Lotus movement.⁵⁰⁸ According to Kong, the advancement of the “ten stages” should take place intentionally and naturally. In short, *Chuxue ji*’s content surely attracted Buddhist audience and devotees. More importantly, this general Buddhist teaching guide legitimized the status of the White Cloud movement as a Buddhist sect in the Yuan, as Dao’an added his commentary and the Yuan court incorporated it into the Buddhist canon in 1312.

**Tangut texts mentioned the “White Cloud monk”**

“Compiled Essay on Reflective Words of Three Generations” 鋼鉈鸞鶴殟鸞

⁵⁰⁸ Overmyer 1982:618.
“Compiled Essay on Reflective Words of Three Generations” (Thus later, the “Three Generations”), from the Russian IOM collection Инв. No.4166 has first been studied by Russian scholar Kychanov (Е.И.Кычанов) and Chinese scholar Shi Jinbo.\textsuperscript{509} They both translate its title to Chinese as *Sandai xiangzhao yanwen ji* 三代相照言文集.\textsuperscript{510} Both Kychanov and Shi also agree that this manuscript is in movable type print, and date it to the Xi Xia period. Its colophon includes names of two editors, the noble-born 节親主慧照 Huizhao and the monk 僧道慧 Daohui, and the movable type block compiler 陈羊金.\textsuperscript{511} Sun Bojun connects 节親主惠照 Huizhao with the White Cloud sect’s chief abbot Dao’an since Dao’an’s Dharma name is also Huizhao.\textsuperscript{512} But there is no evidence about Dao’an’s patronage on this Tangut text, and his connection with the royal family of Xi Xia. Kychanov has dated the text to 1216 and so varies with Sun’s argument since Dao’an was active in the early Yuan.\textsuperscript{513} But due to the fact that this is a movable type print, I tend to date this document to the Yuan rather than the Xi Xia period.

The “Three Generations” has two songs authored by the White Cloud Buddhist or Master, namely *Eulogy of the Palace of the Way by the White Cloud Buddhist* 白雲釋子道宮頌 and *Song of the Completion of Realization by the White

\textsuperscript{509} Xixiaxue lunji 西夏學論集 2012:221-9; Shi Jinbo and Yasen Wushou’er, 2000:41-42.
\textsuperscript{510} Other Chinese translations include, *Sandai shuming yanwen ji* 三代屬明言文集, *Sanshi shuming yanji* 三世屬名言集, *Sandai suozhu shengyan ji* 三代所著聖言集, and *Sandai xiangchuan cihui ji* 三代相傳詞彙集.
\textsuperscript{511} 翻 siar 僧, also can be surname sa 薩.
\textsuperscript{512} Sun, “Yuandai baiyunzong yikan Xixiawen wenxian zongkao” (hereafter “zongkao”), 2011:153.
\textsuperscript{513} Xixiaxue lunji, 2012:227.

295
Cloud Master 白雲大師悟了歌. 514 Kychanov and Sun Bojun relate these two poems to the White Cloud sect simply because of the authors’ titles contain “white cloud.” I doubt this connection because there is no clear mention of these authors’ names as Kong Qingjue. The content of the “Three Generations” is a collection of writings and teachings from three generations of monks. They are mainly Buddhist teachings on ethics, including those of the Chan school, and teachings of early Tangut Buddhist devotees. The collection uses Buddhist terms and metaphors as well as poetic description of scenes of Xi Xia territory. Sun argues that the “three generations” are those of the White Cloud sect. 515 However, they are more likely influential Buddhist monks in the early Xi Xia period. Apart from the so-called White Cloud Buddhist and the White Cloud Master we cannot identify other persons of the “Three generations.” These persons’ names include the Honorable Dharma Rain 法雨尊者, the Venerable Teacher Dharma Rain 法雨宗師, the Sailor of the Way 水人道者, the Venerable Teacher Yicheng 儀成宗師, the Buddhist of Wind and Cloud 風雲釋子, the Śramaṇa Lucheng (ljwu jśiji) 陸成沙門. 516

The literary form of the “Three Generations” mainly consists of seven character songs

514 Other Chinese translations of these two songs include, 道性頌 and 醒解了歌, Sun, “zongkao” 2011:152; 道家偈 (道宫偈) and 悟竟頌, Solonin, “Baiyun shizi Sanguan jiumen chutan,” 2011:10.
515 Sun, “zongkao” 2011:152.
516 Sun, “zongkao” 2011:152. Sun translates 水人道者 as 人水道者, 風雲釋子 as 重法宗師, 陸成沙門 as 慶法沙門.
and poems.\textsuperscript{517} Arakawa Shintaro 荒川慎太郎 has studied the intonation and rhyme of these songs and poems.\textsuperscript{518}

“Key Essay on Three Reflections and Nine Entries” 三觀九門鑰匙文

“Key Essay on Three Reflections and Nine Entries” (Thus after, “Three Reflections”) (Chin. Sanguan jiumen xuansuo wen 三觀九門旋鎖文, or Sanguan jiumen yaoshi wen 三觀九門鑰匙文), from the Russian IOM collection Ив. No.2551, has been studied by Kirill Solonin.\textsuperscript{519} The text is authored by the White Cloud Buddhist 白雲釋子. It includes two charts: Chart of the Origin and End for Reflecting the Nine Entries 觀九門本末圖 and Chart of Releasing Names and Ranks 名列出縛圖. There are two songs, Eulogy of the Palace of the Way 道宮頌 and Song of the Completion of Realization 悟了歌. They are same titles as the two poem that are included in the collective “Three Generations.” But their contents are slightly different as Solonin noticed. He suggests that they belong to two different original Chinese versions or different translations based on the same Chinese version.\textsuperscript{520} I would also suggest they are not necessarily translations of Chinese texts. If the White Cloud Buddhist is a Tangut monk, the two different Tangut versions of the two songs, editions of the same text.

\textsuperscript{517} Sun translates one of the songs, Eulogy of the Door to Prestige of the Xia State’s Own Way 夏國本道門威頌 (Sun translated as 夏國本道門風頌). Sun, “zongkao” 2011:152.
\textsuperscript{520} Solonin, “Baiyun shizi Sanguan jiumen chutan,” 2011:11.
The core philosophy, according to Solonin, is “one heart” yixin 一心 and “perfect teaching” yuanjiao 圓教, which were developed from Buddhist schools including Chan, Huayan and Tiantai, and syncretized in the 11th and 12th centuries in both the Northern Song and Liao.\(^521\) Thus the “Three Reflections” does not belong to the teachings of one particular Buddhist school. The key concept the “three reflections” for contemplation represented by the White Cloud Buddhist, is based on the three systems of “three reflections” in three traditions. Therefore, these three systems consist of a total of “nine reflections,” which are called the “nine entries” by the White Cloud Buddhist. As the author points out, the three systems are: 1. the “three reflections” of Dharmadhātu 法界三觀 based on Avataṃsaka Sūtra 華厳, first taught by Dushun 杜順(557-640); 2. the “three reflections” of the Tiantai school 天台三觀 based on Lotus Sūtra 法華, taught by Zhiyi 智顗 (538-597, 天台智者, 538-597) and later revised by Tiantai monks including Xianshou Fazang 賢首法藏(643-712), Jingxi Zhanran 荊溪湛然(711-782), and Shenzhi Congyi 神智從義(1042-1091); 3. the “three reflections” of the perfect enlightenment 圓覺三觀, based on the Sūtra of Perfect Enlightenment (Sans. Mahāvaipulya pūrṇabuddha-sūtra prasannārtha-sūtra) 圓覺經, taught by Guifeng Zongmi 圭峰宗密(780-841, 圓覺宗密, 國全宗密), and Qingliang Chengguan 清涼澄觀(738-839).\(^522\) Each one of the “three reflections” in the three systems respectively refer to one of the three dimensions


\(^{522}\) Solonin, “Baiyun shizi Sanguan jiumen chutan,” 2011:11-21; I added Jingxi Zhanran 荊溪湛然(711-782) to the list of influential Tiantai monks.
from Inner 中, Central 中 and Outer 外, surrounding heart 心 in the center, as shown in the *Chart of the Origin and End for Reflecting the Nine Entries*. Thus it demonstrates the core philosophy of “one heart” yixin and perfection of the unity of different Buddhist teachings yuanjiao.

“Treatise of Dharmic Essentials of Pure Land Rebirth”淨土生求順要論

The Chinese translations of this text are *Jingtu shengqiu shunyao lun* 淨土生求順要論 (Kychanov, 1999) and *Qiusheng jingtu fayao men* 求生淨土法要門 (Sun, 2011).

There are two extant copies in the Russian IOM collection, including a printed version 刻本 ИВ. No.6904 and a manuscript 抄本 No.7832. These two texts are exactly same contents. It attributes to State Preceptor Jizhao 寂照國師. The text includes two very brief short paragraphs. One on the ways of daily practice for a meditation practitioner (“silent owner” 有默者), and the other a lineage of four generations who passed this teaching.

The first paragraph – the part about brief daily practice, includes meditation facing the west, taking a formal vow, and reciting “Namo Amitābha” in front of

---

525 Sun points out that the end of the manuscript version has one more sentence as 每日當為 也 “should be used every day,” suggests that the text is for daily use, Sun, “Heishuicheng chutu Xixiawen Qiusheng jingtu fayao men shiyi,” 2012:1.
Amitābha and Avalokiteśvara, in order to be reborn in the Pure Land of the West.

Nishida Tatsuo suggests that this text is translated from the Song Chinese monk Zunshi’s compiled book “Penitential and Vowing Ritual for Rebirth into the Pure Land” *Wangsheng jingtu chanyuan yi 往生淨土懺願儀* (T1984.47.491c8-11) dated in 1050 CE.\(^{527}\)

The second paragraph – the part about the lineage of the four generations, including chronologically: first, Venerable Master Xibian (Tang. *sji nuo*) 須文 西辯 上人; second, Master Jiru (Tang. *mij ‘o*) 寂入定師 or Master Kong (Tang. *khow*) 寂入動師; third, State Preceptor Fahui (Tang. *tsji žjir*) 法慧 郡師 or State Preceptor Guo (Tang. *kwo*) 郭國師; fourth, State Preceptor Jizhao (Tang. *mij swew*) 寂照國師 or State Preceptor Liangwei (Tang. *lhiow we*) 良衛國師.\(^{528}\) Sun Bojun translates the whole text and argues that Master Jiru or Master Kong is Kong Qingjue due to the same surname Kong, thus connects the text to the White Cloud sect.\(^{529}\) However, Solonin argues that the title Dingshi (Tang. *djij dzjij*) 定師 is borrowed from a Tibetan word, thus Master Jiru (Tang. *mij ‘o*) 寂入定師 might be a Buddhist master of Tibetan Buddhism rather than Chinese.\(^{530}\)

I disagree with Solonin’s argument of the Tibetan esoteric features of the text, but also

---


\(^{528}\) For the Venerable Master Xibian 須文 西辯 上人, Sun links him with Kong’s teacher Master Haihui 海慧大師 in Ruzhou 汝州, *Shishi jigulue 謡氏稽古略*; Sun “zongkao” 2011:151, I disagree on this claim since two names do not match at all.


\(^{530}\) Solonin also argues that 要門 is from Tibetan word *man ngag* 剣門, thus claims the esoteric element of the text. Solonin, “Baiyun shizi Sanguan jiumen chutan,” 2011:16-7.
disagree with Sun’s argument that Master Jiru (Tang. mjij ‘o) is Kong Qingjue. However, I agree that Sun has identified the State Preceptor Guo Fahui (Tang. kwo tsjir źjir) 郭法慧 as a translator and monk of the Xi Xia, who has one writing extant in the IOM collection – *Couple Treasure of Transforming the Relieving Lock* 轉變化解鍊 or 伏藏變化鑰匙. 531 As for State Preceptor Jizhao (Tang. mjij swew) 靜照 or Liangwei (Tang. lhigw we) 良衛, Sun argues that he is a Tangut, who appears as Imperial Preceptor Jizhao (Tang. mjij swew) 靜照帝師 in another lineage list in a colophon attached to a later Tangut script sūtra dated to 1641. 532 In the 1641 list, other famous Buddhists were listed, including Imperial Preceptors 帝師, State Preceptors 國師, and Dharma Teachers 法師 of the Xi Xia and Yuan periods, such as Yixing Huijue 一行慧覺. Whether Jizhao (Tang. mjij swew) 靜照 or Liangwei (Tang. lhigw we) 良衛 is a State Preceptor shown in this “Treatise of Dharmic Essentials of Pure Land Rebirth” or an Imperial Preceptor in the 1641 list, he is most likely a renowned Buddhist monk of the Xi Xia period. This would therefore contradict Sun’s argument that “Treatise of Dharmic Essentials of Pure Land Rebirth” was produced in the Yuan dynasty. 533

Overall, I only agree on the identification of the State Preceptor Guo Fahui (Tang. kwo tsjir źjir) 郭法慧 in the Xi Xia period. Since Master Kong Jiru (Tang. khow mjij ‘o) 僧伽跋摩 is the teacher of Guo Fahui in the lineage, given Guo’s prominent position in

---

531 Sun, “zongkao” 2011:150.
Xi Xia as the state preceptor, he must be a famous Buddhist monk who personally trained Guo in Xi Xia. However, Kong Qingjue has never been to Xi Xia, according to his biography. So this Kong Jiru should not be Kong Qingjue. Thus, the text has no connection with the White Cloud sect.

“Chart of the Master-Disciple Succession of the Chan Gate that Transmits the Mind Ground in China” 中華傳心地禪門師資承襲圖

This is a Tangut translation of “Chart of the Master-Disciple Succession of the Chan Gate that Transmits the Mind Ground in China” Zhonghua chuanxindi chanmen shizi chengxi tu 中華傳心地禪門師資承襲圖, which was written by Guifeng Zongmi 圭峰宗密 (780-841).534 This book is a basic introduction of the lineages of different sects of the Chan school, including the Northern 北宗 and Southern branches 南宗, in a form of questions and answers between Pei Xiu 貐休 (791-864) and Zongmi 宗密.535 Zongmi’s Buddhist philosophy was also shaped by the Huayan school, and became popular in the Liao and Xi Xia.536 In the extant copy of the Tangut translation (IOM collection Инв. No.2261), there is an illustration attached (not seen in any Chinese versions of the book), which depicts four figures with inscriptions. As Sun Bojun deciphered, they are Zongmi 宗密, Pei Xiu 貐休, the White Cloud Buddhist 白雲釋子, and

535 The Southern Branch of the Chan School 南宗, as discussed in the text, including Heze 菏澤, Hongzhou 洪州, and Niutou 牛頭 schools.
Sun argues that the White Cloud Buddhist is Kong Qingjue, simply based on the title “White Cloud”. Therefore she links Kong’s teachings to the Huayan school. Although we do not have a clear idea who the Chan Master Zhang is, two other characters including Zongmi and Pei Xiu are both from the Tang dynasty. So it would be unusual to have Kong, a Song personage, to appear in the same image with people in the Tang. Since no further information on the so-called White Cloud Buddhist is given in this context, we cannot conclude that this character is Kong. Thus, I disagree on the connection between this Tangut book and the White Cloud sect. Also, the book is from IOM’s Kara Khoto collection (which has both Xi Xia and Yuan period materials), about which we still do not know whether it is from the Xi Xia or Yuan period.

Conclusion

Kong Qingjue’s teaching, are from the two extant books Zhengxing ji and Chuxue ji attributed to him but have nothing to do with each other. We learned that Kong did not create any unique ideas or concepts. Buddhist terms such as “ten stages” were already preexistent before he wrote about them in the Song dynasty. Kong mainly borrowed Confucian and Buddhist terminology for these two books respectively. The way of expression and contextualization of the texts mix the three teachings of Buddhism, Confucianism, and Daoism, which was a general religious and philosophical trend in China from the Song, Xia, to the Yuan periods. Zhengxing ji is a moral teaching.

---

537 Sun, “Xixiawen Zhengxing ji kaoshi”2011:216; Ecang Heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文獻 #2261; Shi Jinbo, Xixiawen jiaocheng 西夏文教程 2013:99.
guidebook in simple words, for a lay audience to memorize and follow. *Chuxue ji* is a guidebook for beginning Buddhist followers (both lay and monastic) that uses Buddhist jargon and six character poems. It is easy to understand with the help of Dao’an’s commentary. These two short books were compiled into the Puning canon in 1312, and marked as the most identical doctrines of the White Cloud sect. However, due to the more interest-seeking lay leadership and loose organization of the sect membership, and the lack of evidence that sect members practiced or paid attention to the texts, these two books have nothing to do with the development of the White Cloud sect in the Yuan dynasty so far as we know. The sect remained social movement to a large extent, rather than a spiritual movement.538

None of the four alleged Tangut manuscripts contain typical teachings of Kong Qingjue, which are known as “ten stages” and cultivation to be a gentleman. Also, the obscure title of the “White Cloud Buddhist,” the “White Cloud Master,” or “Master Kong” which appear in Tangut texts cannot be clearly identified as Kong Qingjue. We will have to wait to determine the connection between the White Cloud sect and Tangut Buddhism in the Xi Xia period until more evidences emerge. The documents found in Kara Khoto, today in IOM, could all belong to the Yuan rather than Xi Xia period. Currently the only evidence is the printed version of the Tangut translation of *Zhengxing ji*, which ought to have been translated and printed in Hangzhou as part of the Hexi canon, based on the current available Chinese version which was added to the Puning canon in 1312. Thus, the connections between the White Cloud sect and Tangut Buddhism did not take place in

the Xi Xia territory or in North China, but through the printing enterprise of Buddhist canons in Hangzhou after the Mongol conquest of South China in 1276.
Figure 22: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 1A fragment
Evang heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文献 vol. 10, Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1999. P200
Figure 23: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 俄藏黑水城文献 vol. 10, Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1999. P195
Figure 24: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 3A, 3B, 4A, 4B
Ecang heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文獻 vol. 10, Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1999, P196
Figure 25: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 5A, 5B, 6A, 6B
Ecang heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文献 vol. 10, Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1999. P197
Figure 26: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 7A, 7B, 8A, 8B
Ecang heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文献 vol. 10, Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1999. P198
Figure 27: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 Page 9A, 9B, 10A, 10B fragment

Ecang heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文獻 vol. 10, Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1999. P199
Figure 28: “Collection of Virtuous Acts” 正行集 页 5A, 5B

Ecang heishuicheng wenxian 俄藏黑水城文献 vol. 10, Shanghai: Shanghai guji chubanshe, 1999. Color picture #8
Chapter 6. Grottos of the Southern Hill

On an auspicious date of the first spring month, in Taiding 5 (1328), bhikṣu Mingzhi ordered craftsmen to carve a revered image of Buddha Kamaladala-vimala-nakṣatra-rāja-saṃkusumitabhijña. Completely forgetting good or bad, to print the fundamental cause. Following the nature (the grottos) appear on the rocks of the Southern Hill. Merit and solemnity (filled) the monastery of ten thousand embodiments.539

Nanshan Grotto #2

泰定五年孟春吉日，比丘明質命工鐫刻尊像普頌尊華宿王智佛。全忘勝劣印元因，隨緣湧現南山石，功德莊嚴萬相寺。

Puning Monastery 普寧寺 in the Southern Hill Nanshan 南山 of Yuhang 餘杭 in Hangzhou, was the headquarters of the White Cloud sect.540 It housed the clergy office of the sect’s leading abbot and the printing studio of the Puning canon. Though the monastery does not exist today, still extant at the site are more than a dozen giant grottos carved into the cliff of the Southern Hill made by the White Cloud sect during the Yuan dynasty. These grottos are all that remains of the White Cloud sect. To date, this grotto site has received no attention from modern Chinese scholarship on Yuan history and Chinese art history and is unknown to the Western scholarship. This chapter introduces the surviving grottos, gives analytical narratives on the motifs and spatial forms, and raises questions for future discussions among historians and art historians. It shows that the Puning Monastery, and the Southern Hill continued as a regional pilgrimage destination and local attraction in the late Yuan, after the discontinued government

539 Here the monastery refers to the Puning Monastery.
540 The Puning Monastery, as discussed in previous chapters, was established as the pagoda monastery for the sect founder Kong Qingjue’s relics. It was first named as “White Cloud Pagoda Cloister” Baiyun tayuan 白雲塔院, then changed to “Cloister of Transmitting Lamp” Chuandeng yuan 傳燈院 during the Shaoxing 绍興 period (1131-1162), “Monastery of Universal Peace” Pu’an Monastery 普安寺, and eventually to Puning Monastery 普寧寺 in Chunxi 7 淳熙七年 (1180), Wanli Hangzhou fuzhi 萬歷杭州府志, Jiaqing Yuhang xianzhi 嘉慶餘杭縣志 j.15.
support and the closure of the sect clergy offices. It also shows the mix of three religions and popular beliefs, in the unorthodox forms of sculptures. It is not absolute Buddhism of the White Cloud sect.

The Southern Hill is a hill of low elevation. It stands solely on the agricultural plain north of Hangzhou in adjacent to Huzhou. The plain is surrounded on three sides by the long range of the Tianmu Mountain. The hill itself stands apart from other nearby hills. To the south of the hill there are a small lake called the North Lake 北湖, and a stream called Tiao Creek 茌溪. Tiao Creek, as discussed in Chapter 4, provided the region its primary source of water for both agriculture and consumption and was and transportation between Hangzhou and Huzhou. Since the Southern Song period, Southern Hill had been a quarry. Dense canal networks nearby facilitated the shipping of rocks from the hill to construction sites, especially those in the capital Lin’an (Hangzhou). Therefore, the hill had been stripped of much of its vegetation leaving exposed broad bare vertical cliffs prime for carving. Most of the grottos are in the form of reliefs in shallow niches. They all date to the Yuan period.

(Figure 43)

There was no record of why these grottos were initially made. One speculation is that they were made at the same time as Yang Lianzhenjia’s mass grotto making activities in Feilaifeng 飛來峰 Hill in Hangzhou, thus suggesting a connection between the Southern Hill grottos and Yang’s sponsorship.\(^{541}\) Considering the quite different

---

features of the artworks on Feilaifeng Hill and the Southern Hill, we argue that there appears to be no obvious connection between these two projects. Feilaifeng Hill’s grottos are mostly sculptures in niches, while the Southern Hill’s grottoes are all reliefs. The second difference is that more than half of those sculptures on Feilaifeng Hill that were made in the Yuan period are Tibetan esoteric style, unlike the reliefs in the Southern Hill which are all Chinese style.

Local folklore says that there used to be over thirty grottos on the hill but that two thirds of them were destroyed during the Cultural Revolution (1966-1976). Also, local militia practice and rock carving for construction brought continual harm to the grottos until late into the 20th century. Some reliefs extant today show missing body parts, and some are riddled with bullet holes due to the local militia’s using them for target practice. There are a total of thirteen grottos surviving today. Most of them are exposed on the cliff and range from 2 to 5 meters. All of them are located above the foothill in the south and east sides of the Southern Hill. The reliefs mostly face south or southeast. In 2013, the site was made the “Seventh Batch of the Major Historical and Cultural Site Protected at the National Level” 第七批全國重點文物保護單位, and received government funding for protection and tourism development. The site also attracts local pilgrims, since candles and material offerings can be found in front of many grottos. Today there are staircases and guide paths for visitors. Most of the reliefs can be viewed in close proximity, except for one relief located on the far cliff which is separated from viewers.

by a deep pond. Visitors today mostly approach the grottos from east to west and proceed up the terrain along the new staircases. The total thirteen sites ranging from east to west cover approximately 360 meters. I made two field trips to the site, one in winter 2013 and another in summer 2014. I use a new ordering system to number these grottos, from west to east for Grottos No.1 to 11, different from the numbering used in Chinese catalogs. There is also one damaged small sculpture I found in my second field trip. Among these grottos, two have inscriptions with dates of grotto carving and information of the sponsors and their wishes.

**Grotto descriptions**

Grotto No.1 (Figure 29)

The Great Perfect Warrior Emperor *Zhenwu dadi* 真武大帝

This grotto is located on the west end of the grotto group. It is the only Daoist-themed grotto. The relief is of the Great Perfect Warrior Emperor, also known as, the Mysterious Warrior *Xuanwu* 玄武. He stand above a serpent-entwined tortoise. This image represents the direction North. Well known as one of the four symbols of the four directions in Chinese mythology and astrology, it signifies that the Great Perfect Warrior Emperor subdues the black tortoise. Daoist astral science and the figures for the four directions are well received in Buddhism and Chinese popular belief system. The symbols of four directions represent sections of sky and their certain seasons, in space.

---

and time. This unique Daoist god relief shows the syncretistic character of the White Cloud sect, at least for the artists who made it and the pilgrims who appreciated it.

The relief is 2.45 meters tall, facing southeast, including the Warrior Emperor and the tortoise. The Warrior Emperor has a round face, long ears, and beard, with long hair down to his shoulders. His dress is a long robe, similar to Daoist ritual performance ones. His left hand is placed on the left knee and the right hand holds a long sword (the sword is about 1 meter long). His right foot is held aloft below his right hand. This lifted foot looks like the “pose of royal ease” lalitāsana in Buddhist art. Both feet bare the toes and nails carved. The tortoise under the Warrior Emperor has its head looking back towards the left, and the snake’s head on the left side looks towards the right.

Grotto No.2 (Figure 30)

Buddha Kamaladala-vimala-nakṣatra-rāja-saṃkusumitābhiṣṇa Zunhua xiuwangzhi fo 尊華宿王智佛 (1328CE)

Grottos No.2 and 3 form a pair. Grotto No.2 faces the neighboring No. 3 to its right, located in cliffs oriented at 90 degree vertically from the ground. The cliffs of both grottos No. 2 and 3 are inclined on the top, such that the head of the relief figure is directly overhead. Grottos No. 2 and 3 are similar in height. The relief is the Buddhist figure of Buddha Kamaladala-vimala-nakṣatra-rāja-saṃkusumitābhiṣṇa Zunhua xiuwangzhi fo 尊華宿王智佛 or Jinghua xiuwangzhi fo 淨華宿王智佛. According to the “Sūtra of Fifteen Hundred Names of Buddha throughout the Ten Directions” Shifang

544 Wang Shilun, Xihu shiku, 1986 #130.
qianwubai foming jing 十方千五百佛名經, this Buddha’s name is the twelfth one in the “one hundred and fifty names of the northwest direction” 西北方一百五十佛名. The Buddha by this name blesses the newborn babies and pregnant women.

The relief is 2.3 meters tall, faces east, and includes the Buddha and the lotus leaves he sits on 仰覆蓮須彌座. The relief is set inside a shallow niche. There is a large dot on the head and a small dot in between the two eyebrows. Two ears hang down equal to shoulder-length. He is dressed in along robe with his chest exposed. No feet are represented. The Buddha’s two hands form a gesture which looks as if it were supposed to represent the abhaya mudrā 施無畏印. But the right hand is in karana mudrā 期克印, and the left hand in dharmachakra mudrā 說法印. This shows that the artisans who carved this relief were not professional, for they were not familiar with the standard iconography for making Buddhist images.

To the right of the grotto there is a lotus tablet containing an inscription of seven vertical lines which reads:

“On an auspicious date of the first spring month, in Taiding 5 (1328), bhiksū Mingzhi ordered craftsmen to carve a revered image of Buddha Kamaladala-vimala-nakṣatra-rāja-saṃkusumitābhijña. Completely forgetting good or bad, to print the fundamental cause. Following the nature (the grottos) appear on the rocks of the Southern Hill. Merit and solemnity (filled) the monastery of ten thousand embodiments.”

泰定五年孟春吉日，比丘明質命工鐫刻尊像普頌尊華宿王智佛。全忘勝劣印元因，隨緣湧現南山石，功德莊嚴萬相寺。

Grotto No.3 (Figure 31)

Avalokiteśvara of Compassion Navigation Cihang Guanyin 慈航觀音

546 Shi fang qian wu ba i fo ming jing 十方千五百佛名經, Taisho vol.14, no. 442.
This grotto faces the neighboring grotto No. 2 to its west. The relief figure is Avalokiteśvara of Compassion Navigation, who is a composite deity comprised of the Buddhist god Avalokiteśvara Guanyin 觀音 and the Daoist god “True Person of Compassion Navigation” Cihang zhenren 慈航真人 (or, the “Great Being of Compassion Navigation” Cihang dashi 慈航大士) had been popular since the Song dynasty. This composite deity is believed to give blessings to seafarers and travelers and was especially popular in coastal regions such as Jiangnan. This special deity appearing in the grotto again shows the syncretistic trend of the White Cloud sect during the Yuan dynasty to mix the “three teachings” as well as to incorporate lay religious developments in the region.

The relief is approximately 3 meters tall, faces south, and is located in a sharp-pointing-top niche. The Avalokiteśvara of Compassion Navigation wears a treasure crown, which has a small sitting Buddha decoration in the front. She also wears keyūra 瓒珞 in front of her chest, and long sleeve robe with extended ribbons. Two hands fold together, while the left hand holds a Buddhist rosary. Her bare feet stand on a thin boat in the shape of a lotus leaf, which represents the “boat of compassion.” Below the boat there is flipping ocean tide, and to the right of the tide there is a heavenly horse tianma 天馬 whose head turns back looking at Avalokiteśvara. This heavenly horse represents balāha or bālāha (Chinese transliteration, poluo 婆羅 or poluohe 婆羅訶) meaning the “cloud horse” (Chinese, yunma 雲馬).547

---

547 According to an originally Indian legend that exists in numerous versions such as the Kāraṇḍavyūha Sūtra. Avalokiteśvara was once revealed in the form of a divine horse called Balāha, which rescued

319
Grotto No.4 (Figure 32)

Sitting Buddha\textsuperscript{548}

Grottos No.4 and 5 again form a pair. Grotto No.4 faces the neighboring No. 5 to its right, located in cliffs of 90 degree corner. The size and art style of Grotto No. 4 is remarkably similar to that of No. 2. Since there is no inscription left, we do not know to which Buddha it refers. Also, the figure placing Buddha to the left and Avalokiteśvara to the right might be a popular style of twin grottos among the Southern Hill grottos, as shown in the group of No. 2 and 3, and group of No.4 and 5.

The relief is 2.6 meters tall, faces southeast, and includes the Buddha and the lotus leaves he sits on 仰覆蓮須彌座. The relief is inside a shallow niche. Two ears hang down to the shoulder. He is dressed in a long robe, with chest exposed. The Buddha’s right hand is in \textit{varada mudrā} 施願印, and left hand is in \textit{dharmachakra mudrā} 說法印. No feet are exposed.

Grotto No.5 (Figure 33)

Sitting Avalokiteśvara\textsuperscript{549}


\textsuperscript{548} Wang Shilun, \textit{Xihu shiku}, 1986 #150.
\textsuperscript{549} Wang Shilun, \textit{Xihu shiku}, 1986 #169.
lotus seat 仰覆蓮須彌座. It is not clear which type of Avalokiteśvara she is. But she is very different from the Avalokiteśvara of Compassion Navigation in Grotto No. 3. She wears a large sized crown of treasures with a small sitting Buddha placed in the front. The style of this large crown looks like the one of the Song empress. She wears a cape and a double layer long robe. She also wears keyūra 瑯珞 in front of her exposed chest. She folds her two hands in front of her belly, in dhyāna mudrā 禪定印. But it seems that her folding hands used to hold a treasure pot 宝缽, and it was damaged.

Grotto No.6 (Figure 34)
The largest size Sitting Buddha

This grotto is the largest size among all the grottos in the Southern Hill. The relief is 6.6 meters tall, including the sitting Buddha 3.8 meters tall and the lotus seat with a foundation which is 2.8 meters tall. Between the lotus and the foundation there is a thin layer of ocean tide depicted. The relief faces southeast. The style of this sitting Buddha is very similar to the one of Grotto No.2. It is inside a shallow niche. There is a large dot in the head. Two ears hang down equal to shoulder. He dresses in along robe, with chest exposed. No feet are rendered. The Buddha’s two hands’ mudrā is the same as that of the figure in Grotto No.2. No inscription is given.

Grotto No.7 (Figure 35)
Sitting Buddha

550 Wang Shilun, Xihu shiku, 1986 #149.
Grotto No. 7 is close to Grottos No.2 and 3. It is right above the ground today. The relief is inside a flame shaped niche, 2.6 meters tall, facing south. The image is the sitting Buddha on his lotus throne. The Buddha’s hair curls are depicted. There is a large dot in the head, and a small dot in between two eyebrows. He wears a long robe with chest exposed. His right hand is in *karana mudrā* 期克印, and the left hand in *dharmachakra mudrā* 說法印. The relief has some bullet holes due to local shooting exercises. It has been repaired in the modern time with clear white paste seen on the damaged parts.

Grotto No.8 (Figure 36)

Sitting Buddha - Tathāgata Amitābha *Amituo rulai* 阿彌陀如來 (1335 or 1341 CE)

This grotto, like Grotto No.7, is located right above the ground. Today there is a platform in the front, and there are often candles left by pilgrims. The grotto has a relief inside a niche. The relief is the image of a sitting Buddha on his lotus seat. He is 2.8 meters tall and faces south. He wears a long robe with chest exposed. His right hand is in *karana mudrā* 期克印, and the left hand in *dharmachakra mudrā* 說法印. There is a large dot in the head, and a small dot in between his two eyebrows. The major differences between Grottos No.7 and 8 are that in Grotto 8 Buddha’s face is much thinner, and his right hand is in the middle of the chest. The styles of their niches are also different. No. 7 is flame shape and No.8 is round shape. Due to its low elevation and exposure, Grotto No.8 has been used for target practice. It suffers over five bullet holes. They were refilled.

---

by simple white colored paints, but after years these materials decayed and dropped with rain water thus left straight white stains.

To the right of the grotto there is a lotus tablet containing an inscription of five vertical lines, saying,

“Our monastery’s supervision monk, bhikṣus, and the congregation of disciples, carved to make a revered image of the Tathāgata Amitābha. (For) those who experienced merit of delivering living creatures from suffering, Zhiyuan 1 (1335) [or, Zhizheng 1 (1341)], the eighth moon, …… 本寺都寺比丘徒眾，鐫造阿彌陀如來尊像。歷德普度眾生有者，至元 (or, 至正) 元年八月□□。

Currently the inscription is difficult to read. There are two previous readings, one dated to Zhiyuan 1 (1335), and the other to Zhizheng 1 (1341).\textsuperscript{553} This inscription is the latest evidence of the Southern Hill grottos, after Grotto No.2 (1328). This latest grotto proves the claim of local activism continuing after the onset of official persecution of the White Cloud sect in the mid-Yuan dynasty discussed in Chapter 2. Also, according to the inscription, the name for the sitting Buddha is “Tathāgata Amitābha” Amituo rulai 阿彌陀如來. This shows the unfamiliarity of the engravers and patrons on standard Buddhist art. This phenomenon again attributes to the generalized lay Buddhism and the syncretistic creativity in the Song-Yuan period.

Grotto No.9 (Figure 37)

Buddhas of the Three Times Sanshi fo 三世佛

\textsuperscript{553} Wang Shilun, Xihu shiku, 1986 #131, Zhiyuan 1 (1335); Yu Jianzhong, Pingyao guyun, 2006, P126, Zhizheng 1 (1341).
This grotto is a group of three separate sculptures. This is an unfinished project as only the heads and upper bodies of the figures were made. The rest of the bodies are not finished, since original tracks of quarry on the cliff still exist. The reason of its incompletion might be sudden loss of labor or financial support, or sudden persecution from the government. Grotto No.9 is high above the pond, so it is impossible to approach so as to have a close look at and measure its height. The overall size of the three grottos, including the unfinished part, is at least 5 meters tall. The three grottos of No.9 are equally situated on the same height. They all have flame shape niches that cover the relief. Only the head and shoulder of the central relief figure is preserved today. The left and right reliefs are damaged to the point almost nothing exists.

The reliefs, should be the Buddhas of the Three Times 三世佛. They are *Dīpaṃkara* “the Buddha of the past,” *Shakyamuni* “the Buddha of the present,” and *Maitreya* “the Buddha of the future.” Only *Shakyamuni* the middle relief is preserved partially. But the style of his head shows no difference with those previous discussed figures of sitting Buddhas. Thus, I tend to argue the simplicity of the carving works and lack of variety in Buddhist art. However, the Southern Hill grottos do have diversity in the images, when apply to the special Daoist Grotto No.1, and the ones of Avalokiteśvara (Grottos No.3 and 5).

Grotto No.10 (Figure 38)

Grotto of Small Triple Niches

---

554 Other possible identities of the triple sculptures can be the Buddha *Shakyamuni* in the middle, *Bhaiṣajyaguru* 藥師佛 or *Akshobhya* 阿閦佛/不動佛 in the east, and *Amitābha* 阿彌陀佛 in the west.
Grotto No.10 is a group of three separate grottos, with three small sculptures within a niche in each grotto. This grotto group is located in the east entrance of the Southern Hill grotto today, in the beginning of the pathway/trailhead, and it is the most northeast grotto in the Southern Hill. It is the first grotto that visitors encounter in the site today, so it attracts pilgrims. In the image, there are small modern porcelain figurines that locals have placed beside the sculptures inside the central niche. All the nine sculptures in the triple niches are severely damaged. Most of the figures have been beheaded. The sculptures in the central niche are almost two times bigger than those in the neighboring two niches and are better preserved in terms of their bodies and foundations. The total width of the triple niche is 3.9 meters.

The style of this grotto group is quite different from the rest of the Southern Hill grottos. Grotto No.10 is of small size with three figures in one niche. The figures’ dresses and foundations are different from the other Southern Hill grottos. Also, they are located in low elevation, right in the front entrance to the site. So I speculate that they were carved either before or after the Yuan period. The three sculptures in the central niche are 0.8 meter tall including the lotus seat foundations, facing south. From their dresses and hand gestures, they look like the “Three Sages of the Western Pure Land” 西方三聖, including Amitābha Buddha 阿彌陀佛 in the middle, Left Attendant Avalokiteśvara 左脅侍觀(世)音菩薩 and Right Attendant Mahāsthāmaprāpta 右脅侍大勢至菩薩. The left and right niches’ figures are damaged badly, so it is hard to tell their identities. From their remaining dresses, possible track of sword in a sculpture of the left niche and the sharp
shoes, they might be Daoist deities, or popular local deities such as the “Lord of the Soil and Ground” 土地公.

Grotto No.11 (Figure 39)

Buddha in the “Pool of Releasing Lives” 放生池

This grotto is located on the other side of a large pool. It is a relief of Buddha inside a halo shaped niche. It seems as if the Buddha’s body below the chest does not exist (thus only a bust), rather than under water of the pond. There is an extended uncutted raw rock connecting the chest. From head to chest the Buddha is approximately 1 meter tall, facing south. His appearance looks similar to other sitting Buddhas of the Southern Hill grottos. He also has a head dot and the dot in between the eyebrows. He wears a robe with chest exposed. There is a lotus tablet as the inscription frame on the right side of the grotto, but leaves no inscription today. Instead, there are three characters extending out of the tablet reading “Pool of Releasing Lives” Fangsheng chi 放生池. Because it does not fit into the frame of the lotus tablet and because of the large size of its characters, this inscription likely was added at a later time. A “Pool of Releasing Lives” is usually placed in the front of a monastery. The site of the Puning Monastery is uncertain and the surroundings of the pool show no building remains. There are many ponds in the Southern Hill due to rain water collected in the deep quarry vaults. If people imagine that the grotto complex was once a part of a monastery or pilgrimage site, then the pool serves as the “Pool of Releasing Lives” in the front, and the Buddha there first greets visitors.

555 Wang Shilun, Xihu shiku, 1986 #152.
Grotto No.12 (Figure 40)

Buddha (bottom half buried underground)\textsuperscript{556}

This grotto has its upper body exposed above ground. The 1985 catalog includes this grotto, but I was not able to locate it during two field trips to the site.\textsuperscript{557} It is not Grotto No.11 by the pool since the 1985 catalog lists both Grottos No.11 and 12. According to the entry, the part of the Buddha relief above the ground is 1.52 meters tall. He wears a robe with chest exposed. No hands above the ground so possibly they are in \textit{dhyāna mudrā} 禪定印. The appearance looks similar to other sitting Buddhas of the Southern Hill grottos.

Grotto No.13 (Figure 41)

Buddha (upper half missing)

This grotto is located to the west of Grotto No.2. The relief is of the sitting Buddha on his lotus seat. The art style is similar to that of the other sitting Buddhas on the site. His left hand is in \textit{dharmachakra mudrā} 說法印, while the right hand is missing (possibly it had been in \textit{karana mudrā} 期克印 as in Grotto No.2)

New Find (Figure 42)

Small half sculpture

\textsuperscript{556} Wang Shilun, \textit{Xihu shiku}, 1986 #153. \\
\textsuperscript{557} ibid.
I found this small sculpture on my second field trip in summer 2014. It is far from the exposed cliffs where most other grottos are located. It is beside the newly paved path, behind bushes, in low elevation. It is about 0.8 meter above the ground. The sculpture itself is 0.3 meter tall, and there is a 0.2 meter tall incense pot carved below it. The pot’s surface has a coin left by modern pilgrims. The small sculpture has lost its head and a large portion of upper body. From the gestures of its two feet, the long sleeve along the right arm and the remaining part of a bag on the left arm, I speculate this is the local Chinese deity Budai 布袋 (Budai Maitreya or the “laughing Buddha”), which became popular in Song-Yuan Jiangnan local society.558

**Conclusion**

Compared to the representative type of Yuan period grotto art, the Feilaifeng Grotto (circa. 1282-1292) in Hangzhou, the Southern Hill grottos have many differences. Most grottos are reliefs in shallow niches, rather than three dimensional sculptures in deep niches as in Feilaifeng. Unlike the diverse types of figures and styles of carving, most grottos in the Southern Hill look similar. They were possibly made by the same group of lay engravers rather than professional sculpture artisans. The styles also do not match standard making of Buddhist sculptures. Some of the sculptures have untraditional adornment, incorrect hand gesture mudrās.

I made four categories of the Southern Hill grottos according to their motifs and sizes:

---

558 The most well known Budai sculpture of the Song period is the one of the Feilaifeng grottos in Hangzhou. Wang Shilun, *Xihu shiku*, 1986.
a. The sitting Buddha, including Grottos No.2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, and 13.

b. The creative figures, including Grottos No.1, 3, and 5.

c. The giant unfinished grotto group, including Grotto No.9.

d. Grottos in small niches, possibly pre-Yuan or post-Yuan era, including Grottoes No.10, and the New Find.

Category “b” has the three most interesting grottos in the Southern Hill grottos with their unique appearance. Avalokiteśvaras in the Grottoes No.3 and 5, are special in terms of their crowns, dresses and for No.3 below Avalokiteśvara the leaf boat and the horse in the ocean. Grotto 1, and possibly one or more niches of Grotto No.10, represent Daoist gods. This shows the syncretistic trend of local religious activists that was central/fundamental in the development of the White Cloud sect. We have seen examples of the three religion syncretism related to the White Cloud sect in previous chapters, such as the sect members sponsoring a Daoist abbey’s construction and Daoists donating money for the Puning Buddhist canon printing.

Two extant inscriptions record the years of carving the two grottoes as 1328, 1335 or 1341. This fact demonstrates that in the late Yuan dynasty (1323-1368), local activists around the White Cloud sect headquarters, the Puning Monastery, did not stop conducting religious activities for merit making after the official ban on the sect in place by the 1320s. The carving of grottoes in the late Yuan, is similar to the evidence that the Puning canon printings were still carried out after the last official ban of the White Cloud sect in the 1320s. The White Cloud sect related local groups and the Puning Monastery monks continued enthusiastically to sponsor and participate in local religious patronage projects such as sūtra printing and grotto carving.
Figure 29: Grotto No. 1
The Great Perfect Warrior Emperor 真武大帝
Figure 30: Grotto No. 2
Buddha Kamaladala-vimala-nakṣatra-rāja-saṃkusumitābhijña 尊華宿王智佛 (1328 CE)
Figure 31: Grotto No. 3
Avalokiteśvara of Compassion Navigation 慈航觀音
Figure 32: Grotto No.4
Sitting Buddha
Figure 33: Grotto No. 5
Sitting Avalokiteśvara
Figure 34: Grotto No. 6
The Largest Sitting Buddha
Figure 35: Grotto No. 7
Sitting Buddha

From left to right: Grottos No. 7, 13, 2, 3
Figure 36: Grotto No. 8
Sitting Buddha - Tathāgata Amitābha 阿彌陀如來 (1335 or 1341 CE)
Figure 37: Grotto No. 9  
Buddhas of the Three Times 三世佛
Figure 38: Grotto No. 10
Grotto of Small Triple Niches
Figure 39: Grotto No. 11\textsuperscript{559}
Buddha in the “Pool of Releasing Lives” 放生池

\textsuperscript{559} Due to the barrier of the pool, I was not able to take a close examination of this grotto. These two pictures are from the internet.
Figure 40: Grotto No. 12\textsuperscript{560}
Buddha (bottom half buried underground)

\textsuperscript{560} Sihu shiku 西湖石窟, 1985 #153.
Figure 41: Grotto No. 13
Buddha (upper half missing)

From left to right: Grottos No. 7, 13, 2, 3
Figure 42: New find
Small half sculpture
Figure 43: Quarry cliff surface
Conclusion

The White Cloud sect was a local socio-religious movement. It was Buddhism-inspired, politics-fueled, business-oriented, and profit-making. The movement developed continuously over 250 years throughout the Song-Yuan period in Jiangnan, China’s most developed region. At the end of the Northern Song dynasty, the self-proclaimed “White Cloud monk” Kong Qingjue of Luoyang, a descendant of Confucius, initiated the movement in Hangzhou and attracted several followers after his death. The movement spread out across a small region, led by laypeople during the Southern Song dynasty. It never achieved legal status during the Song, and it underwent government persecution. The Song government, Confucian literati, and monastic Buddhists all claimed the movement to be heretical and involved with suspicious groups, including “people of the way,” “monks with hair,” and “vegetarian devil worshippers.” They were treated as “wicked people” and “absurd people,” and faced harsh punishment.

In the Yuan dynasty, the movement received the opposite treatment from rulers. The Mongol government recognized the movement and designated it as an official Buddhist branch, the “White Cloud sect.” From the Yuan, we find hardly any record of so-called “people of the way” and “vegetarian devil worshippers.” So we can assume that many lay religious practitioners were incorporated into the White Cloud sect. Compared to the Song, the Yuan government had lenient policies on local spiritual groups. The sect was equal to other traditional Buddhist schools and established fully functioning clergy bureaus, including the Sect Overseer Office (or, General Overseer Office) and the Monk
Registry Bureau (or, Buddhist Registrar Bureau) under the new Supervision Office for Buddhist Teachings in Jiangnan. The White Cloud sect, thanks to its official status and affiliated offices, was able to register commoners and their property to monasteries. Monastic privileges attracted local laypeople to obtain exemptions from taxes and other duties. Local people and monks also invested in the White Cloud sect to pursue spiritual and economic benefits, especially in the printing of Buddhist canons. Thus, the White Cloud sect in the Yuan period was a social enterprise that made profits for itself while offering various services to benefit different groups.

However, the Yuan government’s protection was not consistent. Persecutions were intertwined with awards and the periodic reestablishment of sect offices, throughout different emperors’ reigns during the mid-Yuan period (1294-1323). I argue that the Yuan state’s creation of and involvement with the White Cloud sect did not regulate or assemble this popular movement in the way the state expected. In contrast, it accelerated local laypeople’s independence both socially and economically. Sect adherents enjoyed the privileges of monastic registration and led public projects. This shows a high level of autonomy for local society in controlling and managing local resources, through negotiations with monks, clergy officials, and the Mongol state. With respect to Yuan government and state-local relations, the Mongol government was more sophisticated and actively supportive in dealing with local religious movements, compared with their Song predecessors. The Yuan Mongol rulers showed great tolerance of the sect’s public activities. The sect was treated as a “public organization” in the Yuan rather than as a “secret society,” as had the Song. On the other hand, the Yuan government still imprinted the presence of imperial power on the sect, by establishing religious offices and
implementing policies. The Yuan’s official designation of the White Cloud sect made it easy to punish all sect affiliates collectively, since they were registered with the official organization.

The Mongol rulers’ overwhelming preference for Buddhism gave them a great need for accumulating Buddhist merit through prayers and materials such as Buddhist canons. The White Cloud sect could supply these needs because it had already established a foundation including a printing studio and local labor mobilization. Surprisingly, in spite of the Southern Song’s great preference for Buddhism and Hangzhou’s advanced printing industry, sūtra printing in the region had mainly been a private business (privately owned and privately funded). In the Yuan dynasty, the Mongol imperial family and the court provided official sponsorship and financial aid for sūtra printing projects, including the White Cloud’s Puning canon, although the printing was conducted in Hangzhou, far away from the capital at Dadu. After the sect leader Dao’an petitioned Khubilai for sect recognition, the Mongol rulers, at least Khubilai, were not able to tell if the White Cloud sect really followed Buddhist teachings and practice. Mongol emperors treated the sect without discrimination and valued its practice in the same way it did that of other Chinese Buddhist schools. In terms of policy and institutional support, the Yuan court’s sponsorship of the White Cloud sect and its printing project was a large part of its overall religious activities. In its financial dimensions, the Yuan court’s support was less dramatic compared with other religious projects.

However, the White Cloud sect’s teachings and practices show that the movement was a product of the popular religious syncretism of the “Three Teachings” in the Song-
Yuan period, rather than a Buddhist branch with unique dharma teachings. The movement never had a systematic doctrine. The only evidence of the sect’s teachings are two extant essays by its founder, the itinerant monk Kong Qingjue. These two essays’ contents were evangelical religious teachings that were already popular in the Song-Yuan period. The first essay, “Collection of Virtuous Acts,” which survives in both Chinese and Tangut versions, is a short admonition about the kind behavior and ethical principles necessary to become a “gentleman” junzi 君子. It uses a vernacular tone and simple words that are easy to understand. The content borrows terms from the “Three Teachings,” especially the Confucian classics.

The second essay, “Record for Apprenticeship” is a brief introduction for Buddhist novices to make them familiar with basic Buddhist concepts such as the “four fruitions” and “ten stages” toward enlightenment and Buddhahood. It takes the form of six-character poems and employs a theoretical structure based texts of the Buddhist Huayan school. This introductory essay offers nothing new in Buddhist terminology and teachings. All the poems use the style of Chinese vernacular literature, which was also influenced by the syncretistic “Three Teachings” of mixed religious traditions. They are also easy for illiterate people to recite. As for the sect’s ritual practice, we have no record of its religious rituals. Most of the sect’s spiritually connected work lay in printing the Buddhist canon and grotto carving. Thanks to the grottos and the canon printing shop in the main Puning monastery, the sect’s main temple, made that site and the Southern Hill in which it was embedded a popular regional pilgrimage destination and an object of constant economic benefit. In contrast to the lack of Buddhist rituals, the sect was fully immersed in social activities for economic gain.
The White Cloud sect as a social enterprise was able to accumulate tremendous wealth and local resources. It reached a wide range of people, including nuns and widows, as shown in the local patron list of the Puning canon printing project. The White Cloud sect used its official status as a Buddhist group to register common households and property under monastic status, in return for financial benefits. While the sect gained money, local people were exempt from taxes and other government duties. As a result, the sect’s actions helped local society to grow more independent and vibrant. In contrast, the Yuan local government lost revenue as taxes and taxable property decreased. It also increased the tax burden on common households, especially those of peasants and literati who did not register with monasteries.

Furthermore, there are records of illegal activities by the sect that worried the Mongol government and Chinese literati. These activities went beyond the sect’s legitimate roles and continued its notorious reputation under the Song, such as farmland annexation, robbery, kidnapping, and enslavement. Once a person was affiliated to the White Cloud sect, he was within a different system of jurisdiction, under the management of clergy offices and out of the local government’s reach. Sometimes the sect took over local authority in civil affairs, such as household registration and public security. From the mid-Yuan dynasty until the end of the movement, some privileged fake monks and lay leaders of the White Cloud sect became local thugs, whom even local officials feared. Sect members could evade criminal charges easily. This disturbing fact made the White Cloud sect looks like a mafia who controlled the local social order and disobeyed government regulations. Therefore, the government claimed that the sect caused local disorder and damaged normal social life.
More blame for the sect’s outrageous behavior could be attributed to its leadership. In both the Song and the Yuan periods, the sect was under the control of laypeople, most likely big local families. During the Song, the movement did not have a clear leadership structure. The only recorded leader was Shen Zhiyuan 沈智元 in 1202. But it is clear that the sect was led by laypeople, as was the case with the “people of the way.” In the Yuan dynasty, there was a lineage of leaders. The leaders included monk Dao’an or Huizhao 慧照, who claimed to be the ninth generation of the sect (on account of his name including Hui 慧), and those of his successors whose given names included Ru 如 (tenth generation) and Ming 明 (eleventh generation). Although most of the sect leaders’ names during the Yuan dynasty contain two characters, with the first indicating their generation, these leaders were most likely laypeople rather than monks. Some lay leaders’ surnames were recorded, such as Qian Rujing 錢如鏡 and Shen Mingren 沈明仁.561

None of the allegations of illegal activities against the White Cloud sect mentioned monks. Therefore, from the Song to Yuan, the White Cloud movement remained a local interest group led by secular local elites. Local people in the region joined or supported the White Cloud sect to acquire farmland, gain tax exemptions, print the Buddhist canon, and build infrastructure. Moreover, in the Yuan dynasty, the White Cloud sect’s lay leaders were able to build extensive relationships beyond local laypeople. The sect extended its connection to court patrons, the Tanguts, and Buddhist monks in charge of the printing operation. In the Song, Shen Zhiyuan had failed in his attempt to

561 Since the most commonly recorded surname, from the Song to Yuan, is Shen 沈, Overmyer tends to argue that a Shen family held hereditary leadership of the White Cloud movement. I doubt this was the case because there is no certain evidence that all the leaders surnamed Shen belong to one family. Overmyer, 1982:639.
gain imperial patronage. In the Yuan, leaders such as Dao’an and Shen Mingren were well known by the Mongol emperors. The White Cloud sect became one of the best-known Buddhist groups among Mongol rulers, regardless of whether they were in favor or being punished. Tangut diaspora monks served as mediators and built this direct connection between Mongol rulers and the White sect leaders. Despite different spiritual status (monastic and lay), economics (state and local), identities (foreign and native), and languages (Tangut and Chinese), the Tangut monks and local laymen were linked together by their mutual interest in producing Buddhist canons and exploiting local resources.

The White Cloud sect also reflects ethnic diversity in its development during the Yuan dynasty. Tangut monks were major participants in addition to the main Chinese followers. Tangut monks were important facilitators in establishing the White Cloud sect and related offices, and they were sponsors and organizers of the Puning and Hexi canons. There is no evidence of a Tangut presence in south China before the Mongol conquest in 1276. Tangut monks, some of whom had served as military advisors such as Yang Lianzhenjia, moved to the Jiangnan region, most Hangzhou, after the Mongol conquests. They were appointed as officials in new bureaus of religious and Buddhist affairs, alongside secular diasporic Tanguts who were appointed as officials in civil and military offices. Prominent Tangut and Tibetan esoteric Buddhism monks at court, such as Shalopa and Dampa, also drew the emperors’ attentions to the White Cloud sect and guided the emperors’ decisions on related policies.

Tangut monks in the Jiangnan region, such as Guanzhuba and Li Huiyue, were important patrons of canon printing projects. In addition, the Tangut translation of Kong
Qingjue’s essay shows the connections between the Puning and Hexi canons in Hangzhou, as well as the diffusion of the White Cloud sect’s teachings into Tangut literature. The transmission of the White Cloud literature in Tangut translation suggests that although doctrine was not important to the White Cloud sect’s local lay adherents it may have been important to Tangut readers. There is no evidence for pre-Yuan contact between the White Cloud sect and the Tanguts, so the translation could only occur in the Yuan period as part of the Hexi canon. Tangut involvement in the White Cloud sect, the Jiangnan religious landscape, and Buddhist canon production all need further research.

As part of the non-Chinese immigration to southern China following the Mongol conquests, Tangut Buddhist monks played a different role from that of other foreign elites in multi-ethnic Jiangnan society. The Tanguts were enthusiastic patrons of Buddhism and Buddhist canons.

White Cloud sect’s Puning canon was one of the best sellers among commercial imprints during the Yuan dynasty. The printing business was highly industrialized in both production and marketing. The Puning canon was also one of the most popular and most widely circulated Buddhist canons in the Yuan. The Puning canon was distinguished by its high quality, accessibility through distribution across riverine networks, efficient printing, affordable price, good marketing, and state sponsorship. The Puning Monastery was a successful commercial publisher. Carving the blocks and printing the complete Puning canon happened quickly from 1277 to 1290 under the supervision of the official Tripitaka Office 大藏經局 at the Puning Monastery. The market for printed Buddhist sūtras of the canon included retail sales to local lay patrons and wholesale distribution to Buddhist institutions. Most of these Buddhist institutions were famous Buddhist
monasteries all over the Yuan Empire. Monks from these monasteries travelled long distances to Hangzhou to order and purchase several complete sets of the Puning canon, many traversing rivers and canals.

Local laypeople and monks and nuns from private temples and chapels each donated money and personal property to sponsor the printing of one, multiple, or partial volumes. Local lay donors came mostly from well-to-do households in market towns and villages, including skilled men, farm owners, and small business owners. There were also many female donors, even independent widows. Donation amounts for the canon printing workshop were small, but for these individuals, the sums were quite large. Donated items included cash, rice, clothes, and other personal items. The reasons why local people chose to make donations for sūtra printing without actually receiving a copy of the resulting work were the desire to gain blessings for themselves and their families and wish that their deceased family members be reborn in the pure land. Sponsoring the production of Buddhist sūtras became a popular and easy means for local laypeople in the Hang-Jia-Hu Plain to seek spiritual salvation and participate in public projects.

This shows that, through its canon printing, the White Cloud movement reached and influenced local people of different backgrounds among the lower social classes, not necessarily White Cloud devotees. Additionally, the process of printing and selling the canon printing preserved textual information in the canon’s contents and colophons. These provide the White Cloud’s own view of the movement and its social influence, different what outsiders wrote in official chronicles and literati writings. The Puning and Hexi canons preserve valuable information about the White Cloud sect’s offices and leadership and about government and local supporters. The Puning canon’s high position
within both monastic Buddhism and among local religious devotees tells us something about Chinese material culture and Buddhist manuscript culture. The canon was well received by both monks and less educated local commoners. It was a successful cultural product of the White Cloud sect.

Another cultural product of the sect was the grotto art in the Southern Hill, close to the Puning Monastery on the same hill. The site has not been known to most scholars of Chinese history and Buddhist art. Thirteen large grottos survive with reliefs inside niches. The most popular motif is the sitting Buddha. There are also three unique reliefs, including a Daoist deity—the Great Perfect Warrior Emperor—an Avalokiteśvara of Compassion Navigation, and a sitting Avalokiteśvara wearing a large treasure crown. The creative styles of the grottos, including Daoist figures and more realistic presentations of Buddhist gods, show the influence of the “Three Teachings” and suggest that local artists may have made the grottos.

There are two inscriptions attached to grottos, including information about their sponsors, dated 1328 and 1335 (or 1341). It proves White Cloud activities continued without interruption after the official ban in 1320.562 Monks and local laypeople were still able to hold religious activities around the Puning Monastery and manage collaborative projects. The dense concentration of grottos in the Southern Hill and their obvious exposure on bare cliffs demonstrate that the government did not closely monitor independent local religious activities, due to the Southern Hill’s location far from political centers and seats of local government. Also, regional and state offices of

---

562 Together with evidence of continuous sūtra printing, my research counters Overmyer’s statement that “by 1320 the White Cloud disappeared from view.” Overmyer, 1982:639.
religious and Buddhist affairs were either removed or ceased to function in the late Yuan dynasty. The White Cloud movement and local activists’ religious lives were not interrupted until the early Ming dynasty, when a harsh law against popular movements was enforced and local administration reorganized.

The administration and activities of the White Cloud sect remained regionally rooted in the Hang-Jia-Hu Plain without much spatial expansion, unlike the broad spread of the White Lotus. I argue that the White Cloud sect’s geographical boundedness resulted from its foundation in market towns connected by canal networks. The White Cloud movement was a rural and market town movement. The movement’s major followers were commoners from urbanized market towns in the Hang-Jia-Hu Plain, the agricultural hinterland of Huzhou, Jiaxing, and Hangzhou.

Ongoing social and commercial transformations gave this region the most advanced economy and popular religious culture during the Song-Yuan period. The physical geography, economic and social geography, and economy made the region a fertile ground for the White Cloud movement’s social and religious activities. Similar to the big cities nearby, market towns experienced urbanization because of population growth, market expansion, and infrastructure construction. Market towns were independent from the cities, and saw less political control from city- and county-seat based local governments than did the cities. These independent towns were both producers and consumers of economic and spiritual capital. Market towns and villages also built interrelated economic, religious, cultural, and kinship networks largely by sharing labor and resources across systems of waterways and canals. The local patrons
for the White Cloud sect’s printed canon constitute a good example of these networks linking people of common interests and devotion.

The independence and interrelationship of market towns challenges the core-periphery paradigm of central regional cities with market towns on their outskirts. The Yuan rulers, when they designated and regulated the sect, also understood the spatial limitation of the movement within the Jiangnan region. To some extent, they were concerned more with geography than with ideology. By establishing this new “Buddhist branch” and its regulative offices bound with the region, such as the title “White Cloud sect Monk Registry Bureau, in Hangzhou and other routes of Zhexi circuit” 浙西道杭州等路白雲宗僧錄司, the Yuan rulers meant to restrain local religious devotees and balance the power of other Buddhist schools in the area. The ways in which space reflected the White Cloud’s local-state relations are also visible in the Tangut monk Yang Lianzhenjia’s construction of five Buddhist temples on the Song imperial palace site in Hangzhou, including one White Cloud temple built with Khubilai’s approval. The building of a White Cloud temple next to four other temples of different Buddhist schools by imperial order on the former Song palace site shows the sect’s significant position within the Jiangnan religious landscape.

Overall, the White Cloud sect was a successful lay movement, showing a deeper level of interaction between religion and Chinese lay society. Overmyer argues for “a deeper level of interaction between Buddhism and Chinese Society.” I would say that “religion” rather than just “Buddhism” is involved here. Overmyer, 1982:641.
movement can go, including reaching out to and collaborating with imperial rulers, officials, foreigners, monastic monks, and lay activists. My research shows that the sect was able to build networks with Yuan rulers and Buddhist leaders from the top down, and with local activists and lay patrons from the bottom up. Both networks were initiated and built by the White Cloud sect’s leaders such as Dao’an and Shen Mingren, who were also local activists, including monks and laymen. As shown in their canon printing, they would include prayers for the emperor’s family and the state in wholesale canons, but they would also leave personal names at the end of the local donor’s colophon in retail canons.

The local-state relations represented in the White Cloud case breaks with the dichotomy of state versus local society. It rather represents a mutually beneficial relationship and a win-win strategy for both the state and the locality, a usually reciprocal arrangement spiritually and economically. The White Cloud movement was an “in-between” phenomenon. It fell between religion and popular belief, between the lay and the monastic, between business and spiritual pursuits, between the informal and the official, between Chinese and foreign, between urban and rural, and between regional development and state revenues. Therefore, the White Cloud sect was a revolutionary local movement of the Song-Yuan-Ming transitional period. It was independent and self-perpetuating, benefiting from Yuan government support but not much affected by government intervention. Based on its solid foundation of lay participants, including

---

564 Overmyer suggests that the White Cloud sect was a third option for people besides monastic life and domestic devotion. In other words, being a lay believer within the White Cloud movement was of greatest benefit for laypeople who sought formal religious affiliation but could not commit to full-time monastic life. Overmyer, 1982:641.
large numbers of women, the movement was a main stream of local development in imperial and colonial Jiangnan.

As a regional force, the White Cloud sect overruled local government to some extent in land and population registration. The White Cloud group competed with local government and other religious groups for financial aid from state and local contributors.

As a popular movement, compared to other socio-religious movements such as the White Lotus sect, the White Cloud sect attracted local people to become a part of the movement. It was a very effective way to extend their social networks in the region and force their influence on local society. The lay participants of the White Cloud movement independently organized local fundraising and collaborative efforts, from construction projects (including bridges and Daoist and Buddhist temples) to printing Buddhist canons. Activities such as sūtra printing and grotto carving were self-sufficient, mutually aided, locally driven, and self-managed.

Since the mid-Yuan period, the White Cloud was persecuted several times due to its extreme levels of activity that harmed state interests. Members, including monks and lay people, were ordered to be disbanded and dismissed to commoner registration. Popular religious groups became a major threat to the Mongol regime and one of the major forces calling for rebellion against the Mongols toward the end of the Yuan dynasty. But the White Cloud sect, retained its role as a commercial enterprise and its concentration on the economy. The group was non-violent and did not oppose the state, and it therefore never formed a militia or fomented rebellion.

---

The White Cloud survived into the early Ming, when the new government imposed new laws on religion and reordered local society after the Yuan-Ming wars. The Puning Monastery and its canon blocks were also destroyed during the Yuan-Ming crisis. The White Cloud sect was last mentioned in a 1370 Ming imperial edict banning its practices. Afterward, there survive no records in either official histories or in any genres of Chinese writing. This suggests not only the effectiveness of the new Ming government but also other reasons for the movement’s final demise. These reasons include the changing local population and suspended economic growth of market towns before the mid-Ming revival. Popularization of Neo-Confucianism among literati and officials, and the Neo-Confucians’ rising criticism of popular religious practice as heterodoxy in the Ming also endangered the space for local spiritual activity. In Jiangnan, however, local people kept exploring different ways to achieve their spiritual and financial goals. New forms of socio-religious movements and organizations were created locally and imported there after the mid-Ming dynasty. Nevertheless, the general trend of local activists’ independent patronage of religious institutions and public projects continued throughout the Ming-Qing transition, as it had in the Song-Yuan transition.566

566 Timothy Brook’s research on the mid- and late Ming dynasty identified a revival of Buddhist patronage as a popular choice among the local gentry or local elites. They invested in Buddhist monasteries, participated in rituals, undertook pilgrimages, joined lay religious associations, and built friendships with monks. Being bound with Buddhism increased the public authority of the local gentry and made local society more independent from the state. I question on Brook’s model on two counts: 1) To what extent were these “Buddhist,” rather than just lay religious institutions and activities? 2) These “gentry” were, in fact, local activists who had high social and economic status. I find this case of local elite activism in the mid- and late Ming dynasty to be a continuation of Song-Yuan lay socio-religious activism. In terms of motivation, there is no fundamental difference between those Yuan commoners who donated to the printing of the White Cloud sect’s Puning canon or to the construction of Daoist temples from those Ming “gentry” who made donations to build Buddhist temples. Moreover, the assertion that this phenomenon led to the emergence of a “public sphere” or “civil society” is questionable. None of these activities in Yuan-Ming local society challenged state power or sought civil rights for local activists. Timothy Brook, Praying for Power: Buddhism and The Formation of Gentry Society in Late-Ming China (Cambridge: Council on East Asian Studies, Harvard University, 1994).
Bibliography


_____. Chen Gaohua wenji 陳高華文集. Shanghai: Shanghai cishu chubanshe, 2005.


_____. “Zailun Yuandai hexi sengren Yang Lianzhenjia” 再論元代河西僧人楊璉真加, Zhonghua wenshi luncong 中華文史論叢 2006.2.


Chen Minggui 陳銘珪. Fushanzhi 浮山志. Liang Yujian, 1881.


Dafang guangfo Huayan jing 大方廣佛華嚴經, Taisho vol.10 no.293.


He, Mei 何梅. *Lidai hanwen dazangjing mulu xinkao* 歳代漢文大藏經目錄新考 (New examination of the catalogues of Chinese Tri-sutra from the Tang dynasty to the present time), Beijing: Shehui kexue wenxian chubanshe, 2014.


Jue’an 覺岸, *Shishi jigulue 釋氏稽古略* (Historical Studies of Buddhism in Outline), Taisho no. 2037; Taipei: Shangwu yinshuguan, 1972.


Kong, Qingjue 孔清覺. *Chuxue ji 初學記 (Record for Apprentice)*, in *Xuzang jign 續藏經* vol.63, no. 1253.
Zhengxing ji 正行集 (Collection of Virtuous Acts), in Xuzang jign 維藏經, vol.63 no.1254


Kwanten, Luc Herman M. “Tibetan-Mongol Relations during the Yuan Dynasty, 1207-1368.” Ph.D. diss., University of South Carolina, 1972.


______. “Yuan Da Kaiyuan yizong chutan” 元大開元一宗初探. *Zhongguoshi yanjiu* 中國史研究, 2008 (1).


Mou Yan 卞巘 and Zhao Mengfu 趙孟頫, “Record of the Miaoyan Monastery” *Huzhou Miaoyansi ji* 湖州妙嚴寺記, Asian Art Collection, Princeton University.


Rui, Chuanming 芮傳明. “Lun Jiangnan de chicai shimo xinyang” 論宋代江南之吃菜事魔信仰, Shilin 史林, 1999 (3).

Ruxing 如惺. Daming gaoseng zhuang 大明高僧傳, Taisho vol. 50, no.2062.


____. “Zhongguo cang Xixiwen wenxian xintan” 中國藏西夏文文獻新探, *Xixia xue* 西夏學, 2007 (2).


____. “Dunhuang Mogaoku beiqu chutu Xixia wenxian chutan” 敦煌莫高窟北區出土西夏文獻初探, *Dunhuang yanjuan* 敦煌研究, 2000 (3).


________. Xixiawen Hongzhou wenxian zaikao 西夏文《洪州文獻》再考, Zhongguo chanxue 中國禪學, 2012 (6) PP534-563.

________. “Hongzhou Buddhism in Xixia and the Heritage of Zongmi (780-841): A Tangut Source,” Asia Major vol. 16, no. 2 (2003), PP57-103.

________. “Yixing Huijue jiqi Dafang guangfo Huayan jing haiyin daochang shichong xingyuan changbianli chanyi” 一行慧覺及其《大方廣佛華嚴經海印道場十重行願常遍禮懺儀》, Taida foxue yanjiu 臺大佛學研究 no.23, 2012 PP1-76.

________. “Xixia fojiao zhi xitongxing chutan” 西夏佛教之系統性初探, Shijie zongjiao yanjiu 世界宗教研究, 2013 (4) PP22-38.

________. “Baiyun shizi Sanguan jiumen chutan” 白雲釋子《三觀九門》初探, Xixiaxue 西夏學 2011 (8) PP9-22.


Studholme, Alexander. The Origins of Oṃ Manipadme Hūṃ: A Study of Kāraṇḍavyūha


Suzuki Chusei 鈴木中正, “Sodai Bukkyo kessha no kenkyu” 宋代佛教結社の研究 (A Study of Sung Buddhist Societies), *Shigaku zasshi* 史學雜誌, 52 (1941).


